AASHTO

Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS
AASHTO
1914

Fifth Edition 2009


AASHTO
Standard Specifications
for Structural Supports
for Highway Signs,
Luminaires, and
Traffic Signals
501
New Durham Rd
Metuchen
3/4 MILE
AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS
1914
Fifth Edition 2009

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
444 North Capitol Street, NW Suite 249
Washington, DC 20001
202-624-5800 phone/202-624-5806 fax
www.transportation.org

ISBN: 978-1-56051-399-5 Publication Code: LTS-5

© 2009 by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials. All rights reserved.
Duplication is a violation of applicable law.

EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE
2007–2008

Voting Members

Officers:

President: Allen D. Biehler, Pennsylvania

Vice President: Larry L. "Butch" Brown, Mississippi

Secretary-Treasurer: Carlos Braceras, Utah

Regional Representatives:

REGION I:	Carolann Wicks, Delaware, One-Year Term Joseph Marie, Connecticut, Two-Year Term
REGION II:	Larry L. "Butch" Brown, Mississippi, One-Year Term Dan Flowers, Arkansas, Two-Year Term
REGION III:	Kirk T. Steudle Michigan, One-Year Term Nancy J. Richardson, Iowa, Two-Year Term
REGION IV:	Rhonda G. Faught, New Mexico, One-Year Term Will Kempton, California, Two-Year Term

Nonvoting Members

Immediate Past President: Pete K. Rahn, Missouri

AASHTO Executive Director: John Horsley, Washington, DC

HIGHWAYS SUBCOMMITTEE ON BRIDGES AND STRUCTURES, 2008

MALCOLM T. KERLEY, *Chair*
KEVIN THOMPSON, *Vice Chair*
M. MYINT LWIN, Federal Highway Administration, *Secretary*
FIRAS I. SHEIKH IBRAHIM, Federal Highway Administration, *Assistant Secretary*

ALABAMA, John F. Black, William F. Conway, George H. Conner

ALASKA, Richard A. Pratt

ARIZONA, Jean A. Nehme

ARKANSAS, Phil Brand

CALIFORNIA, Kevin Thompson, Susan Hida, Barton J. Newton

COLORADO, Mark A. Leonard, Michael G. Salamon

CONNECTICUT, Gary J. Abramowicz, Julie F. Georges

DELAWARE, Jiten K. Soneji, Barry A. Benton

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA, Nicolas Glados, L. Donald Cooney, Konjit "Connie" Eskender

FLORIDA, Robert V. Robertson, Jr., Marcus Ansley, Andre Pavlov

GEORGIA, Paul V. Liles, Jr., Brian Summers

HAWAII, Paul T. Santo

IDAHO, Matthew M. Farrar

ILLINOIS, Ralph E. Anderson, Thomas J. Domagalski

INDIANA, Anne M. Rearick

IOWA, Norman L. McDonald

KANSAS, Kenneth F. Hurst, James J. Brennan, Loren R. Risch

KENTUCKY, Allen Frank

LOUISIANA, Hossein Ghara, Arthur D'Andrea, Paul Fossier

MAINE, David Sherlock, Jeffrey S. Folsom

MARYLAND, Earle S. Freedman, Robert J. Healy

MASSACHUSETTS, Alexander K. Bardow

MICHIGAN, Steven P. Beck, David Juntunen

MINNESOTA, Daniel L. Dorgan, Kevin Western

MISSISSIPPI, Mitchell K. Carr, B. Keith Carr

MISSOURI, Dennis Heckman, Michael Harms

MONTANA, Kent M. Barnes

NEBRASKA, Lyman D. Freemon, Mark Ahlman, Hussam "Sam" Fallaha

NEVADA, Mark P. Elicegui, Marc Grunert, Todd Stefonowicz

NEW HAMPSHIRE, Mark W. Richardson, David L. Scott

NEW JERSEY, Richard W. Dunne

NEW MEXICO, Jimmy D. Camp

NEW YORK, George A. Christian, Donald F. Dwyer, Arthur P. Yannotti

NORTH CAROLINA, Greg R. Perfetti

NORTH DAKOTA, Terrence R. Udland

OHIO, Timothy J. Keller, Jawdat Siddiqi

OKLAHOMA, Robert J. Rusch, Gregory D. Allen

OREGON, Bruce V. Johnson, Hormoz Seradj

PENNSYLVANIA, Thomas P. Macioce, Harold C. "Hal" Rogers, Jr., Lou Ruzzi

PUERTO RICO, Jaime Cabré

RHODE ISLAND, David Fish

SOUTH CAROLINA, Barry W. Bowers, Jeff Sizemore

SOUTH DAKOTA, Kevin Goeden

TENNESSEE, Edward P. Wasserman

TEXAS, William R. Cox, David P. Hohmann

U.S. DOT, M. Myint Lwin, Firas I. Sheikh Ibrahim, Hala Elgaaly

UTAH, Richard Miller

VERMONT, William Michael Hedges

VIRGINIA, Malcolm T. Kerley, Kendal Walus, Prasad L. Nallapaneni, Julius F. J. Volgyi, Jr.

WASHINGTON, Jugesh Kapur, Tony M. Allen, Bijan Khaleghi

WEST VIRGINIA, Gregory Bailey

WISCONSIN, Scot Becker, Beth A. Cannestra, Finn Hubbard

WYOMING, Gregg C. Fredrick, Keith R. Fulton

ALBERTA, Tom Loo

NEW BRUNSWICK, Doug Noble

NOVA SCOTIA, Mark Pertus

ONTARIO, Bala Tharmabala

SASKATCHEWAN, Howard Yea

GOLDEN GATE BRIDGE, Kary H. Witt

N.J. TURNPIKE AUTHORITY, Richard J. Raczynski

N.Y. STATE BRIDGE AUTHORITY, William J. Moreau

PENN. TURNPIKE COMMISSION, Gary L. Graham

SURFACE DEPLOYMENT AND DISTRIBUTION COMMAND TRANSPORTATION ENGINEERING AGENCY, Robert D. Franz

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS—DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY, Paul C. T. Tan

U.S. COAST GUARD, Nick E. Mpras, Jacob Patnaik

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE—FOREST SERVICE, John R. Kattell

FOREWORD

The fifth edition of the *Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals* incorporates recent work performed under the National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP) and state-sponsored research activities. NCHRP 20-07 Task 209 reviewed past research and recommended updates to the Specifications. Changes are primarily a result of NCHRP Report 469: *Fatigue-Resistant Design of Cantilevered Signal, Sign, and Light Supports*, and NCHRP Report 494: *Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals*.

Section 3, "Loads," includes a metric conversion of the wind map presented in ASCE/SEI 7-05. The basic wind speed map is updated based on a new analysis of hurricane wind speeds and more detailed maps are included for hurricane-prone regions. Drag coefficients for multisided shapes are included which utilize a linear transition from a round to a multisided cross section.

Design guidelines for bending about the diagonal axis for rectangular steel sections are included in Section 5, "Steel Design." The width-to-thickness ratios and the non-compact limit for stems of tees are also specified. Guidance is provided on the selection of base plate thickness because thicker base plates can dramatically increase fatigue life of the pole to base plate connection. Section 5 also includes updates to the anchor bolt material specifications used in traffic signal support structures; the design loads of double-nut and single-nut anchor bolt connections; allowable stresses in anchor bolts; specifications to proportion anchor bolt holes in the base plate; and guidance on anchor bolt tightening.

The scope of Section 11, "Fatigue Design," is expanded to include non-cantilevered support structures and the associated fatigue importance factors. Vortex shedding response has been observed in tapered lighting poles often exciting second or third mode vibrations. Tapered poles are now required to be investigated for vortex shedding. Drag coefficients to be used in the calculation of vortex shedding, natural wind gusts, and truck induced wind gusts have been clarified, and additional guidance is provided as commentary for the selection of the fatigue importance category. Finally, the influence of unequal leg fillet welds on the fatigue performance has been included.

The Specifications are based on the allowable stress design methodology and are intended to address the usual structural supports. Requirements more stringent than those in the Specifications may be appropriate for atypical structural supports. The commentary is intended to provide background on some of the considerations contained in the Specifications; however it does not provide a complete historical background nor detailed discussions of the associated research studies. The Specifications and accompanying commentary do not replace sound engineering knowledge and judgment.

AASHTO Highways Subcommittee on Bridges and Structures

PREFACE

The fifth edition of *Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals* supersedes the fourth edition and its 2002, 2003, and 2006 interims. It includes changes approved by the Highways Subcommittee on Bridges and Structures in 2007 and 2008.

An abbreviated table of contents follows this preface. Detailed tables of contents precede each Section and each Appendix.

For the first time, *Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals* includes a CD-ROM with many helpful search features that will be familiar to users of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications* CD-ROM. Examples include:

- Bookmarks to all articles;
- Links within the text to cited articles, figures, tables, and equations;
- Links for current titles in reference lists to AASHTO's Bookstore; and
- The Acrobat search function.

AASHTO Publications Staff

ABBREVIATED TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 1: INTRODUCTION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 1:

INTRODUCTION

1.1—SCOPE

The provisions of these *Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals*, hereinafter referred to as the Specifications, are applicable to the structural design of supports for highway signs, luminaires, and traffic signals. The types of supports covered in these Specifications are discussed in Article 1.4. The Specifications are intended to serve as a standard and guide for the design, fabrication, and erection of these types of supports.

These Specifications are not intended to supplant proper training or the exercise of judgment by the designer, and they include only the minimum requirements necessary to provide for public safety. The Owner or the designer may require the design and quality of materials and construction to be higher than the minimum requirements.

The commentary directs attention to other documents that provide suggestions for carrying out the requirements and intent of these Specifications. However, those documents and the commentary are not intended to be a part of the Specifications.

C1.1

These Specifications are the result of National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP) Project 17-10 and the corresponding NCHRP Report 411. At the discretion of the Owner, proprietary solutions may be considered. These solutions may address both new structures and the repair or rehabilitation of existing structures. Testing of proprietary solutions shall model actual conditions as closely as possible, and the test methods and results shall be published. These Specifications are intended to replace the previous edition, *Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals* (2001).

The commentary discusses some provisions of the Specifications with emphasis given to the explanation of new or revised provisions that may be unfamiliar to users of the Specifications. The commentary is not intended to provide a complete historical background concerning the development of this and previous Specifications, nor is it intended to provide a detailed summary of the studies and research data reviewed in formulating the provisions of the Specifications. However, references to some of the research data are provided for those who wish to study the background material in depth.

1.2—DEFINITIONS

Arm—A cantilevered support, either horizontal or sloped.

Bridge Support—Also known as span-type support; a horizontal or sloped member or truss supported by at least two vertical supports.

Cantilever—A support, either horizontal or vertical, supported at one end only.

Designer—The person responsible for design of the structural support.

High-Level Lighting—Also known as high-mast lighting; lighting provided at heights greater than about 17 m (55 ft), typically using four to twelve luminaires.

Luminaire—A complete lighting unit consisting of a lamp or lamps together with the parts designed to distribute the light, to position and protect the lamps, and to connect the lamps to the electric power supply.

Mast Arm—A supporting arm designed to hold a sign, signal head, or luminaire in an approximately horizontal position.

Monotube—A support that is composed of a single tube.

Overhead Sign—A sign suspended above the roadway.

Owner—The person or agency having jurisdiction for the design, construction, and maintenance of the structural support.

Pole—A vertical support that is long, relatively slender, and generally rounded or multisided.

Pole Top—A descriptive term indicating that an attachment is mounted at the top of a structural support, usually pertaining to one luminaire or traffic signal mounted at the top of a pole.

Roadside Sign—A sign mounted beside the roadway on a single support or multiple supports.

Sign—A device conveying a specific message by means of words or symbols, erected for the purpose of regulating, warning, or guiding traffic.

Span Wire—A steel cable or strand extended between two poles, commonly used as a horizontal support for small signs and traffic signals.

Structural Support—Support designed to carry the loads induced by attached signs, luminaires, and traffic signals.

Traffic Signal—An electrically operated traffic control device by which traffic is regulated, warned, or directed to take specific actions.

Truss—A structural support, usually vertical or horizontal, composed of framework that is often arranged in triangles.

1.3—APPLICABLE SPECIFICATIONS

The following specification documents may be referenced for additional information on design, materials, fabrication, and construction:

- *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*,
- *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*,
- *Standard Specifications for Transportation Materials and Methods of Sampling and Testing*, and
- *Book of ASTM Standards.*

1.4—TYPES OF STRUCTURAL SUPPORTS

Structural supports are categorized as follows:

- Sign support structures,
- Luminaire support structures,
- Traffic signal support structures, and
- A combination of these structures.

1.4.1—Sign

Structural supports for signs include both overhead and roadside sign structures that are intended to support highway traffic signs and markers.

C1.4.1

Typical overhead and roadside sign supports are shown in Figure 1-1. Overhead sign structures are generally of the bridge or cantilever type. It is also common to support signs on existing grade separation structures that span the traffic lanes.

1.4.2—Luminaire

Structural supports for luminaires include typical lighting poles, pole top-mounted luminaire poles, and high-level poles.

C1.4.2

The lighting of modern freeways includes the use of typical lighting poles, generally tubular pole shafts that support one to two luminaires and range in height from about 9 m (30 ft) to 17 m (55 ft). High-level lighting poles are normally in heights from about 17 m (55 ft) to 46 m (150 ft) or more, usually supporting 4 to 12 luminaires; they are used to illuminate large areas. Typical luminaire supports and high-level supports are shown in Figure 1-2.

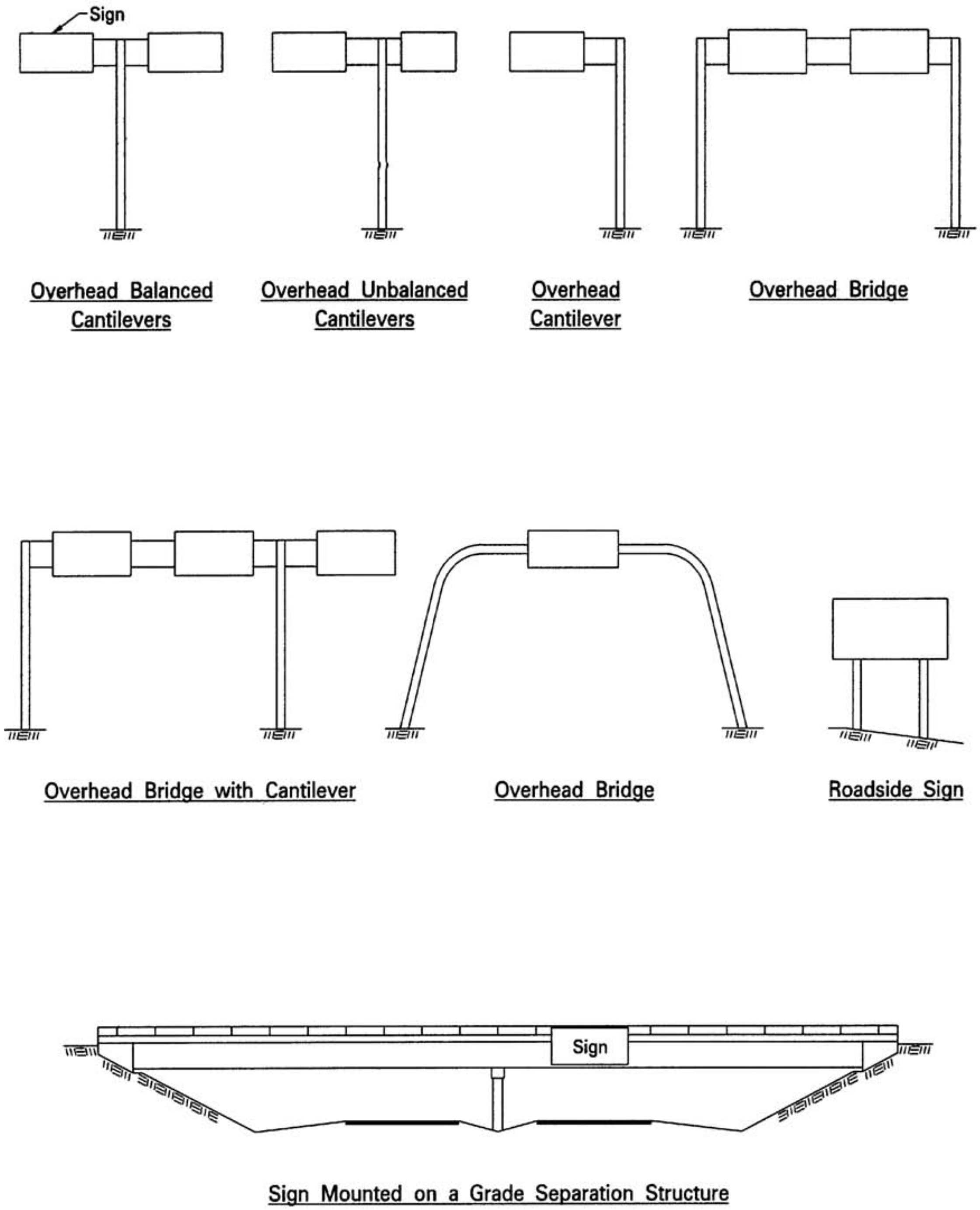


Figure 1-1—Sign Supports

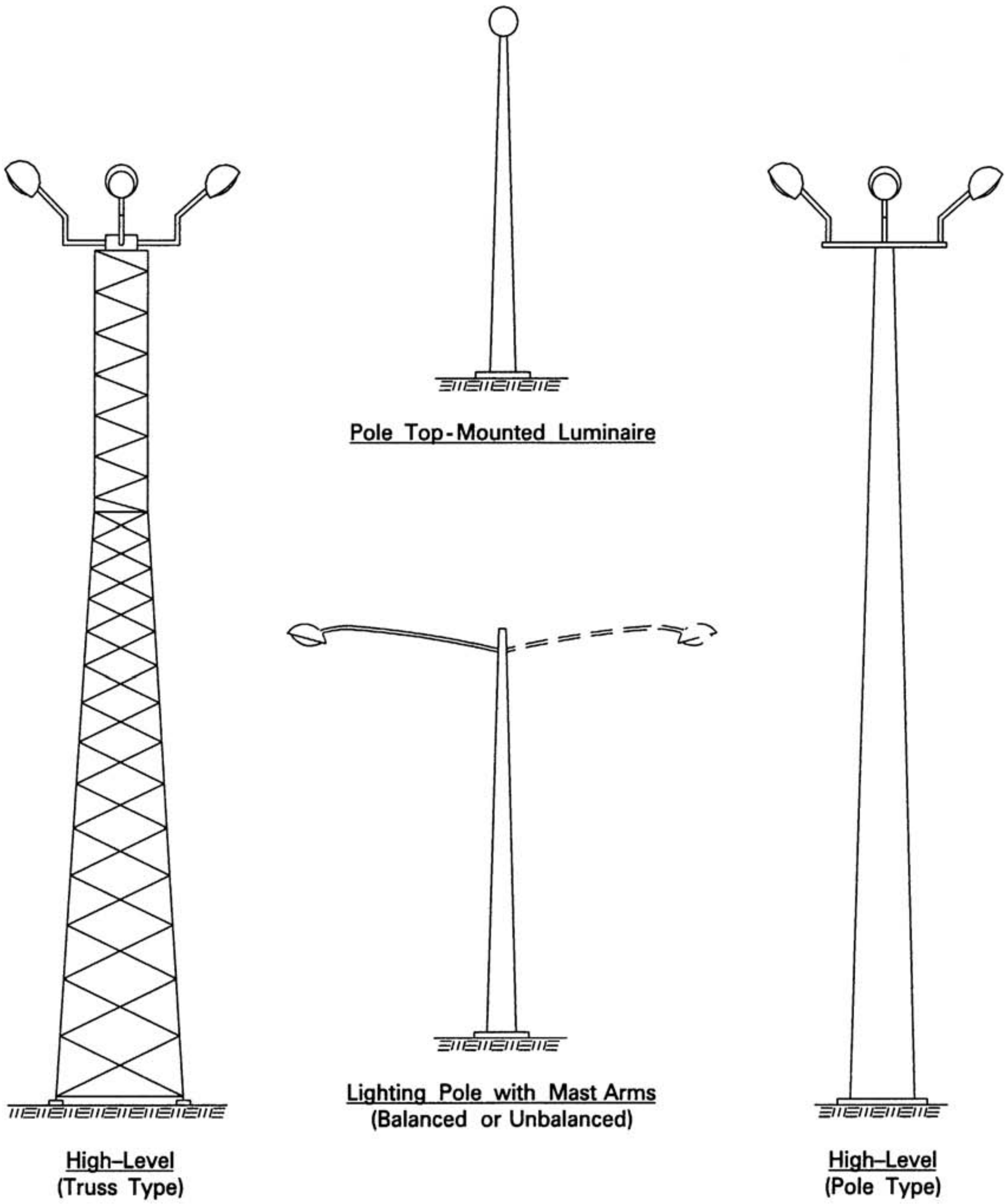


Figure 1-2—Luminaire Structural Supports

1.4.3—Traffic Signal

Structural supports for mounting traffic signals include pole top, cantilevered arms, bridge, and span wires.

C1.4.3

Typical traffic signal supports are shown in Figure 1-3.

1.4.4—Combination Structures

Combination structures include structural supports that combine any of the functions described in Articles 1.4.1, 1.4.2, and 1.4.3.

C1.4.4

Generally, combination structures are composed of a luminaire support and a traffic signal support. Other structures may combine traffic signal or luminaire supports with those for utility lines.

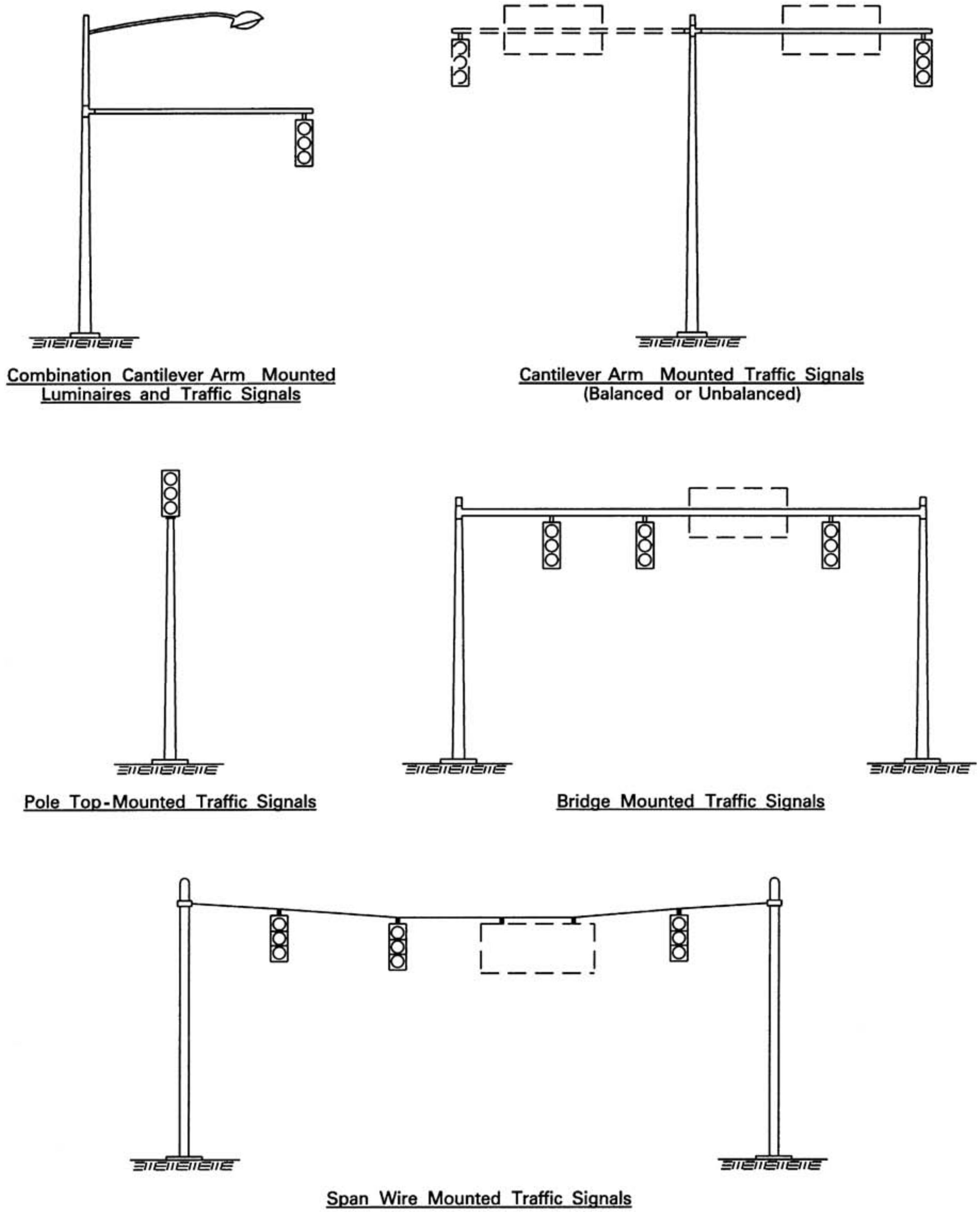


Figure 1-3—Traffic Signal Structural Supports

1.5—REFERENCES

AASHTO. 1968. *AASHTO Highway Definitions*. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

AASHTO. 2001. *Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals,* Fourth Edition, LTS-4. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials. Washington, DC.

AASHTO. 2002. *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*, 17th Edition, HB-17. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

AASHTO. 2007. *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications,* Fourth Edition, LRFDUS-4-M and LRFDSI-4. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

AASHTO. 2008. *Standard Specifications for Transportation Materials and Methods of Sampling and Testing.* 28th Edition, HM-28. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

ASTM. 2001. *Book of ASTM Standards*. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

Fouad, F. H., E. A. Calvert, and E. Nunez. 1998. *Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals*, NCHRP Report 411. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

SECTION 2: GENERAL FEATURES OF DESIGN

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 2:

GENERAL FEATURES OF DESIGN

2.1—SCOPE

Minimum requirements are provided or referenced for aesthetics, clearances, constructibility, inspectability, and maintainability of structural supports. Guidelines for determining vertical and lateral clearances, use of breakaway supports, use of guardrails, illumination of the roadway, sizes of signs, illumination and reflectorization of signs, and maintenance are found in the following references:

- *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*,
- *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices*,
- *Roadside Design Guide*,
- *AASHTO Maintenance Manual for Roadways and Bridges*, and
- *Roadway Lighting Design Guide*.

C2.1

This Section is intended to provide the Designer with information and references to determine the configuration, overall dimensions, and location of structural supports for highway signs, luminaires, and traffic signals. The material in this Section is broad in nature. No attempt has been made to establish rigid criteria in such areas as vertical heights of traffic signal and luminaire supports and levels of illumination. This Section provides references and considerations for the different aspects of design that should be considered in the preliminary stages of a project. In addition to the requirements provided within this Section, many Owners have their own requirements.

2.2—DEFINITIONS

Barrier—A longitudinal traffic barrier, usually rigid, used to shield roadside obstacles or nontraversable terrain features. It may occasionally be used to protect pedestrians from vehicle traffic.

Breakaway—A design feature that allows a sign, luminaire, or pole top–mounted traffic signal support to yield, fracture, or separate near ground level on impact.

Clear Zone—The total roadside border area, starting at the edge of the traveled way, available for unobstructed use by errant vehicles.

Clearance—Horizontal or vertical dimension to an obstruction.

Curb—A vertical or sloping surface, generally along and defining the edge of a roadway or roadway shoulder.

Gore—The center area immediately past the point where two roadways divide at an acute angle, usually where a ramp leaves a roadway.

Guardrail—A type of longitudinal traffic barrier, usually flexible.

Mounting Height—Minimum vertical distance to the bottom of a sign or traffic signal, or to the center of gravity of a luminaire, relative to the pavement surface.

Pedestal Pole—A relatively short pole supporting a traffic signal head attached directly to the pole.

Roadside—The area between the shoulder edge and the right-of-way limits, or the area between roadways of a divided highway.

2.3—AESTHETICS

The structural support should complement its surroundings, be graceful yet functional in form, and present an appearance of adequate strength. The support should have a pleasing appearance that is consistent with the aesthetic effect of the highway's other physical features. Supports should have clean, simple lines, which will present minimum hazard to motorists.

Structural supports should be designed and located so as not to distract the motorist's attention or obstruct the view of the highway. Supports should be placed so they do not obstruct the view of other signs or important roadway features. The effect that signing or lighting installations have on the surrounding environment should be evaluated.

C2.3

The appearance of ordinary structural supports should consider aesthetics and function. Combination poles, which serve multiple functions for lighting, traffic control, and electrical power, should be taken under consideration to reduce the number of different poles along the highway.

2.4—FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

2.4.1—Lighting Systems

General guidelines concerning lighting systems for highways may be found in *An Informational Guide for Roadway Lighting*.

C2.4.1

The Designer should select the light source, luminaire distribution, mounting height, and luminaire overhang based on such factors as geometry and character of the roadway, environment, proposed maintenance, economics, aesthetics, and overall lighting objectives. Some communities limit the amount of surrounding glare from illumination systems, and shielding may be required. The same average level of lighting can usually be obtained by more than one installation arrangement. *An Informational Guide for Roadway Lighting* provides information on level and uniformity of illuminance and luminance, quality of light, location of poles, use of breakaway devices, high-mast poles, and maintenance. Additional information may also be found in *A Study of Roadway Lighting*. Additional information on breakaway devices for lighting poles may be found in the *Roadside Design Guide*.

2.4.1.1—Vertical Heights for Luminaire Supports

The height of the luminaire support should be determined by the Designer to fit the particular need and situation.

C2.4.1.1

Some items that should be considered by the Designer in determining the height of a luminaire support are as follows:

- Glare characteristics of the highway,
- Desired level of illumination and distribution of light over the roadway area,
- Photometric characteristics of a selected lamp and luminaire,
- Available space for placing the supports, and
- Maintenance capability (maximum attainable servicing height).

Height restrictions may be imposed by various government agencies, such as the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) with respect to breakaway devices and the Federal Aviation Administration for aircraft considerations.

2.4.1.2—Illumination of the Roadway

The Designer should consider the quality of light and the level of illumination for a roadway lighting system.

C2.4.1.2

Highway illumination is provided to improve driver nighttime visibility and to promote safer and more efficient use of special roadway facilities located at ramps, intersections, and potentially hazardous areas.

The amount of illumination that should be provided over a roadway depends on the interaction among visibility, visual comfort, light distribution, and the geometry of the lighting system. Disability and discomfort glare, pavement glare, road location, and obstructions to visibility and traffic patterns are other factors that influence the level of illumination to be provided by a lighting system.

A luminaire installation should provide a visual environment that is conducive to safe and comfortable night driving. Where pedestrian safety is not involved, there is no indication that the lighting of bridges and overpasses should be any different from elsewhere on the highway.

2.4.2—Structural Supports for Signs and Traffic Signals

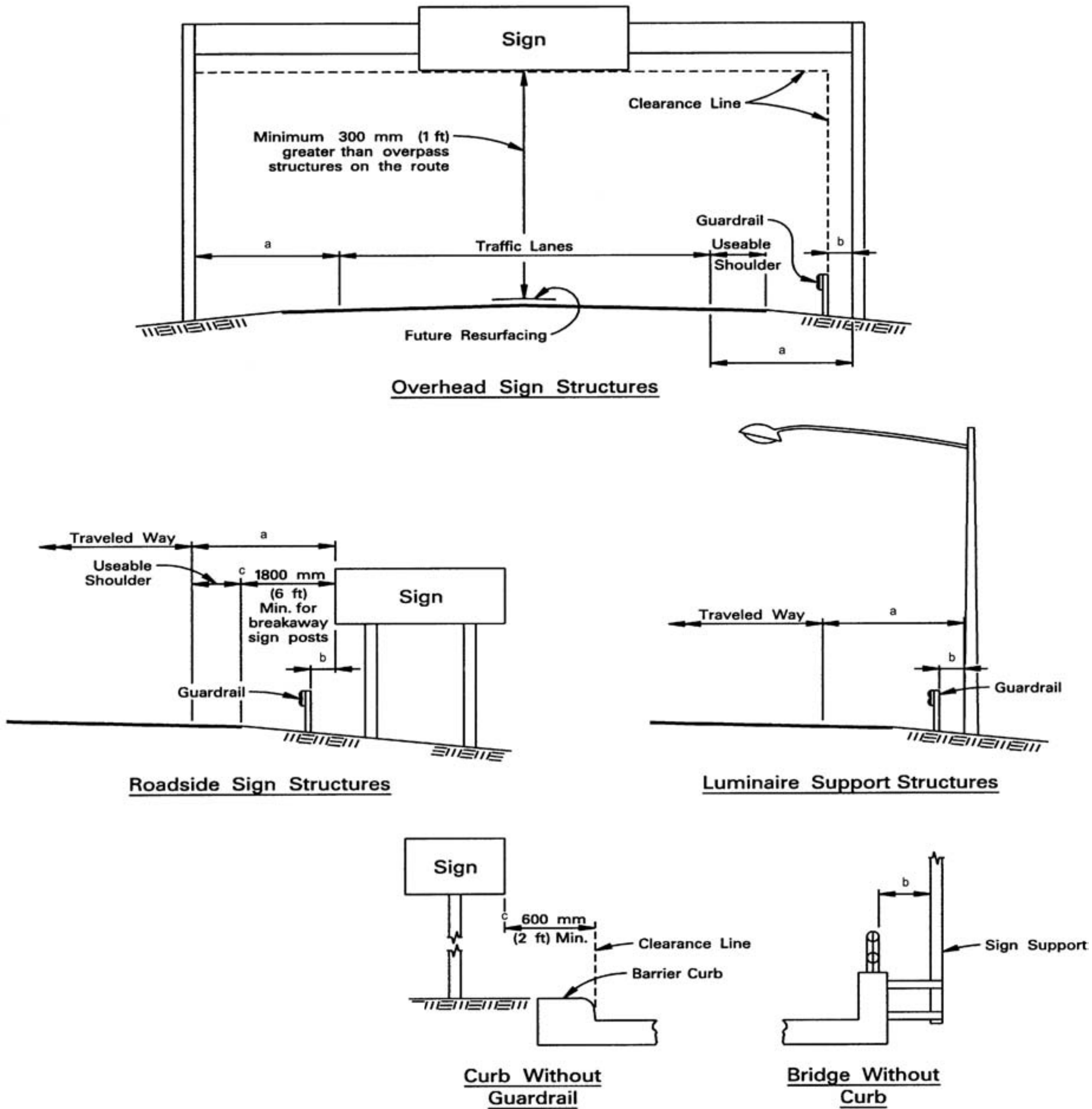
2.4.2.1—Vertical Clearances

Overhead sign and overhead traffic signal structures shall provide a vertical clearance over the entire width of the pavement and shoulders of 300 mm (1 ft) greater than the required minimum vertical clearance of overpass structures on the route. The vertical clearance shall be either in conformance with *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets* for the functional classification of the highway, or exceptions thereto shall be justified. Possible reduction of vertical clearance should be investigated. Additional guidance on vertical clearances may be found in the *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices.*

C2.4.2.1

The minimum clearance should include an allowance for possible future overlays.

The additional 300-mm (1-ft) vertical clearance is required so that high vehicles will strike the stronger overpass structures first, thereby lessening the chance of major collision damage to the structurally weaker overhead sign support or traffic signal support structures. A depiction of this clearance limit is illustrated in Figure 2-1.



Notes:

[a] See Article 2.5.1 on Clear Zone Distances and Article 2.5.2 on Breakaway Supports

[b] See Article 2.5.3 on Guardrails and Other Barriers

[c] See *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices*

Figure 2-1—Location of Structural Supports

2.4.2.2—Size, Height, and Location of Signs

The *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices* should be consulted for the sizes, heights, and placement of signs for any installation.

C2.4.2.2

The *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices* includes information on signs for sizes, illumination and reflectorization, location, height, and lateral clearance.

2.4.2.3—Illumination and Reflectorization of Signs

Illumination and reflectorization of signs should conform with the provisions of the *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices*.

Except where reflectorization is deemed adequate, all overhead sign installations should normally be illuminated. The lighting equipment should produce uniform illumination for the sign surface and the position of the lighting fixtures should not impair normal viewing of the sign or obstruct view of the roadway. Where internal illumination is used in conjunction with translucent materials, the colors of the sign should appear essentially the same by night and day.

C2.4.2.3

An Informational Guide for Roadway Lighting provides some information for luminance and illuminance of signs.

High-intensity reflectorized sheeting can be used to eliminate the need for sign illumination and maintenance walkways.

2.4.2.4—Variable Message Signs

Cantilevered support structures for variable message signs (VMS) shall be designed for fatigue in accordance with Section 11, “Fatigue Design.”

The design of VMS support structures, enclosures, and connections to the support structure will normally require additional considerations that are beyond the scope of these Specifications.

C2.4.2.4

VMS are composed of lamps or luminous elements that may be visible during the day as well as at night. The lamps and electronics are contained within an enclosure, which weighs significantly more than most sign panels.

NCHRP Report 411 provides some information regarding the design of VMS support structures. Additional design considerations that are not provided in the report may still be required.

2.5—ROADSIDE REQUIREMENTS FOR STRUCTURAL SUPPORTS

Consideration shall be given to safe passage of vehicles adjacent to or under a structural support. The hazard to errant vehicles within the clear zone distance, defined in Article 2.5.1, should be minimized by locating obstacles a safe distance away from the travel lanes. Roadside requirements and location of structural supports for highway signs, luminaires, and traffic signals should generally adhere to the principles given in Articles 2.5.1 through 2.5.9.

C2.5

Where possible, a single support should be used for dual purposes (e.g., signals and lighting). Consideration should also be given to locating luminaire supports to minimize the necessity of encroaching on the traveled way during routine maintenance.

2.5.1—Clear Zone Distance

Structural supports should be located in conformance with the clear zone concept as contained in Chapter 3, "Roadside Topography and Drainage Features," of the *Roadside Design Guide*, or other clear zone policy accepted by the FHWA. Where the practical limits of structure costs, type of structures, volume and design speed of through-traffic, and structure arrangement make conformance with the *Roadside Design Guide* impractical, the structural support should be provided with a breakaway device or protected by the use of a guardrail or other barrier.

C2.5.1

The clear zone, illustrated in Figure 2-1, is the roadside border area beyond the traveled way, available for safe use by errant vehicles. This area may consist of a shoulder, a recoverable slope, a nonrecoverable slope, and/or a clear run-out area. The desired width is dependent on the traffic volumes and speeds and on the roadside geometry.

Suggested minimum clear zone distances are provided in the *Roadside Design Guide* and are dependent on average daily traffic, slope of roadside, and design vehicle speed. Additional discussions of clear zone distances and lateral placement of structural support may be found in the *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices* and *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*.

2.5.2—Breakaway Supports

Breakaway supports should be used for luminaire and roadside sign supports when they cannot be placed outside the roadside clear zone or behind a guardrail. The requirements of Section 12, "Breakaway Supports," shall be satisfied. The requirements of Articles 2.5.2.1 and 2.5.2.2 should be met for the proper performance of the breakaway support.

Breakaway supports housing electrical components shall have the use of electrical disconnects considered for all new installations and for existing installations that experience frequent knockdown.

C2.5.2

Generally, breakaway supports should be provided whenever the support is exposed to traffic. Breakaway supports cannot usually be incorporated with overhead sign bridges, cantilever overhead signs, or high-level lighting supports. These structure types can often be placed outside the clear zone; however, if they are located within the clear zone, barrier protection is required.

Article 12.5.3 contains information on electrical disconnects.

2.5.2.1—Foundations

The top of foundations and projections of any rigidly attached anchor bolts or anchor supports should not extend above the ground level enough to increase the hazard or to interfere with the operation of a breakaway support.

C2.5.2.1

Foundations for breakaway supports located on slopes are likely to require special details to avoid creating a notch in the slope that could impede movement of the support when broken away or a projection of the foundation that could snag the undercarriage of an impacting vehicle. Foundations should be designed considering the breakaway stub height limitations of Article 12.5.3.

2.5.2.2—Impact Height

Breakaway supports should be located such that the location of impact of an errant vehicle's bumper is consistent with the maximum bumper height used in breakaway qualification tests.

C2.5.2.2

The breakaway performance of most, if not all, breakaway supports degrades with an increase in impact height. Typically, the bumper center height in breakaway qualification tests is about 450 mm (18 in.). Research suggests that a breakaway support should not be located where the trajectory of an errant vehicle is likely to result in the bumper of the vehicle striking the support more than 700 mm (28 in.) above the ground line at the support. This criterion will be met where a foreslope is no greater than 1 to 6 or the face of the support is not more than 600 mm (24 in.) outside the intersection of a shoulder slope and a 1 to 4 foreslope.

2.5.3—Guardrails and Other Barriers

The location of roadside sign and luminaire supports behind a guardrail should provide clearance between the back of the rail and the face of the support to ensure that the rail will deflect properly when struck by a vehicle. Continuity of the railing on rigid highway structures should not be interrupted by sign or luminaire supports.

The clearance between the edge of a sign panel, which could present a hazard if struck, and the back of a barrier should also take into consideration the deflection of the rail. The edge of a sign shall not extend inside the face of the railing.

C2.5.3

Guardrails, as illustrated in Figure 2-1, are provided to shield motorists from fixed objects and to protect fixed objects, such as overhead sign supports. The *Roadside Design Guide* provides guidelines for the provision of roadside barriers for fixed objects.

The clearance between the back of the barrier and the face of the support may vary, depending on type of barrier system used. The *Roadside Design Guide* may be used to determine the proper clearance.

2.5.4—Roadside Sign and Luminaire Supports

Roadside sign and typical luminaire supports, within the clear zone distance specified in Article 2.5.1, should be designed with a breakaway feature acceptable under NCHRP Report 350, or protected with a guardrail or other barrier. Where viewing conditions are favorable, roadside sign and typical luminaire supports may be placed outside the clear zone distance.

C2.5.4

Where there is a probability of being struck by errant vehicles, even supports outside this suggested clear zone should preferably be breakaway.

2.5.5—Overhead Sign Supports and High-Level Lighting Supports

Overhead sign and high-level lighting structural supports should be placed outside the clear zone distance; otherwise, they should be protected with a proper guardrail or other barrier.

C2.5.5

Overhead sign and high-level lighting supports are considered fixed-base support systems that do not yield or break away on impact. The large mass of these support systems and the potential safety consequences of the systems falling to the ground necessitate a fixed-base design. Fixed-base systems are rigid obstacles and should not be used in the clear zone area unless shielded by a barrier. In some cases, it may be cost effective to place overhead sign supports outside the clear zone with no barrier protection when the added cost of the greater span structure is compared with the long-term costs of guardrail and vegetation maintenance. Some structures can sometimes be located in combination with traffic barriers protecting other hazards, such as culverts, bridge ends, and embankments.

2.5.6—Traffic Signal Supports

Traffic signal supports that are installed on high-speed facilities should be placed as far away from the roadway as practical. Shielding these supports should be considered if they are within the clear zone for that particular roadway.

C2.5.6

Traffic signal structural supports with mast arms or span wires normally are not provided with a breakaway device. However, pedestal pole traffic signal supports are appropriately designed to be breakaway. Pedestal poles should, if possible, be placed on breakaway supports because they are usually in close proximity to traffic lanes.

2.5.7—Gores

Where obstruction in the gore is unavoidable within the clear zone, protection should be provided by an adequate crash cushion or the structure should be provided with a breakaway device.

2.5.8—Urban Areas

For sign, luminaire, and traffic signal structures located in working urban areas, the minimum lateral clearance from a barrier curb to the support is 500 mm (20 in.). Where no curb exists, the horizontal clearance to the support should be as much as reasonably possible.

C2.5.8

The 500-mm (20-in.) offset is not an urban *clear zone*, rather it was established to avoid interference with truck mirrors, open doors, and so forth. The preferred location of support structures is on the *house side* of the sidewalk.

2.5.9—Joint-Use Supports

Where possible, consideration should be given to the joint usage of supports in urban areas.

C2.5.9

Advantage should be taken of joint usage to reduce the number of supports in urban areas. For example, a traffic sign and signal support can be combined with a lighting pole.

2.6—CORRELATION OF STRUCTURAL SUPPORT DESIGN WITH ROADWAY AND BRIDGE DESIGN

2.6.1—Signs

Sign panels may be supported on existing or proposed grade separation structures. In these cases, the minimum vertical clearance requirements for overhead signs do not apply. A specifically designed frame shall be required to attach the sign panel to the existing structure. The overhead sign should be located as near to the most advantageous position for traffic operation as possible, but where structurally adequate support details can be provided.

C2.6.1

Sign installation on grade separation structures is generally acceptable aesthetically when the sign panels do not extend below the girders or above the railing. The sign panel should be placed slightly above the minimum vertical clearance specified for the grade separation structure. Close liaison between bridge and traffic engineers is essential for signs mounted on grade separation structures.

The placement of overhead signs must be considered in the preliminary design stages to avoid possibly restricting the driver's view of sign messages by other signs or structures. Signing is an integral part of the highway environment and must be developed along with the roadway and bridge designs.

2.6.2—Luminaires

The location of luminaire supports should be coordinated with the function and location of other structures.

C2.6.2

The location of the luminaire supports should be coordinated with the location of the sign structures so that the driver's view of sign legends is not hampered. Attention should be given to correlate interchange and structure lighting with the lighting provided on the other sections of the roadway. Where practical, high-level lighting may be used to reduce the number of supports required, present fewer roadside obstacles, and improve safety for maintenance personnel.

2.7—MAINTENANCE

A regular maintenance program should be established that includes periodic inspection, maintenance, and repair of structural supports.

C2.7

The AASHTO Maintenance Manual includes information for scheduling, inspecting, and maintaining structures.

All structural supports should be inspected for the effects of corrosion and fatigue. Some connections, such as the slip base breakaway connection on some roadside sign and luminaire supports, may require periodic maintenance to maintain the specified torque requirements of the bolts for the connection to function properly. Steel poles and brackets that are not galvanized should be painted as frequently as required by local conditions.

Provisions to perform maintenance and inspection of structural supports should include the following:

- Inspection ladders, walkways, and covered access holes, if necessary, where other means of inspection are not practical;
- The means to perform inspection, maintenance, and repair of overhead sign and traffic signal structural supports, without obstructing the traveled way on all except low-volume highways; and
- The means to perform maintenance and repair of structural supports for roadway lighting systems caused by such factors as lamp outages, destruction resulting from vehicle impact, vandalism, accumulation of dirt on luminaries, and corrosion.

Maintenance and repair of overhead sign structural supports may be done either by special maintenance equipment operated from the shoulder or by construction of a maintenance walkway on the sign structural support.

Maintenance and servicing of luminaires and lighting for signs should be considered when designing lighting systems. Most high-level lighting systems use methods and equipment that lower the luminaire assembly by means of cables and winches to ground level for servicing. Truck-mounted units are also available that allow servicing of supports up to about 30 m (98 ft) in height.

High-level lighting poles have been outfitted to accept movable video equipment for the inspection of the pole.

2.8—REFERENCES

AASHTO. 1980. *A Guide to Standardized Highway Lighting Pole Hardware,* ARTBA Technical Bulletin No. 270, LPH-1. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

AASHTO. 2002. *Roadside Design Guide*, Third Edition, with 2006 Chapter 6 update, RSDG-3-M. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

AASHTO. 2004. *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*, Fifth Edition, GDHS-5. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

AASHTO. 2005. *Roadway Lighting Design Guide*, Sixth Edition, GL-6. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

AASHTO. 2007. *AASHTO Maintenance Manual for Roadways and Bridges*, Fourth Edition, MM-4. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

FHWA. 1993. *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices*, 1988 Edition of MUTCD, Revision 3. Federal Highway Administration, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC.

Fouad, F. H., E. A. Calvert, and E. Nunez. 1998. *Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals*, NCHRP Report 411. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

Funnell, J. E., and D. K. Curtice. *A Study of Roadway Lighting.* San Antonio, Texas: Southwest Research Institute, September 1968.

Ross, H. E., D. L. Sicking, R. A. Zimmer, and J. D. Michie. 1993. *Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features*, NCHRP Report 350. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

SECTION 3: LOADS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 3:

LOADS

3.1—SCOPE

This Section specifies minimum requirements for loads and forces, the limits of their application, and load combinations that are used for the design or structural evaluation of supports for highway signs, luminaires, and traffic signals.

Where different mean recurrence intervals may be used in specifying the loads, the selection of the proper mean recurrence interval is the responsibility of the Owner.

Fatigue-sensitive supports are addressed in Section 11.

C3.1

This Section includes specifications for the dead load, live load, ice load, and wind load.

The Specification defines wind loads in terms of 3-s gust wind speeds instead of the formerly used fastest-mile wind speeds. Use of the 3-s gust wind speed map may result in significant increases or decreases (relative to the fastest-mile) in the calculated wind loads depending on the location of the structure.

3.2—DEFINITIONS

Basic Wind Speed, V—The 3-s gust wind speed at 10 m (33 ft) above the ground associated with a 50-yr mean recurrence interval.

Design Wind Pressure, P_z—The pressure exerted on a member or attachment by wind. The pressure is calculated using appropriate design values for all variables in the wind pressure equation.

Drag Coefficient, C_d—A dimensionless coefficient that adjusts the effective velocity pressure, vp_z, for the effects of the geometry of the element and the Reynolds number.

Effective Velocity Pressure, vp_z—The pressure exerted by the effects of the wind assuming that the importance factor, I_r, and the drag coefficient, C_d, are both equal to 1.0.

Fastest-Mile Wind Speed—The peak wind speed averaged over 1.6 km (1 mi) of wind passing a point.

Gust Effect Factor, G—A dimensionless coefficient that adjusts the wind pressure to account for the dynamic interaction of the wind and the structure.

Height and Exposure Factor, K_z—A dimensionless coefficient that corrects the magnitude of wind pressure referenced to a height above the ground of 10 m (33 ft) for the variation of wind speed with height.

Importance Factor, I_r—A factor that converts wind pressures associated with a 50-yr mean recurrence interval to wind pressures associated with other mean recurrence intervals.

Mean Recurrence Interval, r—The inverse of the probability of occurrence of a specific event in a 1-yr period. (If an event has a 0.02 probability of occurrence in 1 yr, it has a mean recurrence interval of 50 yr = 1/0.02.)

Service Life—Time that the structure is expected to be in operation.

Solidity—The solid elevation area divided by the total enclosed elevation area for a truss.

Special Wind Region—A region where the magnitude of the local wind speeds is dramatically affected by local conditions. Wind speeds in these areas should be determined by consulting the authority having local jurisdiction or through the analysis of local meteorological conditions.

Three-Second Gust Wind Speed—The average wind speed measured over an interval of 3 s.

Velocity Conversion Factor, C_v—A factor that converts 3-s gust wind speeds associated with a 50-yr mean recurrence interval to 3-s gust wind speeds associated with other mean recurrence intervals. The square of the velocity conversion factor equals the corresponding importance factor.

3.3—NOTATION

b	=	overall width (m, ft)
BL	=	basic load
C_d	=	drag coefficient
C_{dD}	=	drag coefficient for round cylinder of diameter D
C_{dd}	=	drag coefficient for round cylinder of diameter d_o
C_{dm}	=	drag coefficient for multisided section
C_{dr}	=	drag coefficient for round section
C_v	=	velocity conversion factor for the selected mean recurrence interval
d	=	depth (diameter) of member (m, ft)
D	=	major diameter of ellipse (m, ft)
DL	=	dead load (N, lb)
d_o	=	minor diameter of ellipse (m, ft)
G	=	gust effect factor
Ice	=	ice load (N, lb)
I_r	=	importance factor based upon the rth mean recurrence interval
K_z	=	height and exposure factor
L_{sign}	=	longer dimension of the attached sign (m, ft)
n_c	=	normal component of wind force (N, lb)
P_z	=	design wind pressure (Pa, psf)
r	=	mean recurrence interval expressed in years for importance factor, I_r
r_c	=	ratio of corner radius to radius of inscribed circle
r_m	=	ratio of corner radius to radius of inscribed circle where multisided section is considered multisided
r_r	=	ratio of corner radius to radius of inscribed circle where multisided section is considered round
r_s	=	ratio of corner radius to depth of square member
t_c	=	transverse component of wind force (N, lb)
V	=	basic wind speed, expressed as a 3-s gust wind speed, at 10 m (33 ft) above the ground in open terrain associated with a 50-yr mean recurrence interval (m/s, mph)
vp_z	=	effective velocity pressure at a height z above ground (Pa, psf)
W	=	wind load (N, lb)
W_h	=	wind load on exposed horizontal support (N, lb)
W_l	=	wind load on luminaires (N, lb)
W_p	=	wind load on sign panel or traffic signal (N, lb)
W_{sign}	=	shorter dimension of the attached sign (m, ft)
W_v	=	wind load on exposed vertical supports (N, lb)
z	=	height at which wind pressure is calculated (m, ft)
z_g	=	constant for calculating the exposure factor and is a function of terrain
α	=	constant for calculating the exposure factor and is a function of terrain

3.4—GROUP LOAD COMBINATIONS

The loads described in Articles 3.5 through 3.8 shall be combined into appropriate group load combinations as stipulated in Table 3-1. Each part of the structure shall be proportioned for the combination producing the maximum load effect, using allowable stresses increased as indicated for the group load.

The loads for Group IV, *fatigue*, shall be computed in accordance with Articles 11.6 and 11.7.

C3.4

Table 3-1 has been modified from the 1994 edition of the Specifications. The percentage increase for group load combinations II and III has changed from 40 percent to 33 percent. The primary reason for the change is to ensure consistency with major specifications in the United States.

An additional load combination for fatigue has been added based on NCHRP Report 412.

The intent of the Specifications is to provide an adequate margin of safety against failure. For example, the minimum safety factors for bending for a steel tubular section are approximately 1.92 for Group I loading and 1.45 for Group II and Group III loadings. The safety factor may vary depending on the material and cross-section used; however, consideration has been given to ensure the equity in safety factors among different materials addressed by these Specifications. Some materials and structural shapes may warrant a higher safety factor because of inherent variability in the material or the manufacturing process.

Table 3-1—Group Load Combinations

Group Load	Load Combination	Percentage of Allowable Stress[a]
I	*DL*	100
II	*DL* + *W*	133
III	$DL + Ice + {}^{1}/_{2}(W)$ [b]	133
IV	Fatigue	[c]

Notes:

[a] Percentages of allowable stress are applicable for the allowable stress design method. No load reduction factors shall be applied in conjunction with these increased allowable stresses.

[b] *W* shall be computed based on the wind pressure. A minimum value of 1200 Pa (25 psf) shall be used for W in Group III.

[c] See Section 11 for fatigue loads and stress range limits.

[d] See Article 3.6 regarding application of live load.

3.5—DEAD LOAD

The dead load shall consist of the weight of the structural support, signs, luminaires, traffic signals, lowering devices, and any other appurtenances permanently attached to and supported by the structure. Temporary loads during maintenance shall also be considered as part of the dead loads. The points of application of the weights of the individual items shall be their respective centers of gravity.

C3.5

Dead load is to include all permanently attached fixtures, including hoisting devices and walkways provided for servicing of luminaires or signs.

3.6—LIVE LOAD

A live load consisting of a single load of 2200 N (500 lb) distributed over 0.6 m (2.0 ft) transversely to the member shall be used for designing members for walkways and service platforms. The load need not be applied to the structural support.

C3.6

The specified live load represents the weight of a person and equipment during servicing of the structure. Only the members of walkways and service platforms are designed for the live load. Any structural member designed for the group loadings in Article 3.4 will be adequately proportioned for live load application. For OSHA-compliant agencies, additional requirements may apply.

3.7—ICE LOAD

Ice load shall be a load of 145 Pa (3.0 psf) applied around the surfaces of the structural supports, traffic signals, horizontal supports, and luminaires; but it shall be considered only on one face of sign panels.

Figure 3-1 shows the locations within the contiguous United States where an ice load should be considered.

Ice loads different from the 145 Pa (3.0 psf) may be used provided historical ice accretion data are available for the region of interest.

C3.7

The ice loading is applicable to those areas shown in Figure 3-1. It is based on a 15 mm (0.60 in.) radial thickness of ice at a unit weight of 960 kg/m^3 (60 pcf) applied uniformly over the exposed surface.

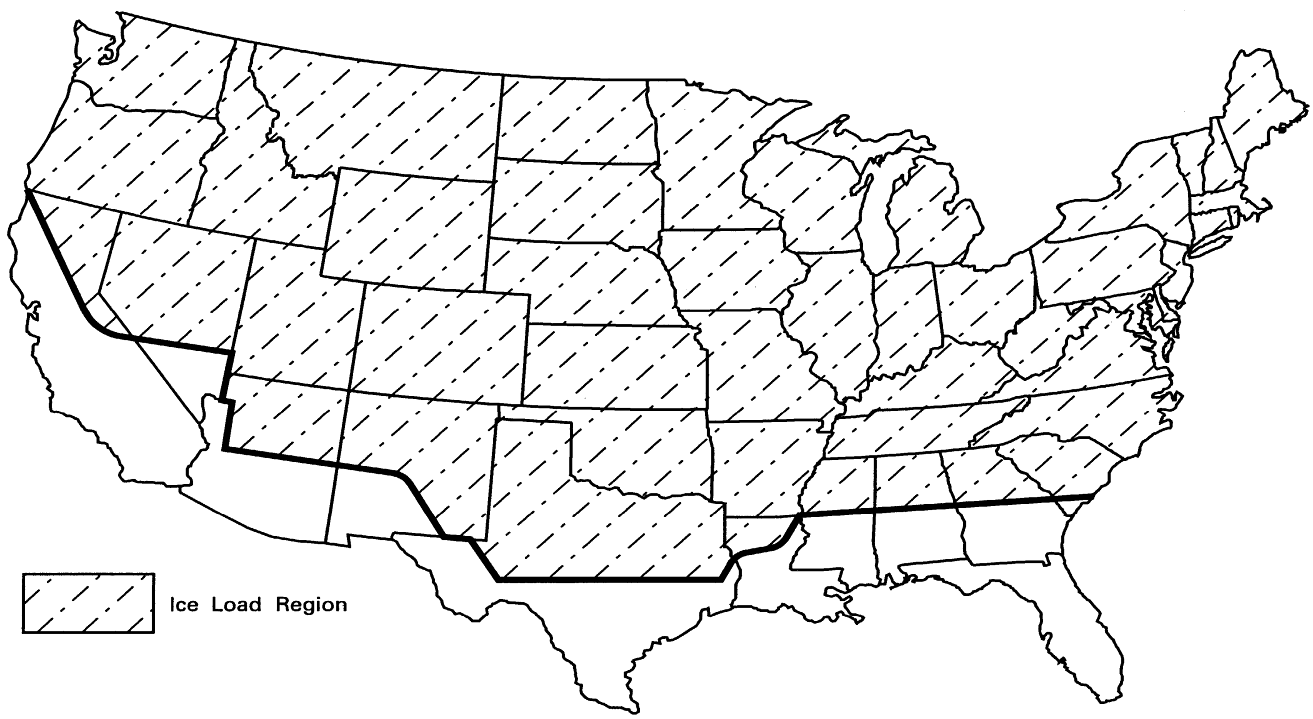


Figure 3-1—Ice Load Map

3.8—WIND LOAD

Wind load shall be the pressure of the wind acting horizontally on the supports, signs, luminaires, traffic signals, and other attachments computed in accordance with Articles 3.8.1 through 3.8.6, Eq. 3-1 corresponding to the appropriate 50-yr mean recurrence interval basic wind speed as shown in Figure 3-2, and the appropriate importance factor selected from Table 3-2.

Design wind pressures computed in accordance with Appendix C may be used in lieu of those given above, as specified by the Owner.

C3.8

The alternative method for the determination of the design wind pressure is the same method contained in the 1994 edition of the Specifications.

3.8.1—Wind Pressure Equation

The design wind pressure shall be computed using the following equation:

$$P_z = 0.613 K_z G V^2 I_r C_d \text{ (Pa)} \tag{3-1}$$

$$P_z = 0.00256 K_z G V^2 I_r C_d \text{ (psf)}$$

C3.8.1

The wind pressure equation is based on fundamental fluid-flow theory and formulations presented in ANSI/ASCE 7-95. More recent ASCE/SEI 7 publications are available; however, this specification largely uses ASCE 7-95 and research on which it is based.

For recurrence intervals of 10 or 25 yr, the design wind pressure for hurricane wind velocities greater than 45 m/s (100 mph) should not be less than the design wind pressure calculated for V equal to 45 m/s (100 mph) and the corresponding nonhurricane I_r value (Table 3-2).

3.8.2—Basic Wind Speed

The basic wind speed V used in the determination of the design wind pressure shall be as given in Figure 3-2. For areas that lie between isotachs in Figure 3-2, the basic wind speed shall be determined either by interpolation or by using the higher adjacent isotach.

C3.8.2

Previous versions of the Specifications incorporated individual wind speed maps for 10-, 25-, and 50-yr mean recurrence intervals. These wind speed maps were developed by Thom (1968) and correspond to fastest-mile wind speeds.

The basic wind speeds in this Section are based on the 3-s gust wind speed map presented in Figure 3-2. This map is a metric conversion of the wind speed map published in ASCE/SEI 7. More recent ANSI/ASCE 7 maps may be used at the discretion of the Owner. The map is based on peak gust data collected at 485 weather stations (Peterka, 1992; Peterka and Shahid, 1993) and from predictions of hurricane speeds on the United States Gulf and Atlantic Coasts (Batts et al., 1980; Georgiou et al., 1983; Vickery and Twisdale, 1993). The map presents the variation of 3-s gust wind speeds associated with a height of 10 m (33 ft) for open terrain. In addition, the 3-s gust wind speeds presented in Figure 3-2 are associated with a 50-yr mean recurrence interval (annual probability of two percent that the wind speeds will be met or exceeded). The change to 3-s gust wind speeds represents a major change from the fastest-mile basis. It is necessary because most national weather service stations currently record and archive peak gust wind speeds and not fastest-mile wind speeds.

In Figure 3-2, the bold line that separates Washington, Oregon, and California from Idaho, Nevada, and Arizona divides the 38 m/s (85 mph) and 40 m/s (90 mph) wind regions, and should not be considered an isotach. As indicated in ASCE/SEI 7, the division between the 38 m/s (85 mph) and 40 m/s (90 mph) regions, which follow state lines, was sufficiently close to the 38 m/s (85 mph) contour line that there was no statistical basis for placing the division off state boundaries.

3.8.2.1—Elevated Locations

For site conditions elevated considerably above the surrounding terrain, where the influence of ground on the wind is reduced, consideration must be given to using higher pressures at levels above 10 m (33 ft).

C3.8.2.1

It may be necessary in some cases to increase the design wind speed to account for the effects of terrain. Although most situations will not require such an increase in wind speeds, ASCE/SEI 7 presents a rational procedure to increase the design wind speed when a structure is located on a hill or escarpment.

3.8.2.2—Special Wind Regions

The wind speed map presented in Figure 3-2 shows several special wind regions. If the site is located in a special wind region, or if special local conditions exist in mountainous terrain and gorges, the selection of the basic wind speed should consider localized effects. Where records or experience indicate that wind speeds are higher than those reflected in Figure 3-2, the basic wind speed should be increased using information provided by the authority having local jurisdiction. Such increases in wind speed should be based on judgment and the analysis of regional meteorological data. In no case shall the basic wind speed be reduced below that presented in Figure 3-2.

C3.8.2.2

If the wind speed is to be determined through the use of local meteorological data, ASCE/SEI 7 presents procedures for analyzing local meteorological data.

3.8.3—Wind Importance Factor I_r

A wind importance factor I_r shall be selected from Table 3-2 corresponding to the specified design life of the structure. Table 3-3 provides the recommended minimum design life for various structure types. Some roadside signs that are considered to have a relatively short life expectancy may be designed with a wind importance factor, I_{10}, based on a recommended minimum 10-yr mean recurrence interval. The Owner may specify a design life for a structure other than that shown in Table 3-3 and the corresponding wind importance factor shall be used.

C3.8.3

The importance factors allow the wind pressures associated with the 50-yr mean recurrence interval (3-s gust wind speeds) to be adjusted to represent wind pressures associated with 10-, 25-, or 100-yr mean recurrence intervals. The importance factors in Table 3-2 account for the different return periods associated with nonhurricane winds, hurricane winds, and winds in Alaska. The commentary of ASCE/SEI 7 contains provisions for the determination of a separate set of importance factors for each of these categories of wind. A major reason for the incorporation of these provisions was the significant difference in design pressures between nonhurricane and hurricane winds for structures designed with an assumed design life of 10 yr, such as some roadside signs. The values for the importance factors in Table 3-2 are equal to the square of the velocity conversion factors in the ASCE/SEI 7 commentary and Table 3-4.

Although Table 3-3 provides recommended minimum design lives for structural supports, the Owner should use discretion in specifying the design life for a particular structure and location.

In critical locations, it may be appropriate to determine wind pressures based on a 100-yr mean recurrence interval.

Luminaire support structures less than 15 m (50 ft) in height and traffic signal structures may be designed for a 25-yr design life, where locations and safety considerations permit and when approved by the Owner.

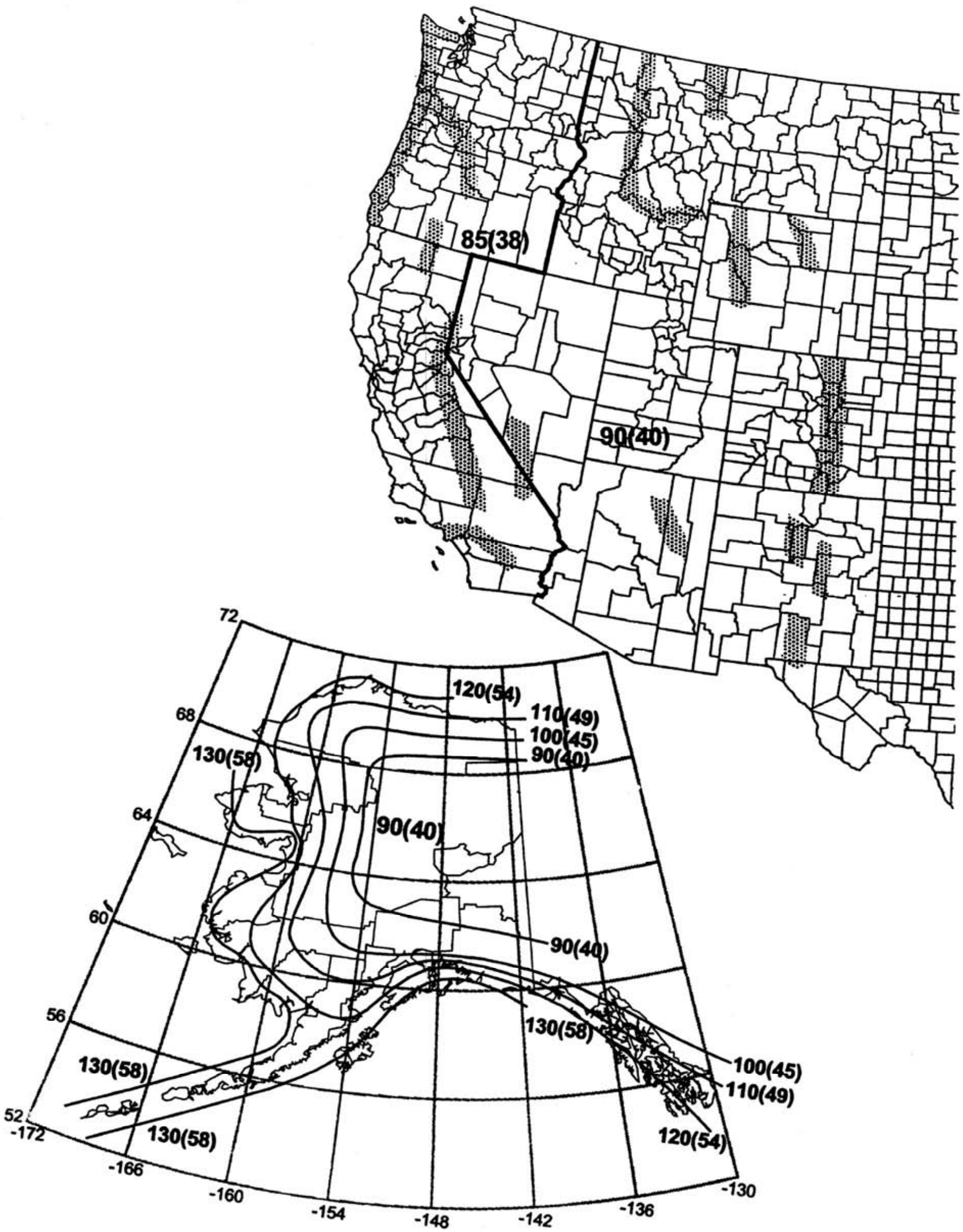
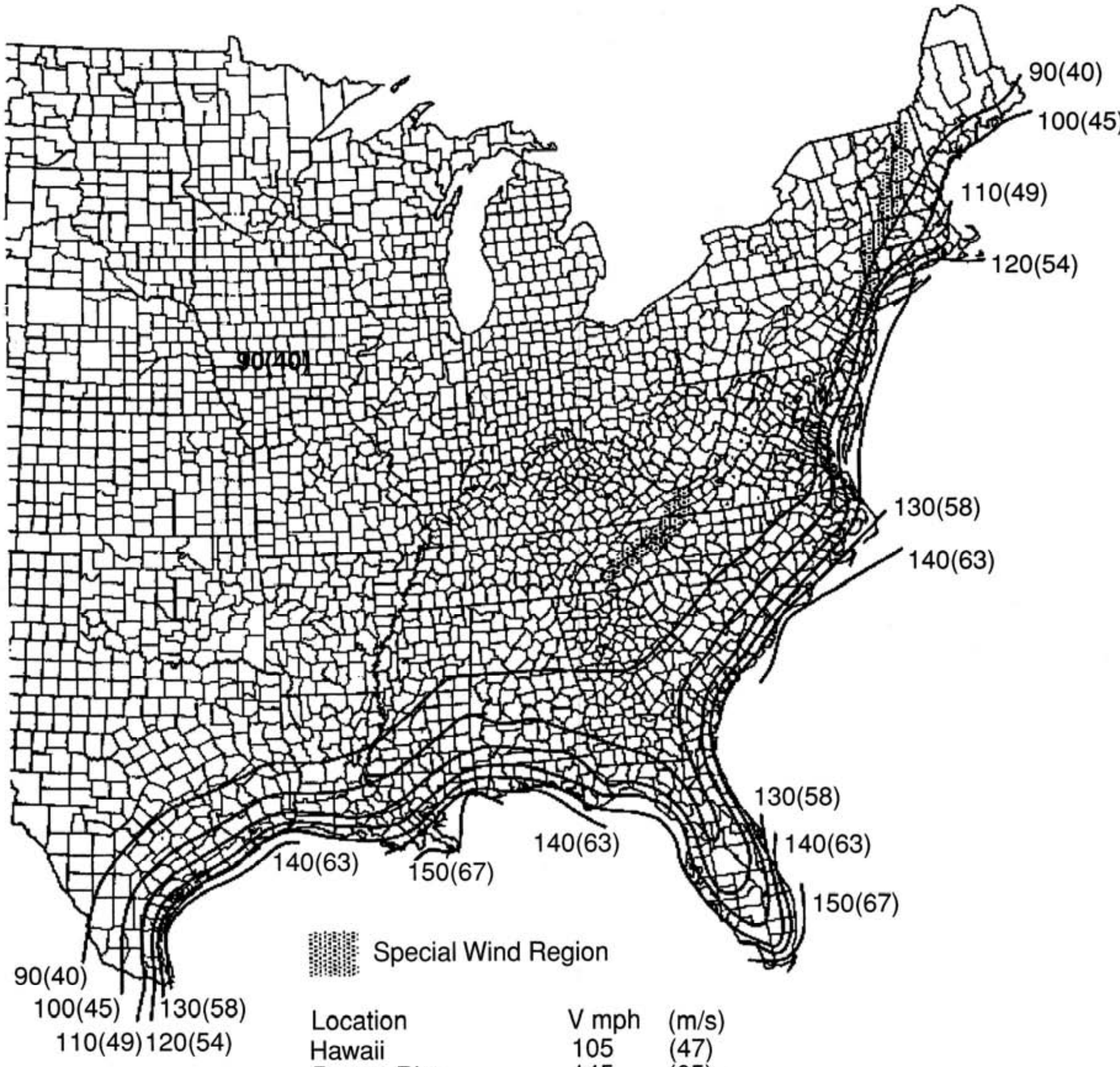


Figure 3-2—Basic Wind Speed, m/s (mph) (ANSI/ASCE 7-95)



Location	V mph	(m/s)
Hawaii	105	(47)
Puerto Rico	145	(65)
Guam	170	(76)
Virgin Islands	145	(65)
American Samoa	125	(56)

Notes:
1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 ft (10 m) above ground for Exposure C category.
2. Linear interpolation between wind contours is permitted.
3. Islands and coastal areas outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour of the coastal area.
4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.

Figure 3-2—Basic Wind Speed, m/s (mph) (ANSI/ASCE 7-95) *(continued)*

Table 3-2—Wind Importance Factors, I_r

Recurrence Interval Years	Basic Wind Speed in Nonhurricane Regions	Basic Wind Speed in Hurricane Regions with $V > 45$ m/s (100 mph)	Alaska
100	1.15	1.15	1.13
50	1.00	1.00	1.00
25	0.87	0.77[a]	0.89
10	0.71	0.54[a]	0.76

[a] The design wind pressure for hurricane wind velocities greater than 45 m/s (100 mph) should not be less than the design wind pressure using $V = 45$ m/s (100 mph) with the corresponding nonhurricane I_r value.

Table 3-3—Recommended Minimum Design Life

Design Life	Structure Type
50 yr	Overhead sign structures Luminaire support structures[a] Traffic signal structures[a]
10 yr	Roadside sign structures

[a] Luminaire support structures less than 15 m (50 ft) in height and traffic signal structures may be designed for a 25-yr design life, where locations and safety considerations permit and when approved by the Owner.

Table 3-4—Velocity Conversion Factors, C_v

Recurrence Interval Years	Basic Wind Speed in Nonhurricane Regions	Basic Wind Speed in Hurricane Regions with $V > 45$ m/s (100 mph)	Alaska
100	1.07	1.07	1.06
50	1.00	1.00	1.00
25	0.93	0.88	0.94
10	0.84	0.74	0.87

3.8.4—Height and Exposure Factor K_z

The height and exposure factor K_z shall be determined either from Table 3-5 or calculated using Eq. C3-1 in the commentary.

C3.8.4

K_z is a height and exposure factor that varies with height above the ground depending on the local exposure conditions and may be conservatively set to 1.0 for heights less than 10 m (33 ft). The variation is caused by the frictional drag offered by various types of terrain. ASCE/SEI 7 defines acceptable wind design procedures using different terrain exposure conditions. For a specified set of conditions, the wind pressures associated with the different exposures increase as the exposure conditions progress from B to D, with exposure B resulting in the least pressure and exposure D resulting in the greatest pressure. Exposure C has been adopted for use in these Specifications as it should provide an accurate or conservative approach for the design of structural supports. It represents open terrain with scattered obstructions.

Once the terrain exposure conditions are established, the height and exposure factor, K_z, is calculated using the following relationship that is presented in ASCE/SEI 7:

$$K_z = 2.01\left(\frac{z}{z_g}\right)^{\frac{2}{\alpha}} \tag{C3-1}$$

where z is height above the ground at which the pressure is calculated or 5 m (16 ft), whichever is greater, and z_g and α are constants that vary with the exposure condition. Based on information presented in ASCE/SEI 7, α should be taken to be 9.5 and z_g should be taken to be 274.3 m (900 ft) for exposure C. These values are for 3-s gust wind speeds and are different from similar constants that have been used for fastest-mile wind speeds. Table 3-5 presents the variation of the height and exposure factor, K_z, as a function of height based on the above relation.

Table 3-5—Height and Exposure Factors, K_z[a]

Height, m (ft)	K_z[a]
5.0 (16.4) or less	0.87
7.5 (24.6)	0.94
10.0 (32.8)	1.00
12.5 (41.0)	1.05
15.0 (49.2)	1.09
17.5 (57.4)	1.13
20.0 (65.6)	1.16
22.5 (73.8)	1.19
25.0 (82.0)	1.21
27.5 (90.2)	1.24
30.0 (98.4)	1.26
35.0 (114.8)	1.30
40.0 (131.2)	1.34
45.0 (147.6)	1.37
50.0 (164.0)	1.40
55.0 (180.5)	1.43
60.0 (196.9)	1.46
70.0 (229.7)	1.51
80.0 (262.5)	1.55
90.0 (295.3)	1.59
100.0 (328.1)	1.63

[a] See Eq. C3-1 for calculation of K_z.

3.8.5—Gust Effect Factor *G*

The gust effect factor, *G*, shall be taken as a minimum of 1.14.

C3.8.5

G is the gust effect factor and it adjusts the effective velocity pressure for the dynamic interaction of the structure with the gustiness of the wind. The gust effect factor, *G*, should not be confused with the gust coefficient that was incorporated in earlier versions of these Specifications. Although the two factors accomplish essentially the same purpose, the gust effect factor, *G*, is multiplied by the pressure, whereas the gust coefficient is multiplied by the wind speed. Hence, the gust effect factor, *G*, is the square of the gust coefficient. The procedure to calculate either the gust effect factor, *G*, or the gust coefficient depends on its wind sensitivity.

Information presented in ASCE/SEI 7 states that if the fundamental frequency of a structure is less than 1 Hz or if the ratio of the height to least horizontal dimension is greater than 4, the structure should be designed as a wind-sensitive structure. Thus, virtually all structures addressed by these Specifications should be classified as wind-sensitive structures based on the height to least horizontal dimension ratio. It is not appropriate to use a nonwind-sensitive gust effect factor, *G*, for the design of sign, luminaire, and traffic signal structures. Special procedures are presented in the commentary of ASCE/SEI 7 for the calculation of the gust effect factor for wind-sensitive structures. The ASCE/SEI 7 calculation procedure requires reasonable estimates of critical factors such as the damping ratio and fundamental frequency of the structure. These factors are site and structure dependent. Relatively small errors in the estimation of these factors result in significant variations in the calculated gust effect factor. Therefore, even though sign, luminaire, and traffic signal support structures are wind sensitive, the benefits of using the ASCE/SEI 7 gust effect factor calculation procedure do not outweigh the complexities introduced by its use.

Previous versions of these AASHTO Specifications addressed wind sensitivity by incorporating an increased gust coefficient of 1.3. This gust coefficient corresponds to a gust effect factor of 1.69 = (1.3)(1.3) for use with fastest-mile basic wind speeds. The 1.3 gust coefficient has been used within these Specifications since around 1961. It was intended to reflect the wind sensitivity of the types of structures addressed by these Specifications. Its origin traces to a paper by Sherlock (1947) and subsequent wind engineering literature through the 1950s and 1960s. Use of this factor results in higher wind loads than would be expected for structures that are not wind sensitive. As discussed above, it is clear that most structures supporting signs, signals, and luminaires are wind sensitive. Thus, the types of structures addressed by these Specifications should be designed for wind loads that are higher than those used to design typical buildings, per ASCE/SEI 7. Finally, use of the traditional gust coefficient of 1.3 has resulted in successful designs. Therefore, the 3-s gust effect factor, *G*, derived from the traditional fastest-mile gust coefficient of 1.3 is the basis for this Specification.

The fastest-mile gust coefficient of 1.3 is converted to a 3-s gust coefficient by multiplying the gust coefficient of 1.3 by the ratio of the fastest-mile wind speed to the 3-s gust wind speed. This ratio is approximately equal to 0.82 based on ASCE/SEI 7. The equivalent 3-s gust coefficient is equal to 1.07 = (1.3)(0.82). The corresponding gust effect factor, *G*, is then found to be approximately equal to 1.14 by squaring the 3-s gust coefficient. Therefore, a gust effect factor, *G*, of 1.14 is recommended for the design of structural supports for signs, signals, and luminaires. Supports that have been designed with this past philosophy have performed well. Therefore, use of this philosophy is continued.

The following illustrates the relationship between the gust effect factor, G, and the fastest-mile gust coefficient. Neglecting the effects from height above ground, exposure, and drag, the use of the gust effect factor of 1.14 with an assumed 3-s gust speed results in essentially the same wind pressure as was determined by the 1994 edition of these Specifications using the 1.3 gust coefficient and the equivalent fastest-mile wind speed. The equivalent fastest-mile wind speed is 82 percent of the 3-s gust wind speed.

If the Designer wishes to perform a more rigorous gust effect analysis, the procedures presented in ASCE/SEI 7 may be used.

3.8.6—Drag Coefficients C_d

The wind drag coefficient, C_d, shall be determined from Table 3-6.

C3.8.6

The validity of the drag coefficients presented in Table 3-6 have been the subject of recent research (McDonald et al., 1995). Based on this work coupled with independent examinations of the information presented in Table 3-6, the drag coefficients were changed to account only for the use of metric units and 3-s gust wind speeds, except for square and diamond shapes. The fundamental philosophy and procedures remain unchanged.

A conversion factor, C_v, is used in Table 3-6 to convert the 3-s gust wind speed for a 50-yr mean recurrence interval, V, to the 3-s gust wind speed corresponding to the selected design life of the structure. The use of this conversion factor provides a proper representation of the wind flow characteristics around a multisided or round tube and a proper determination of the resulting drag coefficient for the maximum likely velocity during the selected design life of the structure.

Research concerning C_d values for dodecagonal shapes has been conducted at Iowa State University (James, 1971). The highest coefficients for the dodecagonal cylinder were measured for wind normal to a flat side. A circular cylinder was included in the testing program to allow a check on the test equipment, and boundary corrections were applied to the raw test data. All measured values for the dodecagonal cylinder with zero angle of incidence were higher than those measured for the circular cylinder. Lower shape coefficients might be justified for some velocities; however, this would require additional data for the dodecagons at lower Reynolds numbers and review of the factors specified for round cylinders.

The equation for the C_d value for an elliptical member with the narrow side facing the wind was empirically derived to fit wind tunnel test data.

The drag coefficients for hexdecagons include the effects that varying ratios of corner radius to cylinder radius have on the drag coefficient. The C_d values for C_vVd greater than 10.66 m/s-m (78 mph-ft) were selected from information from wind tunnel tests on a number of hexdecagons with different ratios of corner radius to radius of inscribed circle (James, 1985).

These minimum C_d values vary linearly from 0.83 for a ratio of zero, to a value of 0.55 for ratios equal to or over 0.26. For consistency between maximum C_d values for cylinders and hexdecagons, the maximum C_d value for hexdecagons was selected to be the maximum value given for a cylinder. For a given ratio, values of C_d for C_vVd values between 5.33 (39) and 10.66 (78) vary linearly from 1.10 for C_vVd equal to 5.33 (39) to the minimum value at C_vVd equal to 10.66 (78). The wind force resulting from use of these C_d values represents the total static force acting on the member, which would be the vector sum of the actual drag force and lift or side force.

Values of C_d for octagonal shapes vary with wind velocity and orientation according to tests, but a value of 1.20 shows to be conservative over a wide range. Values of C_d for square tubing, with the wind direction perpendicular to the side of the tube, have been revised to reflect the influence from the ratio of the corner radius to depth of member (James and Vogel, 1996).

A transition in the values of C_d for multisided cross-sections (hexdecagonal, dodecagonal, and octagonal) that approach round was developed in NCHRP 494, *Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals* (Fouad et al., 2003) and incorporated as note c to Table 3-6. The method uses a linear equation to interpolate between the drag coefficient for round poles, C_{dr}, and the drag coefficient for multisided poles, C_{dm}, with respect to the variable r_c. If r_c is unknown, the section can conservatively be treated as multisided using the lowest reasonable value of r_c for the section.

Values of C_d for square tubing, with the wind direction perpendicular to the diagonal axis (diamond configuration), are based on wind tunnel tests (James and Vogel, 1996).

When three members are used to form a triangular truss, the wind load shall be applied to all of the members. Even though all of the members are not in the same plane of reference, they may be seen in a normal elevation.

As provided in note b to Table 3-6, consideration may be given to modifying the forces applied to free-swinging traffic signals. Traffic signals are a combination of aerodynamic and nonaerodynamic shapes and open spaces; because of these factors, it is difficult to predict traffic signal wind loading, especially when the signal head is free to swing. At this time, it appears that the only practical means of predicting wind loading on free-swinging traffic signals is through wind-loading tests. More research in the area of traffic signal aerodynamics is needed.

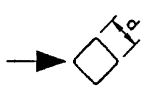
If traffic signals or signs on span-wire pole structures are restrained from swinging in the wind, their full wind load must be applied. When agreed on between Owner and Designer, reduced forces may be used for free-swinging traffic signals when substantiated by research (Marchman, 1971; Marchman and Harrison, 1971). Wind loads on signs that are not restrained from swinging in the wind may be reduced with the consent of the Owner. Wind tunnel test results (Marchman and Harrison, 1971) indicate instability problems with traffic signals with certain hood configurations when not restrained from swinging. These instability problems should be considered when designing span-wire support structures.

Table 3-6—Wind Drag Coefficients, C_d [a]

Sign Panel		
$L_{sign}/W_{sign} =$ 1.0	1.12	
2.0	1.19	
5.0	1.20	
10.0	1.23	
15.0	1.30	
Traffic Signals[b]	1.2	
Luminaires (with generally rounded surfaces)	0.5	
Luminaires (with rectangular flat side shapes)	1.2	
Elliptical Member ($D/d_o \leq 2$)	Broadside Facing Wind: $1.7\left(\frac{D}{d_o}-1\right)+C_{dD}\left(2-\frac{D}{d_o}\right)$	Narrow Side Facing Wind: $C_{dd}\left[1-0.7\left(\frac{D}{d_o}-1\right)^{\frac{1}{4}}\right]$
Two Members or Trusses (one in front of other) (for widely separated trusses or trusses having small solidity ratios see note c)	1.20 (cylindrical) 2.00 (flat)	
Variable Message Signs (VMS)[g]	1.70	
Attachments	Drag coefficients for many attachments (cameras, luminaires, traffic signals, etc.) are often available from the manufacturer, and are typically provided in terms of effective projected area (EPA), which is the drag coefficient times the projected area. If the EPA is provided, the drag coefficient shall be taken as 1.0.	

Continued on next page

Table 3-6—Wind Drag Coefficients, C_d [a]—*Continued*

Single Member or Truss Member	$C_vVd \leq 5.33$ m²/s (39 mph-ft)	5.33 m²/s (39 mph-ft) < C_vVd < 10.66 m²/s (78 mph-ft)	$C_vVd \geq 10.66$ m²/s (78 mph-ft)
Cylindrical	1.10	$\frac{9.69}{\left(C_vVd\right)^{1.3}}$ (SI) $\frac{129}{\left(C_vVd\right)^{1.3}}$ (U.S. Customary)	0.45
Flat[d]	1.70	1.70	1.70
Hexdecagonal: $0 \leq r_c < 0.26$	1.10	$1.37 + 1.08r_c - \frac{C_vVd}{19.8} - \frac{C_vVdr_c}{4.94}$ (SI) $1.37 + 1.08r_c - \frac{C_vVd}{145} - \frac{C_vVdr_c}{36}$ (U.S. Customary)	$0.83 - 1.08r_c$
Hexdecagonal: $r_c \geq 0.26$[e]	1.10	$0.55 + \frac{\left(10.66 - C_vVd\right)}{9.67}$ (SI) $0.55 + \frac{\left(78.2 - C_vVd\right)}{71}$ (U.S. Customary)	0.55
Dodecagonal[e]	1.20	$\frac{3.28}{\left(C_vVd\right)^{0.6}}$ (SI) $\frac{10.8}{\left(C_vVd\right)^{0.6}}$ (U.S. Customary)	0.79
Octagonal[e]	1.20	1.20	1.20
Square 	$2.0 - 6rs$ [for $rs < 0.125$] 1.25 [for $rs \geq 0.125$]		
Diamond[f] 	1.70 [for d = 0.102 & 0.127 (0.33 & 0.42)] 1.90 [for $d \geq 0.152(0.50)$]		

Notes:

[a] Wind drag coefficients for members, sign panels, and other shapes not included in this table shall be established by wind tunnel tests (over an appropriate range of Reynolds numbers), in which comparative tests are made on similar shapes included in this table.

[b] Wind loads on free-swinging traffic signals may be modified, as agreed by the Owner of the structure, based on experimental data (Marchman, 1971).

[c] Current data show that the drag coefficients for a truss with a very small solidity ratio are merely the sum of the drags on the individual members, which are essentially independent of one another. When two elements are placed in a line with the wind, the total drag depends on the spacing of the elements. If the spacing is zero or very small, the drag is the same as on a single element; however, if the spacing is infinite, the total force would be twice as much as on a single member. When considering pairs of trusses, the solidity ratio is of importance because the distance downstream in which shielding is effective depends on the size of the individual members. The effect of shielding dies out in smaller spacings as the solidity decreases. Further documentation may be found in *Transactions* (ASCE, 1961).

[d] Flat members are those shapes that are essentially flat in elevation, including plates and angles.

[e] Valid for members having a ratio of corner radius to distance between parallel faces equal to or greater than 0.125. For multisided cross-sections with a large corner radius, a transition value for C_d can be taken as:

If $r_c \leq r_m$, then $C_d = C_{dm}$

If $r_m < r_c < r_r$, then $C_d = C_{dr} + (C_{dm} - C_{dr})[(r_r - r_c)/(r_r - r_m)]$

If $r_c \geq r_r$, then $C_d = C_{dr}$

where:

r_c = ratio of corner radius to radius of inscribed circle,

C_{dm} = drag coefficient for multisided section,

C_{dr} = drag coefficient for round section,

r_m = maximum ratio of corner radius to inscribed circle where the multisided section's drag coefficient is unchanged (table below), and

r_r = ratio of corner radius to radius of inscribed circle where multisided section is considered round (table below).

Shape	r_m	r_r
16-Sided, Hexdecagonal	0.26	0.63
12-Sided, Dodecagonal	0.50	0.75
8-Sided, Octagonal	0.75	1.00

[f] The drag coefficient applies to the diamond's maximum projected area measured perpendicular to the indicated direction of wind.

[g] A value of 1.7 is suggested for Variable Message Signs (VMS) until research efforts can provide precise drag coefficients.

Table 3-7—Effective Velocity Pressures, vp_z, Pa (psf) for Indicated Wind Velocity, m/s (mph) [a]

Height, m (ft)	38 (85)	40 (90)	45 (100)	49 (110)	54 (120)	58 (130)	63 (140)	67 (150)
5.0 (16.4) or less	873 (18.2)	967 (20.4)	1224 (25.2)	1451 (30.5)	1763 (36.4)	2034 (42.7)	2399 (49.5)	2714 (56.8)
7.5 (24.6)	951 (19.9)	1053 (22.3)	1333 (27.5)	1581 (33.3)	1920 (39.6)	2215 (46.5)	2613 (53.9)	2955 (61.9)
10.0 (32.8)	1010 (21.1)	1119 (23.7)	1416 (29.2)	1679 (35.3)	2040 (42.1)	2353 (49.4)	2776 (57.3)	3140 (65.7)
12.5 (41.0)	1059 (22.1)	1173 (24.8)	1485 (30.6)	1760 (37.0)	2138 (44.1)	2466 (51.7)	2910 (60.0)	3291 (68.9)
15.0 (49.2)	1100 (23.0)	1219 (25.8)	1543 (31.8)	1829 (38.5)	2221 (45.8)	2563 (53.8)	3024 (62.4)	3420 (71.6)
17.5 (57.4)	1136 (23.7)	1259 (26.6)	1594 (32.9)	1889 (39.8)	2295 (47.3)	2647 (55.5)	3123 (64.4)	3533 (73.9)
20.0 (65.6)	1169 (24.4)	1295 (27.4)	1639 (33.8)	1943 (40.9)	2360 (48.7)	2723 (57.1)	3212 (66.2)	3633 (76.1)
22.5 (73.8)	1198 (25.0)	1327 (28.1)	1680 (34.6)	1992 (41.9)	2419 (49.9)	2791 (58.6)	3293 (67.9)	3724 (78.0)
25.0 (82.0)	1225 (25.6)	1357 (28.7)	1718 (35.4)	2037 (42.9)	2474 (51.0)	2854 (59.9)	3367 (69.4)	3808 (79.7)
27.5 (90.2)	1250 (26.1)	1385 (29.3)	1753 (36.1)	2078 (43.7)	2524 (52.0)	2912 (61.1)	3435 (70.8)	3885 (81.3)
30.0 (98.4)	1273 (26.6)	1410 (29.8)	1785 (36.8)	2116 (44.5)	2570 (53.0)	2965 (62.2)	3499 (72.2)	3957 (82.8)
35.0 (114.8)	1315 (27.5)	1457 (30.8)	1844 (38.0)	2186 (46.0)	2655 (54.8)	3063 (64.3)	3614 (74.5)	4088 (85.6)
40.0 (131.2)	1352 (28.3)	1498 (31.7)	1896 (39.1)	2249 (47.3)	2731 (56.3)	3150 (66.1)	3717 (76.7)	4204 (88.0)
45.0 (147.6)	1386 (29.0)	1536 (32.5)	1944 (40.1)	2305 (48.5)	2799 (57.7)	3230 (67.8)	3810 (78.6)	4310 (90.2)
50.0 (164.0)	1417 (29.6)	1571 (33.2)	1988 (41.0)	2357 (49.6)	2862 (59.0)	3302 (69.3)	3896 (80.3)	4406 (92.2)
55.0 (180.5)	1446 (30.2)	1602 (33.9)	2028 (41.8)	2405 (50.6)	2920 (60.2)	3369 (70.7)	3975 (82.0)	4496 (94.1)
60.0 (196.9)	1473 (30.8)	1632 (34.5)	2065 (42.6)	2449 (51.5)	2974 (61.3)	3431 (72.0)	4048 (83.5)	4579 (95.8)
70.0 (229.7)	1521 (31.8)	1686 (35.6)	2134 (44.0)	2530 (53.2)	3072 (63.4)	3544 (74.4)	4182 (86.2)	4730 (99.0)
80.0 (262.5)	1565 (32.7)	1734 (36.7)	2194 (45.3)	2602 (54.8)	3160 (65.2)	3645 (76.5)	4301 (88.7)	4865 (101.8)
90.0 (295.3)	1604 (33.5)	1777 (37.6)	2250 (46.4)	2667 (56.1)	3239 (66.8)	3737 (78.4)	4409 (90.9)	4987 (104.4)
100.0 (328.1)	1640 (34.3)	1817 (38.4)	2300 (47.4)	2727 (57.4)	3312 (68.3)	3821 (80.2)	4508 (93.0)	5099 (106.7)

Notes:

[a] $vp_z = 0.613\, K_z\, G\, V^2\, I_r\, C_d$ ($vp_z = 0.00256\, K_z\, G\, V^2\, I_r\, C_d$) for I_r and C_d equal to 1.0, and $G = 1.14$

[b] Effective velocity pressures may be linearly interpolated.

3.9—DESIGN WIND LOADS ON STRUCTURES

Figures 3-3 through 3-5 depict application of loads on various types of structural supports.

3.9.1—Load Application

The wind loads acting horizontally on a structure shall be determined by the areas of the supports, signs, luminaires, signals, and other attachments and shall be applied to the surface area as viewed in normal elevation.

The effective projected area (EPA) is the actual area multiplied by the appropriate drag coefficient. If the EPA is provided for the luminaire or attachment, the design wind pressure (Article 3.8.1) shall be computed without incorporating the drag coefficient C_d.

C3.9.1

Confirm with the component supplier literature and so forth regarding the incorporation of C_d in the reported EPA.

3.9.2—Design Loads for Horizontal Supports

Horizontal supports of luminaire support structures and all connecting hardware shall be designed for wind loads, W_l and W_h, applied at the centers of pressure of the respective areas.

Horizontal supports of sign structures (cantilevered or bridge type) and traffic signal structures shall be designed for wind loads, W_h and W_p, applied normal to the support at the centers of pressure of the respective areas.

Horizontal supports for span-wire pole structures shall be designed for wind loads, W_h and W_p, where W_h may be applied as a series of concentrated loads along the span wire.

3.9.3—Design Loads for Vertical Supports

The vertical supports for luminaire structures, traffic signal structures (excluding pole top mounted traffic signals and post top luminaire structures), and sign support structures shall be designed for the effects of wind from any direction. An acceptable method to design for the effects of wind from any direction is by applying the following two load cases of normal and transverse wind loads acting simultaneously. This method is applicable where all signs are approximately in one plane and is not applicable for structures with arms in two or more planes.

Load Case	Normal Component (n_c)	Transverse Component (t_c)
1	1.0 (*BL*)	0.2 (*BL*)
2	0.6 (*BL*)	0.3 (*BL*)

C3.9.3

The Specifications provide a simplified means to account for the effects of wind from any direction. Other more rigorous methods that appropriately account for the effects of wind from any direction may also be used.

The basic load (BL) for the structures with rigid horizontal supports shall be the effects from the wind loads, W_v, W_l, W_p, and W_h, applied at the centers of pressure of the respective areas of the structures and normal to the sign faces. Nonsymmetrical single roadside sign supports shall be designed for normal and transverse components (n_c, t_c).

The transverse components may be distributed in proportion to the relative lateral stiffness and restraint conditions of the supports.

Vertical supports for span-wire pole structures (provided only a single span wire is attached to each support) may be designed for the full wind loads, W_v, W_p, and W_h, applied normal to the span wire, without the application of the transverse components (t_c).

The transverse components (t_c) may be neglected for the design of typical span-wire structures (provided only a single wire is attached to each support), because the wind direction resulting in the maximum tension in the span wire should be normal to the span.

A possible exception would be if the combined projected areas of the sides of the attachments are significantly greater than their combined projected areas parallel to the span.

3.9.4—Unsymmetrical Wind Loading

To allow for unsymmetrical wind loading, the loading conditions stipulated in Articles 3.9.4.1 through 3.9.4.3 shall be used in conjunction with those of Articles 3.9.2 and 3.9.3 to compute the design torsional load effects. The resulting torsional stresses shall be included with the wind load stresses for the fully loaded structure.

3.9.4.1—Overhead Cantilevered Supports

For vertical supports with balanced double cantilevers (i.e., equal torsional load effects from each arm), the normal wind load shall be applied to one arm only, neglecting the force on the other arm. For unbalanced double cantilevers, the normal wind loads shall be applied only to the arm that results in the largest torsional load effect.

When vertical supports have more than two arms, and the arms are mounted opposite or at diverging angles from one another, the wind load shall be applied to one arm when balanced or only to the arm that results in the largest torsional load effect when unbalanced.

3.9.4.2—Concentrically Mounted Supports

For high-level (pole or truss type) lighting structures, pole top mounted luminaire supports, pole top mounted traffic signals, or roadside signs with single supports, the torsional load effect for concentrically mounted attachments shall be calculated as the wind loads, W_p, W_l, and W_h, multiplied by 0.15 b, where b is the width measured between the out-to-out extremities of the attachments.

For nonconcentrically mounted attachments, the torsional load effect shall be calculated using the net torque.

C3.9.4.2

A minimum 15 percent eccentricity is required for concentrically loaded support structures.

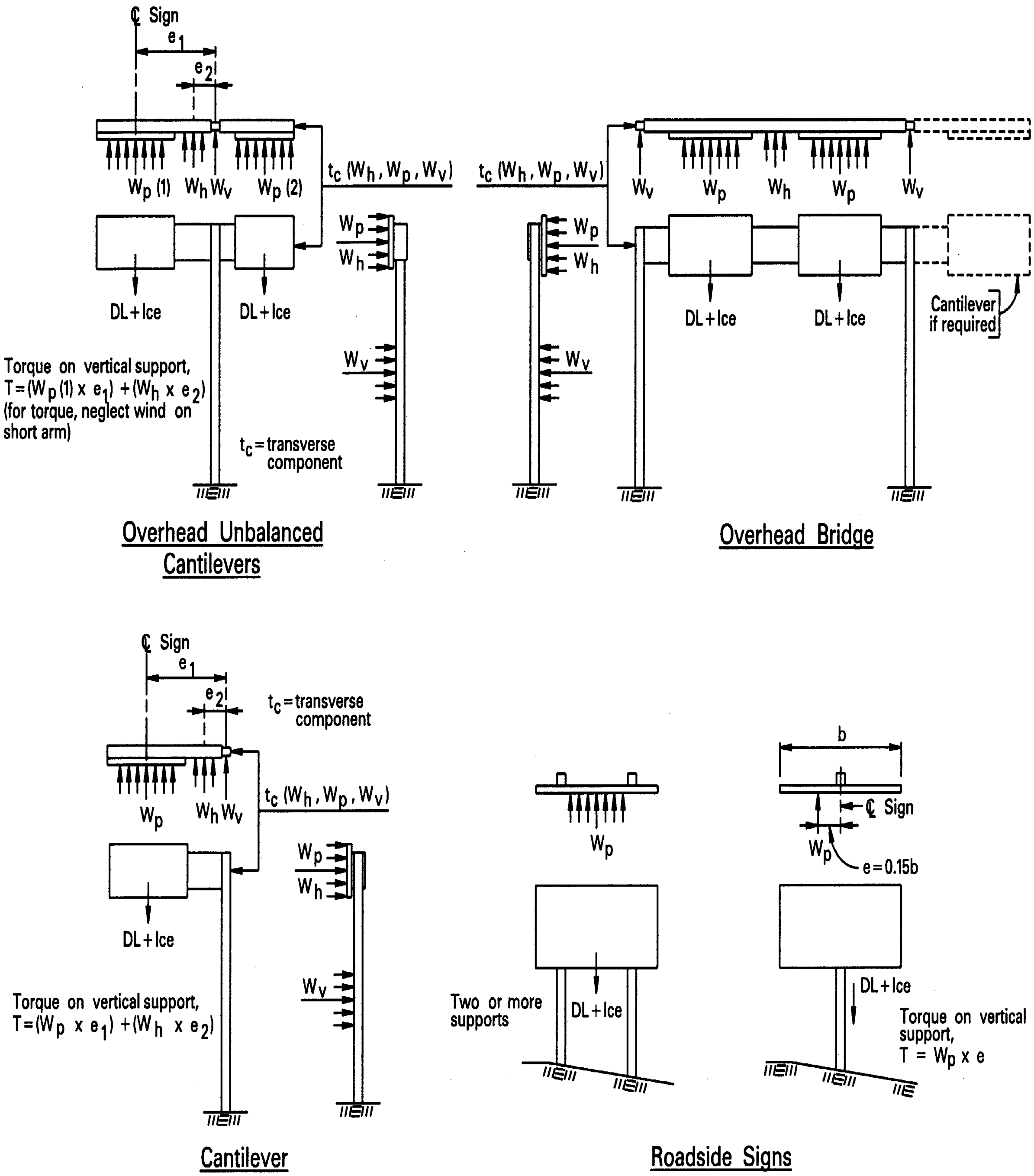


Figure 3-3—Loads on Sign Support Structures

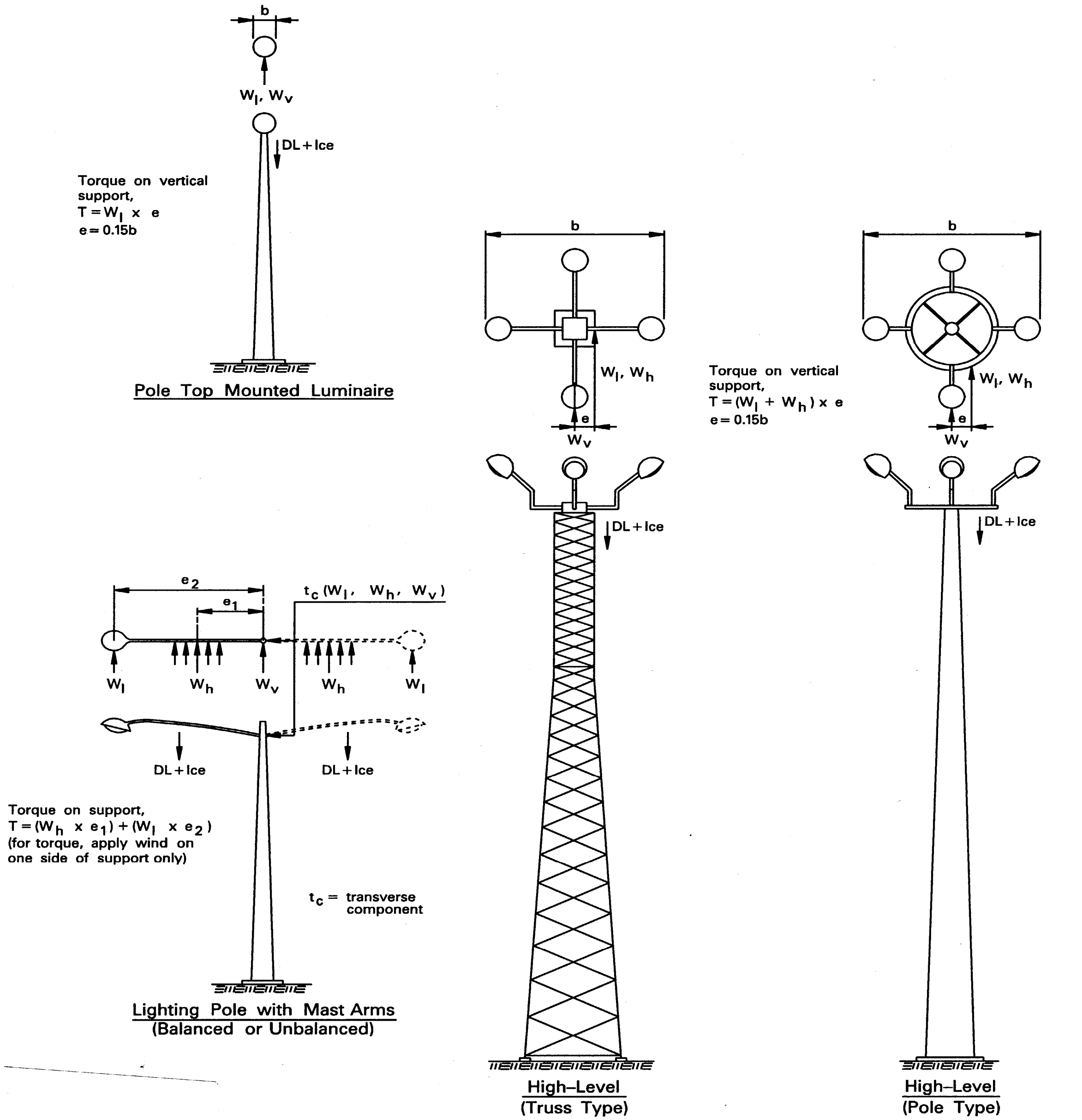


Figure 3-4—Loads on Luminaire Support Structures

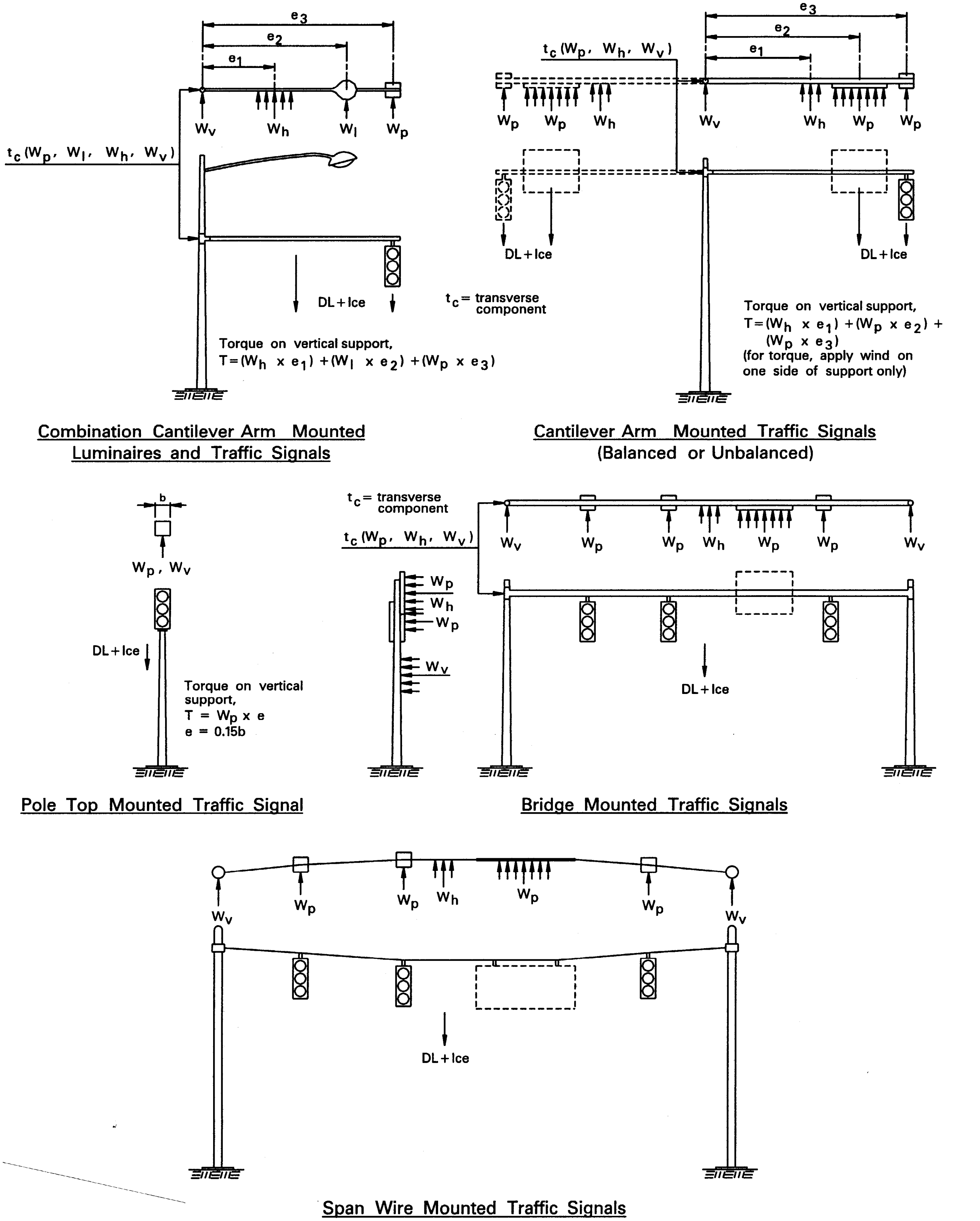


Figure 3-5—Loads on Traffic Signal Support Structures

3.10—REFERENCES

ANSI. 1982. *Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures,* Report No. ANSI A58.1-1982. American National Standards Institute, New York, NY.

ASCE. 1961. "Wind Forces on Structures," *Transactions* 126, American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, Part II, pp. 1124–1198.

ASCE. 1990. *Standard Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures,* Report No. ANSI/ASCE 7-88. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY.

ASCE. 1994. *Standard Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures*, Report No. ANSI/ASCE 7-93. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY.

ASCE. 1996. *Standard Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures*, Report No. ANSI/ASCE 7-95. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY.

ASCE. 2006. *Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures*, Report no. ASCE/SEI 7-05. American Society of Civil Engineers, Reston, VA.

Batts, M. E., M. R. Cordes, L. R. Russell, J. R. Shaver, and E. Simiu. 1980. *Hurricane Wind Speeds in the United States*, NBS Building Science Series 124. National Bureau of Standards, Washington, DC.

Brockenbrough, R. L. 1970. "Suggested Structural Design Criteria for Steel Lighting Standards," *US Steel Report* 6, Project No. 57–019–450, January 1970.

Davenport, A. G. 1967. "Gust Loading Factors," *ASCE Journal of the Structural Division.* American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 93, No. ST3, June 1967.

Delany, N. K., and N. E. Sorensen. 1953. *Low-Speed Drag of Cylinders of Various Shapes*, Report No. NACA-TN-3038. National Advisory Committee for Aeronautics (now National Aeronautics and Space Administration), Ames Research Center, Moffett Field, CA.

Durst, C. S. 1960. "Wind Speeds over Short Periods of Time," *Meteorology Magazine*. Vol. 89, pp. 181–187.

Fouad, F., Initials Author, and Initials Author. 2003. Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals, NCHRP Report 494. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington DC.

Georgiou, P. N., A. G. Davenport, and B. J. Vickery. 1983. "Design Wind Speeds in Regions Dominated by Tropical Cyclones," *Journal of Wind Engineering and Industrial Aerodynamics*. Elsevier, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, Vol. 13, pp. 139–152.

Jackson, P. S., and J. C. R. Hunt. 1975. "Turbulent Wind Flow over a Low Hill," *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society.* Reading, New England, Vol. 101.

James, W. D. 1985. Effects of Reynolds Number and Corner Radius on Two-Dimensional Flow Around Hexdecagonal Cylinders, AIAA-83-1705. In *Proc., AIAA Sixth Computational Fluid Dynamics Conference*, Danvers, MA, American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics, Reston, VA.

James, W. D. 1971, Wind Tunnel Tests of a Two-Dimensional Round-Cornered Dodecagonal Cylinder. Meyer Manufacturing, Red Wing, MN.

James, W. D., and J. M. Vogel. 1996. Variation of Section Drag Coefficient with Variation in Reynolds Number for Square Cylinders with Various Corner Radii. Valmont Industries, Valley, NE.

Krayer, W. R., and R. D. Marshall. 1992. "Gust Factors Applied to Hurricane Winds," *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society.* American Meteorology Society, Washington, DC, Vol. 73, pp. 613–617.

Lemelin, D. R., D. Surry, and A. G. Davenport. 1988. "Simple Approximations for Wind Speed-Up over Hills," *Journal of Wind Engineering and Industrial Aerodynamics.* Elsevier, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, Vol. 28.

Liu, H. 1990. Wind Engineering: A Handbook for Structural Engineers. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.

Marchman, III, J. 1971. "Wind Loading on Free-Swinging Traffic Signals," *Transportation Engineering Journal*. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 97, No., TE2, pp. 237–246. (May 1971)

Marchman III, J. F., and W. P. Harrison, Jr. 1971. *Wind Loading on Traffic Signals,* Report to Hapco Company, Abingdon, VA. Virginia Polytechnic Institute, Blacksburg, VA.

McDonald, J. R., K. C. Mehta, W. W. Oler, and N. Pulipaka. 1995. *Wind Load Effects on Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals Structures*, Report No. 1303-F. Wind Engineering Research Center, Texas Tech University, Lubbock, TX.

Minor, R. C. 1972. *Wind Tunnel Tests of Elliptical and Round Tubes*. Hapco Company, Abingdon, VA.

Peterka, J. A. 1992. "Improved Extreme Wind Prediction for the United States," *Journal of Wind Engineering and Industrial Aerodynamics.* Elsevier, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, Vol. 41, pp. 533–541.

Peterka, J. A., and S. Shahid. 1993. "Extreme Gust Wind Speeds in the U.S.," *Proceedings, 7th U.S. National Conference on Wind Engineering* 2. University of California, Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA, pp. 503–512.

Sherlock, R. H. 1947. "Gust Factors in the Design of Buildings," *International Association for Bridge and Structural Engineering.* IABSE, Zurich, Switzerland, Vol. 8, pp. 207–236.

Simiu, E. and R. H. Scanlan. 1986. *Wind Effects on Structures,* Second Edition. John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY.

Simiu, E., M. J. Changery, and J. J. Filliben. 1979. "Extreme Wind Speeds at 129 Stations in the Contiguous United States," *Building Science Series,* Report 118. National Bureau of Standards, Washington, DC.

Texas Transportation Institute. 1967. *Wind Loads on Roadside Signs on Highway Sign Support Structures,* Vol. 2. Texas A&M University, College Station, TX.

Thom, H. C. S. 1968. "New Distribution of Extreme Winds in the United States," *Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers* 94, No. ST7. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY.

Vickery, B. J., and L. A. Twisdale. 1993. "Prediction of Hurricane Wind Speeds in the U.S," *Proceedings, 7th NationaI Conference on Wind Engineering* 2. University of California, Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA.

SECTION 4: ANALYSIS AND DESIGN—GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 4:

ANALYSIS AND DESIGN—GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

4.1—SCOPE

This Section describes methods of analysis for the design of structural supports for highway signs, luminaires, and traffic signals. Other methods of analysis that are based on documented material characteristics and satisfy equilibrium and compatibility may also be used.

C4.1

The overall design philosophy for structural supports is stated in this Section. Additionally, approximate methods of analyses and simplified equations to assist the Designer are provided in appendices referenced in this Section. Procedures for second-order analysis and calculating forces in span-wire structures are provided.

4.2—DEFINITIONS

Equilibrium—A state where the sums of forces and moments about any point in space are equal to zero.

Secondary Bending Moment—An increase in the bending moment resulting from axial load and the structure's lateral displacement under load.

4.3—NOTATION

C_A = coefficient for amplification of bending stresses

D_P = weight of the pole (N, k)

E = modulus of elasticity (MPa, ksi)

F_a = allowable compressive stress (MPa, ksi)

F_y = specified minimum yield stress (MPa, ksi)

f_b = bending stress in steel or aluminum (MPa, ksi)

I_B = moment of inertia for the cross-section at the base of the pole (mm^4, $in.^4$)

I_T = moment of inertia for the cross-section at the top of the pole (mm^4, $in.^4$)

k = slenderness factor

K_p = shape factor, ratio of plastic moment to yield moment

L = length of the pole (mm, in.)

P_T = vertical concentrated load at the top of the pole (N, k)

r = radius of gyration (mm, in.)

4.4—DESIGN METHOD

These Specifications follow an allowable stress design (ASD) approach for the design of steel, aluminum, wood, and fiber-reinforced composite structural supports. The prestressed concrete design section follows a combination of allowable stress and ultimate strength design approaches.

C4.4

NCHRP Report 411 retained the allowable stress design approach, due to the lack of vital information necessary to establish a rational load and resistance factor design (LRFD) approach. A significant amount of time would have been required to perform probability-based studies for the various types of support structures. Total reliance on existing LRFD codes and specifications was not possible to obtain the needed information. Information and literature were lacking in the areas of fiberglass design, wood design, and tapered tubular members.

The ASD approach is based on elastic stress calculations. In this design philosophy, the nominal strength of the member divided by a factor of safety provides the basis to compute the allowable stresses. All loads are assumed to have the same variability, and stresses induced by the most critical combination of the loads should not exceed the corresponding allowable stresses of the material.

In the ASD approach, a structural member is designed such that the stress resulting from the action of all applicable loads and computed by the elastic straight-line theory (for flexure) does not exceed allowable stresses of the material. The required group load combinations are provided in Section 3, “Loads.” Stresses calculated under the action of loads are limited to values well within the elastic range of the materials so that the straight-line relationship between stress and strain is applicable. The factor of safety used to determine the allowable stress is generally dependent on the mechanical properties of the material under consideration and the type of action or forces induced by the applied loads.

4.5—STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS

The theory of elastic structural analysis shall be used for determining the maximum load effects (axial, shear, bending, and torsion) for which the members shall be designed.

Analysis and design of structural supports shall conform to generally accepted engineering practices.

C4.5

Methods of analysis that satisfy the requirements of equilibrium and compatibility of the structure and use the linear stress–strain relationship for the material may be used.

4.6—DESIGN OF STRUCTURAL SUPPORTS

4.6.1—Vertical Cantilever Supports (Pole-Type)

Second-order effects in accordance with Article 4.8 shall be considered in the design of vertical pole-type cantilever supports.

4.6.2—Horizontal Supports (Single-Member or Truss)

Horizontal supports (single-member or truss) shall be proportioned using the combined stress equations given in these Specifications.

4.6.3—Horizontal Supports (Span Wire and Connections)

The wire and its connection in span-wire structures shall be designed for the maximum tension force encountered along the support times a minimum safety factor specified in Article 5.13.

4.7—ANALYSIS OF SPAN-WIRE STRUCTURES

The analysis of span-wire structures shall be performed using methods based on commonly accepted principles of mechanics. Tensions and deflections of span wires shall satisfy equilibrium and compatibility. Loads applied to span-wire structures shall be computed according to Section 3, “Loads.” Gravity and wind loads induced by attachments (i.e., signs, signals, and accessories) may be applied as equivalent point loads. Gravity and wind loads induced by the span wire may be applied as a series of concentrated loads.

Refined analytical methods based on large deflection theory or finite element formulations should be considered in the analysis of complex span-wire configurations, because the behavior of these structures may not be adequately explained using small deflection theory.

C4.7

Because of the nonlinear relationship between geometry and forces in span wires, superposition principles should not be applied to combine the effects of different loads. Therefore, the analysis should be performed considering a single load case with all loads acting simultaneously. Appendix A provides two methods to compute tensions on span wires. The simplified method, outlined in Appendix A, is intended to consider the case of rigid vertical supports. The detailed method outlined in the same appendix is intended to consider the case of flexible vertical supports.

4.8—SECOND-ORDER EFFECTS

For vertical cantilever support structures (pole-type), the secondary bending moment caused by the axial load shall be accounted for by provisions of Article 4.8.1, unless a more detailed calculation is made in accordance with Article 4.8.2.

C4.8

When a member is subjected to axial compressive stresses acting simultaneously with bending stresses, a second-order moment equal to the product of the resulting eccentricity times the applied axial load is generated. To account for this effect on vertical pole-type members, two methods of evaluating bending stresses are presented: the simplified method outlined in Article 4.8.1, and the detailed method outlined in Article 4.8.2.

The simplified method is intended primarily for hand computations, whereas the detailed method is intended for situations where a refined analysis is desired and a computer is available. The simplified method is conservative with respect to the detailed method.

4.8.1—Simplified Method

In the combined stress ratio equations for steel and aluminum (Eq. 5-16 in Article 5.12.1 and Eq. 6-30 in Article 6.7.1), the bending stress f_b shall be divided by the coefficient for amplification C_A to account for the secondary moment. The coefficient for amplification C_A shall be taken as:

$$C_A = 1 - \left[\frac{\sqrt[3]{\frac{I_B}{I_T}} P_T + 0.38 D_P}{\frac{2.46 E I_B}{L^2}} \right] \leq 1.0 \quad \text{(4-1)}$$

Eq. 4-1 is only valid when:

$$\sqrt{\frac{2\pi^2 E}{F_y}} \leq \frac{kL}{r}$$

C4.8.1

The coefficient for amplification C_A was included in the Specifications to be used mainly for vertical cantilever supports over 15 m (49.2 ft) in height or where other conditions are such that secondary P-delta effects are significant. It is derived based on linear structural analysis.

Previous editions of the Specifications included the following equation to compute the coefficient C_A:

$$C_A = 1 - \frac{1}{0.52} \left[\frac{P_T \sqrt[3]{\frac{I_B}{I_T}} + 0.38 D_P}{\frac{2.46 E I_B}{L^2}} \right] \leq 1.0 \quad \text{(C4-1)}$$

This equation provided an overestimation of the P-delta effect for certain combinations of lateral and vertical loads.

Eq. 4-1 presents a revised equation to compute the coefficient of amplification C_A where the term 1/0.52 was eliminated (Fouad et al., 1998). The revised equation improves the accuracy of the coefficient of amplification C_A to estimate the second-order effects on steel and aluminum vertical cantilever supports.

Eq. 4-1 is limited to values of kL/r greater than or equal to:

$$\sqrt{\frac{2\pi^2 E}{F_y}}$$

to ensure that the maximum allowable axial stress F_a is limited to $0.26F_y$, where F_y is the specified minimum yield strength. This requirement is intended to keep the axial stresses sufficiently low such that effects of residual stresses on the buckling behavior of the pole can be ignored. The radius of gyration r may be calculated at a distance of $0.50L$ for a tapered column.

4.8.2—Detailed Method

In lieu of the approximate procedure of Article 4.8.1, a detailed second-order elastic analysis that is applicable to all materials covered by the Specifications may be performed considering the final deflected position of the vertical support. In using that approach, the following procedure shall be used: Multiply the applied loads of a specific group load combination by 1.45.

Perform a second-order structural analysis using these loads. This analysis will provide amplified bending moments, and hence bending stresses, that account for the combined effects of axial loads and deflected shape of the structure. For the case of prestressed concrete structures, the effects of cracking and reinforcement on the member stiffness shall be taken into consideration.

The magnified forces resulting from analysis (i.e., bending moment, axial force, torsional moment, and shear force) shall be divided by 1.45 for use with the combined stress ratio equations of the Specifications.

C4.8.2

As an alternative procedure, a more exact method of analysis is presented, whereby the member is analyzed considering the actual deflected shape of the structure. With this method, the coefficient of amplification C_A is taken as 1.0 because the secondary moment is already considered in the analysis. This method implies a nonlinear relationship between the applied loads and the resulting deflections. Therefore, no superposition of results should be performed; all dead, wind, and ice loads from a group loading should be considered as being applied simultaneously in a single load case.

Because the second-order analysis is nonlinear in nature, loads computed according to Section 3, "Loads," are increased by 1.45 to provide the same safety factor as that of the linear elastic analysis. The nonlinear analysis is then performed with the magnified loads. Forces and moments resulting from the analysis are divided by 1.45 to bring the forces into the working load range for computing the actual stresses in the vertical support.

The 1.45 is the inherent safety factor for the case of Group II or III loads. It is calculated as the ratio of the ultimate flexural strength of the cross-section divided by the allowable moment, after being multiplied by the allowed stress increase of 1.33. The safety factor may, therefore, be derived as follows:

$$\frac{F_y K_p S}{1.33 F_b S} = \frac{F_y K_p S}{1.33 \dfrac{K_p F_y}{1.925} S} = \frac{1.925}{1.33} = 1.45 \qquad \text{(C4-2)}$$

where 1.925 is the safety factor against failure that is used to determine the allowable stress for the case of dead loads only (i.e., Group I loads).

The member is analyzed in its final (stable) deflected position considering all axial and lateral loads. The analysis is nonlinear because of the nonlinear relationship that results from the combined effects of the loads and resulting deflections on the final deflected position. The final secondary moment is the product of the axial loads and their eccentricities, and the eccentricities are dependent on the horizontal deflections produced by the wind loads and the eccentric axial loads. Because these interactions result in a nonlinear analysis, the loads have to be factored, and the iterative analysis performed to achieve stable equilibrium under these loads, to ensure that the prescribed safety factor has been furnished for all axial loads and lateral loads. The analysis should be performed with all axial loads (including pole weight) and the wind loads increased by 1.45 for Group II and III load combinations. Results from the analysis may then be divided by 1.45 to obtain the working forces and stresses to be used in the combined stress ratio equations.

4.9—REFERENCES

Fouad, F. H., E. A. Calvert, and E. Nunez. 1998. *Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals*, NCHRP Report 411. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

United States Steel Corp. 1973. *Axial Buckling Loads of Steel Lighting Standards.* Applied Research Laboratory, United States Steel Corporation. Pittsburgh, PA, February 16, 1973. Bulletin.

SECTION 5: STEEL DESIGN

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 5

STEEL DESIGN

5.1—SCOPE

This Section specifies design provisions for structural supports made of steel. Fatigue-sensitive steel support structures are further addressed in Section 11. Additional design provisions not addressed in this Section shall be obtained from the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges.*

Design provisions are provided for round and multisided tubular shapes, I-shaped sections, channels, and anchor bolts.

C5.1

Laminated structures may be used when the fabrication process is such that adequate shear transfer can be achieved. Their use will be subject to the approval of the Engineer and Owner.

5.2—DEFINITIONS

Anchor Bolt—A bolt, stud, or threaded rod used to transmit loads from the attachment into the concrete support or foundation. The end cast in concrete shall be provided with a positive anchorage device, such as forged head, nut, hooked end, or attachment to an anchor plate to resist forces on the anchor bolt.

Anchorage—The process of attaching a structural member or support to the concrete structure by means of an embedment, taking into consideration those factors that determine the load capacity of the anchorage system.

Attachment—The structural support external to the surfaces of the embedment that transmits loads to the embedment.

Compact Section—A section capable of developing a moment capacity exceeding its yield moment, but not in excess of its plastic moment.

Ductile Anchor Connection—A connection whose design strength is controlled by the strength of the steel anchorage rather than the strength of the concrete.

Ductile Anchor Failure—A ductile failure occurs when the anchor bolts are sufficiently embedded so that failure occurs by yielding of the steel anchor bolts.

Embedment—The portion of a steel component embedded in the concrete used to transmit applied loads from the attachment to the concrete support or foundation.

Headed Anchor—A headed bolt, a headed stud, or a threaded rod with an end nut.

Noncompact Section—A section in which the moment capacity is not permitted to exceed its yield moment.

Retrofit Anchor Bolt—An anchor that is installed into hardened concrete.

Slender Section—A section in which the moment capacity is governed by buckling prior to reaching its yield moment.

5.3—NOTATION

A = area (mm^2, in.^{2})
A = area of the bolt group (Article 5.17.4.1) (mm^2, in.^{2})
A_e = effective net area (mm^2, in.^{2})
A_f = area of compression flange (mm^2, in.^{2})
A_g = gross area (mm^2, in.^{2})
A_n = net area (mm^2, in.^{2})
b = effective width (mm, in.)

b_f = flange width of rolled beam (mm, in.)
c = distance from the centroid of the bolt group to the centroid of the outermost bolt (mm, in.)
C_A = coefficient of amplification, as defined in Article 4.8.1
C_b = moment gradient coefficient
C_c = column slenderness ratio separating elastic and inelastic buckling
d = depth of beam (mm, in.)
D = nominal diameter of bolt (Article 5.17.3 and 5.17.4) (mm, in.)
D = outside diameter of round cross-section (Articles 5.5.2, 5.6, and 5.11.1; and Tables 5-1 and 5-3) (mm, in.)
D = outside distance from flat side to flat side of multisided tubes (Article 5.5.2) (mm, in.)
E = modulus of elasticity of steel, 200,000 MPa (29,000 ksi)
F'_e = Euler stress divided by a factor of safety, calculated in the plane of bending (MPa, ksi)
F_a = allowable axial compressive stress (MPa, ksi)
f_a = computed axial stress (MPa, ksi)
F_b = allowable bending stress (MPa, ksi)
f_b = computed bending stress (MPa, ksi)
F_{bx} = allowable bending stress about the x axis (MPa, ksi)
f_{bx} = computed bending stress about the x axis (MPa, ksi)
F_{by} = allowable bending stress about the y axis (MPa, ksi)
f_{by} = computed bending stress about the y axis (MPa, ksi)
F_c = allowable axial compressive stress (MPa, ksi)
f_c = computed axial compressive stress (MPa, ksi)
F_t = allowable axial tensile stress (MPa, ksi)
f_t = computed axial tensile stress (MPa, ksi)
F_u = specified minimum tensile strength of the type of steel or fastener being used (MPa, ksi)
F_v = allowable shear stress (MPa, ksi)
f_v = computed shear stress (MPa, ksi)
F_y = specified minimum yield stress (MPa, ksi)
h = clear distance between flanges of a beam (mm, in.)
I = moment of inertia of the bolt group (mm^4, $in.^4$)
k = effective length factor
L = distance between cross-sections braced against twist or lateral displacement of the compression flange (mm, in.). For cantilevers braced against twist only at the support, L may conservatively be taken as the actual length (Article 5.7.1.2)
L = length of connection in the direction of loading (Article 5.9) (mm, in.)
L = unbraced length of column or member (Articles 5.9.1, 5.10, 5.10.1, and 5.12.2.1) (mm, in.)
L_w = length of weld (mm, in.)
M = applied moment (N-mm, k-in.)
M_1 = smaller end moment in unbraced segment of beam
M_2 = larger end moment in unbraced segment of beam
N = axial compressive load (Article 5.17.4.1) (N, k)
N = factor of safety (Articles 5.8 and 5.11)
n = number of sides for multisided tube (Article 5.5.2)
n = number of threads per in. (Article 5.17.4)
P = thread pitch (mm)
r = governing radius of gyration (mm, in.)
r_b = inside bend radius of a plate (mm, in.)

r_t = radius of gyration of a section comprising the compression flange plus $^1/_3$ of the compression web area, taken about an axis in the plane of the web (mm, in.)

t = wall thickness or thickness of element (mm, in.)

t_f = thickness of flange (mm, in.)

t_w = thickness of web (mm, in.)

w = width of plate (distance between welds) (mm, in.)

$\bar{x}$ = connection eccentricity (mm, in.)

U = reduction coefficient

τ_{cr} = critical stress (MPa, ksi)

υ = Poisson's ratio

λ = width–thickness ratio

λ_{max} = maximum width–thickness ratio

λ_p = width–thickness ratio at the compact limit

λ_r = width–thickness ratio at the noncompact limit

5.4—MATERIAL—STRUCTURAL STEEL

Grades of steel listed in the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges* are applicable for welded structural supports for highway signs, luminaires, and traffic signals.

For steels not generally covered by the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*, but having a specified yield strength acceptable to the user, the allowable unit stress shall be derived by applying the general equations given in the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges* under "Allowable Stresses," except as indicated by this Section.

All steels greater than 13 mm (0.5 in.) in thickness, used for structural supports for highway signs, luminaires, and traffic signals, that are main load carrying tension members shall meet the current Charpy V-Notch impact requirements in the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges.*

C5.4

Although the structural supports addressed by these Specifications are not subjected to high-impact loadings, steel members greater than 13 mm (0.5 in.) in thickness should meet a general notch toughness requirement to avoid brittle fracture.

5.5—LOCAL BUCKLING

5.5.1—Classification of Steel Sections

Steel sections are classified as compact, noncompact, and slender element sections. For a section to qualify as compact or noncompact, the width–thickness ratios of compression elements must not exceed the applicable corresponding limiting values given in Tables 5-1 and 5-2. If the width–thickness ratios of any compression element section exceed the noncompact limiting value, λ_r, the section is classified as a slender element section.

5.5.2—Width–Thickness Ratios for Round and Multisided Tubular Sections

The limiting diameter–thickness *D/t* ratios for round sections and width–thickness *b/t* ratios for multisided tubular sections are given in Table 5-1.

For multisided tubular sections, the effective width b is the inside distance between intersection points of the flat sides less

$$\tan\left(\frac{180}{n}\right)$$

times the minimum of the inside bend radius or $4t$, on each side. If the bend radius is not known, the effective width b may be calculated as the inside width between intersection points of the flat sides less

$$(3t)\tan\left(\frac{180}{n}\right)$$

C5.5.2

The equation for the effective width may be calculated as:

$$b = \tan\left(\frac{180}{n}\right)\left[D - 2t - \text{minimum}\left(2r_b, 8t\right)\right] \quad \text{(C5-1)}$$

where D is the outside distance from flat side to flat side of multisided tubes and $180/n$ is in degrees.

Table 5-1—Width–Thickness Ratios for Round and Multisided Tubular Sections

Description of Section	Width–Thickness Ratio λ	Compact Limit λ_p	Noncompact Limit λ_r	Maximum Limit λ_{max}
Round Tube	$\frac{D}{t}$	$0.13\frac{E}{F_y}$	$0.26\frac{E}{F_y}$	$0.45\frac{E}{F_y}$
Hexdecagonal Tube	$\frac{b}{t}$	$1.12\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$	$1.26\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$	$2.14\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$
Dodecagonal Tube	$\frac{b}{t}$	$1.12\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$	$1.41\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$	$2.14\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$
Octagonal Tube	$\frac{b}{t}$	$1.12\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$	$1.53\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$	$2.14\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$
Square or Rectangular Tube	$\frac{b}{t}$	$1.12\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$	$1.53\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$	$2.14\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$

5.5.3—Width–Thickness Ratios for Compression Plate Elements

Limiting width–thickness ratios for nontubular shapes are given in Table 5-2.

Plate elements are considered unstiffened or stiffened, depending on whether the element is supported along one or two edges, parallel to the direction of the compression force, respectively.

For unstiffened elements, which are supported along one edge parallel to the direction of the compression force, the width shall be taken as follows:

- *b* is half the full nominal width for flanges of I-shaped members and tees.
- *b* is the full nominal dimension for legs of angles and flanges of channel and zees.
- *d* is the full nominal depth for stems of tees.

For stiffened elements, which are supported along two edges parallel to the direction of the compression force, the width shall be taken as follows:

- *h* is the clear distance between flanges for webs of rolled or formed sections.
- *d* is the full nominal depth for webs of rolled or formed sections.

C5.5.3

Compression elements considered stiffened are those having lateral support along both edges that are parallel to the direction of the compression stress. The unsupported width of such elements shall be taken as the distance between the nearest lines of fasteners or welds, or between the roots of the flanges in the case of rolled sections, or as otherwise specified in this Article.

Compression elements considered not stiffened are those having one free edge parallel to the direction of compression stress. The unsupported width of legs of angles, channels and zee flanges, and stems of tees shall be taken as the full nominal dimension; the width of flanges of beams and tees shall be taken as one-half the full nominal width. The thickness of a sloping flange shall be measured halfway between the free edge and the face of the web.

5.5.4—Slender Element Sections

Except as allowed for round and multisided tubular sections, compression plate elements that exceed the noncompact limit specified in Table 5-2 shall not be permitted.

Table 5-2—Width–Thickness Ratios for Nontubular Sections

Description of Section	Width–Thickness Ratio λ	Compact Limit λ_p	Noncompact Limit λ_r
Flanges of I-shaped Beams and Channels in Flexure	$\frac{b}{t}$	$0.38\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$	$0.56\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$
Unstiffened Elements (i.e., simply supported along one edge)	$\frac{b}{t}$	N/A	$0.45\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$
Stems of Tees	$\frac{d}{t}$	N/A	$0.75\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$
All Other Uniformly Compressed Stiffened Elements (i.e., supported along two edges)	$\frac{b}{t}$	N/A	$1.49\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$
	$\frac{h}{t_w}$		
Webs in Flexural Compression	$\frac{d}{t}$	$3.76\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$	N/A
	$\frac{h}{t_w}$	N/A	$4.46\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$
Webs in Combined Flexural and Axial Compression	$\frac{d}{t_w}$	$for\ \frac{f_a}{F_y} \le 0.16,\quad 3.76\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}\left(1-3.74\frac{f_a}{F_y}\right)$ $for\ \frac{f_a}{F_y} > 0.16,\quad 1.51\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$	N/A
	$\frac{h}{t_w}$	N/A	$4.46\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$

5.6—ALLOWABLE BENDING STRESS FOR ROUND AND MULTISIDED TUBULAR MEMBERS

For round and multisided tubular members that have compact, noncompact, and slender element sections as defined in Table 5-2, the allowable bending stress shall be computed according to Table 5-3.

The allowable bending stresses for polygonal tubes shall not exceed the allowable stresses for round tubes of equivalent diameter. The equivalent diameter for a multisided tube shall be the outside distance between parallel sides.

C5.6

The basis for the allowable bending stress equations for round tubular shapes is found in papers by Plantema (1946) and Schilling (1965). Experimental work by Schilling indicated that $D/t \le 0.125(E/F_y)$ would allow round tubes to reach their plastic moment.

Research on multisided tubular sections was performed by the Transmission Line Mechanical Research Center (Cannon and LeMaster, 1987). They tested the local buckling strength in bending of 8-, 12-, and 16-sided tubular steel sections. Their results were included in *Design of Transmission Pole Structures* (ASCE, 1990).

The allowable stresses for multisided tubular sections may exceed those of the equivalent round sections. The equations for round and multisided sections were developed from different research studies. No research justification is available to support higher allowable stresses for multisided tubes; therefore, further research is required.

NCHRP Report 494 established strength and failure criteria for bending about the diagonal axis of square and rectangular tubes. The design criteria have been converted to an allowable stress format in Article 5.12.2.3.

Table 5-3—Allowable Bending Stress, F_b, for Tubular Members

	Compact Section $\lambda \le \lambda_p$	Noncompact Section $\lambda_p < \lambda \le \lambda_r$	Slender Section $\lambda_r < \lambda \le \lambda_{max}$
Round Tube	$0.66F_y$	$F_b = 0.39F_y\left(1+\frac{0.09\left(\frac{E}{F_y}\right)}{\left(\frac{D}{t}\right)}\right)$	$F_b = 0.39F_y\left(1+\frac{0.09\left(\frac{E}{F_y}\right)}{\left(\frac{D}{t}\right)}\right)$
Hexdecagonal Tube	$0.66F_y$	$F_b = 1.71F_y\left(1-\frac{0.55}{\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}}\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$F_b = 0.74F_y\left(1-\frac{0.23}{\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}}\frac{b}{t}\right)$
Dodecagonal Tube	$0.65F_y$	$F_b = 1.15F_y\left(1-\frac{0.39}{\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}}\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$F_b = 0.75F_y\left(1-\frac{0.22}{\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}}\frac{b}{t}\right)$
Octagonal Tube	$0.64F_y$	$F_b = 0.96F_y\left(1-\frac{0.30}{\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}}\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$F_b = 0.73F_y\left(1-\frac{0.19}{\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}}\frac{b}{t}\right)$
Square or Rectangular Tube	$0.60F_y$	$F_b = 0.82F_y\left(1-\frac{0.24}{\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}}\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$F_b = 0.74F_y\left(1-\frac{0.19}{\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}}\frac{b}{t}\right)$

5.7—ALLOWABLE BENDING STRESS FOR FLANGED I-SHAPED MEMBERS AND CHANNELS

This Article applies to singly or doubly symmetric beams loaded in the plane of symmetry. It also applies to channels loaded in a plane passing through the shear center parallel to the web or restrained against twisting at load points and points of support.

5.7.1—Strong Axis Bending

5.7.1.1—Members with Compact and Noncompact Sections and Adequate Lateral Support

For I-shaped members with compact sections, and for channels with compact or noncompact sections as defined in Table 5-2, and loaded through the shear center and braced laterally in the region of compression stress at intervals not exceeding:

$$0.45 b_f \sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$$

where b_f is the width of the compression flange, the allowable stress is

$$F_b = 0.60 F_y \tag{5–1}$$

5.7.1.2—Members with Compact or Noncompact Sections and with Inadequate Lateral Support

For I-shaped members and channels with compact or noncompact sections as defined in Table 5-2, the allowable bending stress in tension is:

$$F_b = 0.60 F_y \tag{5-2}$$

For I-shaped members, symmetrical about and loaded in the plane of their minor axis, the allowable bending stress in compression $\boldsymbol{F_b}$ shall be determined as the larger value from Eqs. 5-3, 5-4, and 5-5, but not more than $0.6F_y$. For channels bent about their major axis, the allowable stress is determined by Eq. 5-5 only, but shall not be greater than $0.6F_y$. Eq. 5-5 is valid when the compression flange is solid and approximately rectangular in cross-section and its area is not less than that of the tension flange.

$$F_b = 0.67 \left[1 - \frac{0.03 \left(\frac{L}{r_t} \right)^2}{C_b \frac{E}{F_y}} \right] F_y \tag{5-3}$$

C5.7.1.2

Members bent about their major axis and having an axis of symmetry in the plane of loading may be adequately braced laterally at greater intervals if the maximum bending stress is reduced sufficiently to prevent premature buckling of the compression flange. Eqs. 5-3 and 5-4 are based on the assumption that only the lateral bending stiffness of the compression flange will prevent the lateral displacement of the flange between bracing points. Eq. 5-5 is an approximation that assumes the presence of both lateral bending resistance and St. Venant torsional resistance. For some sections having a compression area distinctly smaller than the tension flange area, Eq. 5-5 may be unconservative; therefore, its use is limited to sections whose compression flange is at least as great as the tension flange.

for $\sqrt{3.52C_b \dfrac{E}{F_y}} \le \dfrac{L}{r_t} \le \sqrt{17.59C_b \dfrac{E}{F_y}}$:

$$F_b = \frac{5.86C_b}{\left(\dfrac{L}{r_t}\right)^2} E \text{ for } \frac{L}{r_t} \ge \sqrt{17.59C_b \frac{E}{F_y}} \tag{5-4}$$

$$F_b = \frac{0.41C_b}{\dfrac{Ld}{A_f}} E \tag{5-5}$$

L is the distance between cross-sections braced against twist or lateral displacement of the compression flange (mm, in.). For cantilevers braced against twist only at the support, L may conservatively be taken as the actual length. r_t is the radius of gyration of a section comprising the compression flange plus 1/3 of the compression web area, taken about an axis in the plane of the web (mm, in.). A_f is the area of compression flange (mm^2, in.^{2}), and C_b is the moment gradient coefficient given by:

$$C_b = 1.75 + 1.05\left(\frac{M_1}{M_2}\right) + 0.3\left(\frac{M_1}{M_2}\right)^2 \le 2.3$$

where M_1 is the smaller and M_2 is the larger end moment in the unbraced segment of the beam; M_1/M_2 is positive when the moments cause reverse curvature and negative when bent in single curvature. C_b equals 1.0 for members where the moment within a significant portion of the unbraced segment is greater than or equal to the larger of the segment end moments.

C_b is permitted to be conservatively taken as 1.0 for all cases. For cantilevers or overhangs where the free end is unbraced, C_b = 1.0.

5.7.2—Weak Axis Bending

Lateral bracing is not required for members loaded through the shear center about their weak axis nor for members of equal strength about both axes.

5.7.2.1—Members with Compact Sections

For doubly symmetrical I-shaped members with compact flanges, as defined in Table 5-2, continuously connected to the web and bent about their weak axes (except members with yield points greater than 450 MPa [65 ksi]), the allowable bending stress is:

$$F_b = 0.75F_y \tag{5-6}$$

C5.7.2.1

The 450 MPa (65 ksi) limitation on yield strength is required to ensure ductility of the material and the ability to develop the plastic moment of the cross-section.

5.7.2.2—Members with Noncompact Sections

For noncompact sections, as defined in Table 5-2, and bent about their minor axis, and for compact or noncompact channels bent about their minor axis, the allowable stress is:

$$F_b = 0.60F_y \tag{5-7}$$

C5.7.2.2

Doubly symmetrical I-shaped members bent about their weak axes (except members with yield points greater than 450 MPa [65 ksi]) with noncompact flanges, defined in Article 5.5.3, continuously connected to the web may be designed on the basis of an allowable stress of:

$$F_b = 1.07F_y\left[1 - 0.79\left(\frac{b_f}{2t_f}\right)\sqrt{\frac{F_y}{E}}\right] \tag{C5-2}$$

5.8—ALLOWABLE BENDING STRESS FOR SOLID BARS AND RECTANGULAR PLATES BENT ABOUT THEIR MINOR (WEAK) AXIS

For solid round and square bars and solid rectangular sections bent about their weaker axis, the allowable bending stress is:

$$F_b = 0.75F_y \tag{5-8}$$

C5.8

Because the shape factor for solid rectangular sections is 1.5, a higher allowable stress may be justified. The factor of safety can be computed as:

$$N = \frac{K_p F_y}{F_b} = \frac{1.5F_y}{0.75F_y} = 2.0 \tag{C5-3}$$

This safety factor is comparable to the 1.925 that is used for tubular sections for the case of dead loads only (Group I loads).

5.9—ALLOWABLE TENSION STRESS

The allowable axial tensile stress shall not exceed $0.6F_y$ on the gross area A_g nor $0.5F_u$ on the effective net area A_e. The effective net area A_e shall be taken equal to the net area A_n, where the load is transmitted directly to each of the cross-sectional elements by bolts.

The net area A_n shall be calculated as the sum of the individual net areas along a potential critical section. When calculating A_n, the width deducted for the bolt hole shall be taken as 1.5 mm (1/16 in.) greater than the nominal dimension of the hole.

When the load is transmitted through some but not all of the cross-sectional elements, shear lag shall be considered. The effective net area shall be computed as:

$$A_e = UA$$

where:

A = area as defined in Article 5.9.1 (mm², in.²)

U = reduction coefficient

$$U = \left(1 - \frac{\bar{x}}{L}\right) \le 0.9,$$

or as defined in Articles 5.9.1.3 or 5.9.1.4.

C5.9

The limits on the effective net area are based on the *AISC Manual of Steel Construction—Allowable Stress Design* (1989).

The net area A_n shall be determined for each chain of holes extending across the member along any transverse, diagonal, or zigzag line.

In lieu of the calculated value for U, the following values may be used for bolted connections:

U = 0.85 (for three or more bolts per line in the direction of load)

U = 0.75 (for two bolts per line in the direction of load)

$\bar{x}$ = connection eccentricity, defined as the distance from the connection plane, or face of the member, to the centroid of the section resisting the connection force (mm, in.)

L = length of connection in the direction of loading (mm, in.)

Larger values of U are permitted to be used when justified by tests or other rational criteria.

The effective net area A_e shall not be taken greater than 85 percent of the gross area A_g for the design of connecting elements such as splice plates, gusset plates, and connecting plates.

5.9.1—Determination of the Area *A*

The area A shall be determined as described in Articles 5.9.1.1 through 5.9.1.4.

5.9.1.1—Tension Load Transmitted Only by Bolts

A = A_n, net area of member (mm^2, in.^{2})

5.9.1.2—Tension Load Transmitted Only by Longitudinal Welds to Other than a Plate Member or by Longitudinal Welds in Combination with Transverse Welds

A = A_g, gross area of member (mm^2, in.^{2})

5.9.1.3—Tension Load Transmitted Only by Transverse Welds

A = area of directly connected elements (mm^2, in.^{2})

U = 1.0

5.9.1.4—Tension Load Transmitted to a Plate by Longitudinal Welds along Both Edges at the End of the Plate for $L_w \geq w$

A = area of plate (mm^2, in.^{2})

for $L_w \geq 2w$, $U = 1.00$

for $2w > L_w \geq 1.5w$, then $U = 0.87$

for $1.5w > L_w \geq w$, then $U = 0.75$

where:

L_w = length of weld (mm, in.)

w = plate width (distance between welds) (mm, in.)

5.9.2—Slenderness Limit

For trusses, L/r shall not exceed 240 for members in tension.

5.10—ALLOWABLE COMPRESSION STRESS

The allowable axial compression stress F_a shall be calculated as follows:

When $\frac{kL}{r} < C_c$:

$$F_a = \frac{\left[1 - \frac{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}{2C_c^2}\right] F_y}{\frac{5}{3} + \frac{3\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)}{8C_c} - \frac{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^3}{8C_c^3}} \tag{5-9}$$

When $\frac{kL}{r} \geq C_c$:

$$F_a = \frac{12\pi^2 E}{23\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2} \tag{5-10}$$

where kL/r is the largest effective slenderness ratio of any unbraced segment and:

$$C_c = \sqrt{\frac{2\pi^2 E}{F_y}}$$

5.10.1—Slenderness Limit

For trusses, kL/r shall not exceed 140 for members in compression.

C5.10

The radius of gyration r may be calculated at a distance of $0.50L$ for a tapered column. This value is conservative for all tapered light poles.

For a cantilever column, the effective length factor k may be taken as 2.1.

Eqs. 5-9 and 5-10 are consistent with equations in the AISC *Manual of Steel Construction—Allowable Stress Design* (1989).

Eq. 5-10 is the Euler equation for long columns subject to elastic buckling. To develop a companion equation, short columns (members) subject to inelastic buckling, a parabola was assumed from the transition point given for the long column equation to the point where $kL/r = 0$. F_a is equal to $0.6F_y$ where $kL/r = 0$ and F_a is equal to $0.26F_y$ where $kL/r = C_C$. Eq. 5-9 is the transition curve between these two points.

5.11—ALLOWABLE SHEAR STRESS

The allowable shear stress due to shear and torsion shall be specified in accordance with this Article.

C5.11

For sections not subject to local buckling in shear, the maximum allowable shear stress of $0.33F_y$ is used in the absence of wind load. For wind loadings, this stress is increased by 33 percent. For Group II and III load combinations, the safety factor, N, against failure in shear is the ratio of the yield point in shear to the maximum allowable shear stress, thus:

$$N = \frac{\frac{F_y}{\sqrt{3}}}{(0.33)(1.33)F_y} = 1.32 \tag{C5-4}$$

The yield point in shear was found to be about $0.57F_y$ from results of many torsion tests on ductile materials. The more familiar form is:

$$\frac{F_y}{\sqrt{3}}$$

found in many specifications and texts based on Von Mises yield criteria. This safety factor is considered to be adequate for luminaire and traffic signal supports, as well as sign supports, because the shear present in any section is not great and many other factors, such as local buckling criteria, may govern the selection of the sections.

5.11.1—Round Tubular Members

The allowable shear stress equation for round tubular shapes shall be:

$$F_v = 0.33F_y \text{ for } \frac{D}{t} \leq 1.16\left(\frac{E}{F_y}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} \quad \text{(5-11)}$$

$$F_v = \frac{0.41E}{\left(\frac{D}{t}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \text{ for } \frac{D}{t} > 1.16\left(\frac{E}{F_y}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} \quad \text{(5-12)}$$

C5.11.1

Little information is available regarding shear stresses in round tubes. The allowable shear stress equations for round tubular sections are based on elastic torsional buckling of long cylindrical tubes developed in *Theory of Elastic Stability* by Timoshenko and Gere (1961). The elastic buckling equation of a long tubular cylinder in torsion is:

$$\tau_{cr} = \frac{E}{3\sqrt{2}\left(1-\upsilon^2\right)^{\frac{3}{4}}}\left(\frac{2t}{D}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}} \quad \text{(C5-5)}$$

By setting the critical stress τ_{cr} equal to the yield stress of steel under pure shear of:

$$\frac{F_y}{\sqrt{3}}$$

and Poisson's ratio υ equal to 0.3, the cylinder buckles elastically in torsion before yielding when:

$$\frac{D}{t} > 1.16\left(\frac{E}{F_y}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} \quad \text{(C5-6)}$$

For:

$$\frac{D}{t} < 1.16\left(\frac{E}{F_y}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} \quad \text{(C5-7)}$$

the limiting stress is equal to the yield stress of steel under pure shear of:

$$\frac{F_y}{\sqrt{3}}$$

divided by a safety factor of 1.75.

For:

$$\frac{D}{t} > 1.16\left(\frac{E}{F_y}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} \quad \text{(C5-8)}$$

the torsional buckling equation with a safety factor of 1.75 and Poisson's ratio of 0.3 results in the following:

$$F_v = \frac{0.41E}{\left(\frac{D}{t}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \quad \text{(C5-9)}$$

The previous equations apply to round tubes subjected to torsional shear, but can be used conservatively for tubes subjected to transverse shear.

5.11.2—Multisided Tubular Members

The allowable shear stress for multisided tubular shapes shall be:

$$F_v = 0.33F_y \ \text{ for } \frac{b}{t} \le 2.23\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}} \quad \text{(5-13)}$$

$$F_v = \frac{1.64E}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2} \ \text{ for } \frac{b}{t} \le 2.23\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}} \quad \text{(5-14)}$$

C5.11.2

The allowable shear stress for multisided tubular sections is developed from the theory of elastic buckling under pure shear. The elastic buckling equation for simply supported long plates is

$$\tau_{cr} = \frac{\pi^2 E\,(5.34)}{12\left(1-\upsilon^2\right)\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2} \quad \text{(C5-10)}$$

By setting the critical stress τ_{cr} equal to the yield stress of steel under pure shear:

$$\frac{F_y}{\sqrt{3}}$$

and Poisson's ratio to 0.3, the plate buckles elastically under pure shear when

$$\frac{b}{t} > 2.89\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}} \quad \text{(C5-11)}$$

Because the limiting *b*/*t* ratio for multisided tubes in bending will be less than or equal to:

$$2.14\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}$$

multisided tubes will not exceed the width–thickness ratio to buckle in shear.

Therefore, for multisided tubular sections with:

$$\frac{b}{t} \leq 2.14\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}} \quad \text{(C5-12)}$$

the limiting shear stress is equal to the yield stress of steel under pure shear of:

$$\frac{F_y}{\sqrt{3}}$$

divided by a safety factor of 1.75.

5.11.3—Other Shapes

For I-shaped sections and channels, the allowable shear stress shall be:

$$F_v = 0.33F_y \text{ for } \frac{h}{t_w} \leq 2.23\sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}} \quad \text{(5-15)}$$

The allowable shear stress shall be applied over an effective area consisting of the full member depth times the web thickness.

C5.11.3

The allowable shear stress provided by the Specifications for different shapes other than tubular shapes is $0.33F_y$. This is the same value adopted by the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*.

5.12—COMBINED STRESSES

Members subjected to combined bending, axial compression or tension, shear, and torsion shall be proportioned to meet the limitations of Article 5.12.1 or 5.12.2, as applicable. Calculations of F_a, F_b, F_{bx}, F_{by}, F'_e, F_t, F_v, and $0.6F_y$ in Eqs. 5-16 through 5-20a may be increased by 1/3 for Groups II and III, as allowed in Section 3, “Loads.”

C5.12

The equation for combined stress is derived from the maximum Principal Stress Theory under “Theories of Failure” contained in a number of textbooks on mechanics of materials. Seely and Smith’s text (1967) covers this theory. In terms of allowable stress, the following general equation, which considers axial, bending, and shear stresses, can be developed:

$$\frac{f_a}{F_a} + \frac{f_b}{F_b} + \left(\frac{f_v}{F_v}\right)^2 \leq 1.0 \quad \text{(C5-13)}$$

The combined stress equations contained in other specifications and literature, such as the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges* and the *Manual of Steel Construction—Allowable Stress Design*, addressed only the case of stresses resulting from combined axial force and bending. Because shear stresses resulting from torsional moment represent a dominant factor in the support structures, no changes to the combined stress equations are proposed.

5.12.1—Vertical Cantilever Pole-Type Supports

Vertical cantilever pole-type supports, subjected to axial compression, bending moment, shear, and torsion, shall be proportioned to satisfy the following requirement:

$$\frac{f_a}{0.6F_y} + \frac{f_b}{C_A F_b} + \left(\frac{f_v}{F_v}\right)^2 \le 1.0 \qquad (5\text{-}16)$$

C_A shall be calculated in accordance with Article 4.8.1 to estimate the second-order effects. If the more detailed procedure of Article 4.8.2 is used to calculate second-order effects, f_b is the bending stress based on the second-order moment and C_A is taken as 1.0.

C5.12.1

Eq. 5-16 applies specifically to single vertical cantilever pole-type supports, where the term $1/C_A$ is an amplification coefficient to estimate second-order moments due to the P-delta effect. Determination of C_A is discussed in Article 4.8.1.

When vertical cantilever supports are considered, the term F_a is then replaced by a reduced value of the allowable bending stress that is commonly expressed as $0.6F_y$. This value establishes a more accurate relationship between the axial stress present in a pole with this type of loading and the stress that causes local buckling. It is more indicative of what happens when a lighting standard is loaded in service; because the axial stress is so small, this term is always of negligible magnitude.

The final equation is then presented in Eq. 5-16. The term C_A is an amplification coefficient that approximates the additional bending stresses resulting from eccentricity of the axial load, which is not reflected in the computed stress f_b.

5.12.2—Other Members

5.12.2.1—Axial Compression, Bending, and Shear

All members that are subjected to axial compression, bending moment, shear, and torsion, except vertical cantilever pole-type supports, shall meet the following:

$$\frac{f_a}{0.6F_y} + \frac{f_b}{F_b} + \left(\frac{f_v}{F_v}\right)^2 \le 1.0 \qquad (5\text{-}17)$$

$$\frac{f_a}{F_a} + \frac{f_b}{\left(1 - \frac{f_a}{F_e'}\right) F_b} + \left(\frac{f_v}{F_v}\right)^2 \le 1.0 \qquad (5\text{-}18)$$

where:

$$F_e' = \frac{12\pi^2 E}{23\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$$

which is calculated in the plane of bending.

The following equation is permitted, in lieu of Eqs. 5-17 and 5-18, when:

$$\frac{f_a}{F_a} \le 0.15$$

$$\frac{f_a}{F_a} + \frac{f_b}{F_b} + \left(\frac{f_v}{F_v}\right)^2 \le 1.0 \qquad (5\text{-}19)$$

C5.12.2.1

This Section generally applies to sign support members, high-level lighting supports (truss type), and miscellaneous structural members subjected to axial compression combined with bending, shear, and torsion. The term:

$$\frac{1}{\left(1 - \frac{f_a}{F_e'}\right)}$$

in Eq. 5-18 is a factor that accounts for secondary bending caused by the axial load when member deflects laterally. This factor may be ignored when $f_a/F_a \le 0.15$.

Eqs. 5-17 and 5-18 are provided to check combined bending and compression stresses. Eq. 5-18 considers the second-order moments that appear as a result of the P-delta effect. The equation is intended for intermediate unbraced locations where the member is susceptible to lateral displacements. Eq. 5-17 is intended for locations at the end of the member where lateral displacement is restrained. In some cases, the combined stresses at some locations exceed stresses at the intermediate points.

For biaxial bending, except for round and polygonal tubular sections, the second term of Eq. 5-18 can be substituted by:

$$\frac{f_{bx}}{\left(1-\frac{f_a}{F'_{ex}}\right)F_{bx}}+\frac{f_{by}}{\left(1-\frac{f_a}{F'_{ey}}\right)F_{by}} \qquad \text{(C5-14)}$$

and the second term f_b/F_b of Eqs. 5-16, 5-17, 5-19, and 5-20 can be substituted by:

$$\frac{f_{bx}}{F_{bx}}+\frac{f_{by}}{F_{by}} \qquad \text{(C5-15)}$$

5.12.2.2—Axial Tension, Bending, and Shear

All members that are subjected to axial tension, bending moment, shear, and torsion shall meet the following:

$$\frac{f_a}{F_t}+\frac{f_b}{F_b}+\left(\frac{f_v}{F_v}\right)^2 \leq 1.0 \qquad \text{(5-20)}$$

C5.12.2.2

Eq. 5-20 will typically apply to truss members in tension and cantilevered horizontal supports. For members having no axial load and members in axial tension combined with bending, shear, and torsion, the bending amplification factors of $1/C_A$ for Eq. 5-16 and:

$$1-\frac{f_a}{F'_e} \qquad \text{(C5-16)}$$

for Eq. 5-18 do not apply.

5.12.2.3—Bending of Square and Rectangular Tubes

Square and rectangular tubes shall meet the design requirements of Article 5.12 for bending about the geometric axes. In addition, this Section applies to tubes bent about a skewed (diagonal) axis. The following interaction equation shall be satisfied:

$$\left(\frac{f_{bx}}{F_{bx}}\right)^{\alpha}+\left(\frac{f_{by}}{F_{by}}\right)^{\alpha} \leq 1.0 \qquad \text{(5-20a)}$$

f_{bx} = bending stress about x axis

f_{by} = bending stress about y axis

For tubes with $\lambda \leq \lambda_r$ (defined in Table 5-1):

α = 1.60

F_{bx} = $0.60F_y$

F_{by} = $0.60F_y$

C5.12.2.3

NCHRP Report 494, *Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaries, and Traffic Signals* (Fouad et al., 2003) compared theoretical diagonal bending to experimental tests. The interaction increase in allowable stress is justified for tubes bent about the diagonal for sections with limited width–thickness ratios. Although the diagonal strength properties are significantly less than the primary axis properties, tests show additional strength compared with current strength predictions. For compact sections, the reserve strength is 33 percent higher for bending about a diagonal axis (Z_x/S_x = 1.5) than about the principal axes (Z_x/S_x = 1.13), where Z_x and S_x are the plastic and elastic section moduli, respectively.

For tubes with $\lambda_r \leq \lambda \leq \lambda_{max}$ (defined in Table 5-1):

α = 1.00

F_{bx} = F_b in Table 5-3

F_{by} = F_b in Table 5-3

5.13—CABLES AND CONNECTIONS

For horizontal supports (wire and connections) of span-wire pole structures, the maximum tension force encountered along the support times a minimum safety factor of three shall be less than the breaking strength of the cable or connection.

C5.13

The safety factor may be reduced to a value of 2.25 for Group II and III load combinations. The reduced factor of 2.25 accounts for the increase in allowable stress that is allowed for steel, when using the allowable stress method. The 2.25 safety factor was determined as 3/1.33 = 2.25.

5.14—DETAILS OF DESIGN

5.14.1—Minimum Thickness of Material

The minimum thickness of material for main supporting members of steel truss-type supports shall be 4.76 mm (0.1875 in.). For secondary members, such as bracing and truss webs, the minimum thickness shall be 3.17 mm (0.125 in.). The minimum thickness of material for all members of pole-type supports and truss-type luminaire arms shall be 3.17 mm (0.125 in.). These limits may be reduced no more than ten percent for material designated by gage numbers.

Steel supports for small roadside signs may be less than 3.17 mm (0.125 in.) in thickness.

C5.14.1

Main members are those that are strictly necessary to ensure integrity of a structural system. Secondary members are those that are provided for redundancy and stability of a structural system. Minimum thickness requirements are based on considerations such as corrosion resistance and importance of the member for the structural system.

Supports without an external breakaway mechanism that have thicknesses less than 3.17 mm (0.125 in.) have shown good safety characteristics in that they readily fail under vehicle impact, with little damage to the vehicle or injury to the occupants. These thinner supports should be used on those installations considered to have a relatively short life expectancy, such as small roadside signs.

5.14.2—Base Plate Thickness

The base plate thickness shall be considered in the design. The thickness of unstiffened base plates shall be equal to or greater than the nominal diameter of the connection bolt.

C5.14.2

Base plate flexibility in tube-to-base plate connections has been shown to have a major impact on stress amplification in the tube wall adjacent to the weld toe.

Experiments to determine the relationship between column forces and anchor bolt stresses show that inadequate column base plate thicknesses can increase bolt stresses. As a rule-of-thumb, a base plate thickness equal to or greater than the bolt diameter will provide adequate stiffness.

Koenigs et al. (2003) found that test specimens with the 50 mm (2 in.) thick base plate exhibited a significant improvement in the fatigue life compared to a socket connection detail with a 37.5-mm (1.5-in.) thick base plate. Studies (Hall, 2005; Warpinski, 2006) on base plate flexibility have shown that stresses adjacent to the base plate to tube weld are decreased as the base plate becomes thicker. Thin base plates are flexible and introduce additional local bending stresses, which tend to amplify the local stresses at the weld toe on the tube wall. Based on these studies, base plates on the order of 75 mm (3 in.) thick generally appear to reduce the magnitude of the local bending stresses in the tube wall to acceptable levels for typical signal and high-mast lighting towers.

5.14.3—Dimensional Tolerances

Welded and seamless steel pipe members shall comply with the dimensional tolerances specified in ASTM A 53. Welded and seamless steel structural tubing members shall comply with the dimensional tolerances specified in ASTM A 500, A 501, or A 595. Plates and other shapes shall comply with the dimensional tolerances specified in ASTM A 6.

The diameter of round tapered steel tubing members or the dimension across the flat of square, rectangular, octagonal, dodecagonal, and hexdecagonal straight or tapered steel tubing members shall not vary more than two percent from specified dimension.

C5.14.3

ASTM A 53, A 500, A 501, and A 595, which are currently listed in the Specifications, establish dimensional tolerances for steel pipe and round, tapered steel tubing members. ASTM A 6 establishes only rolling tolerances for steel plates and shapes prior to fabrication.

This Article provides dimensional tolerances for straight or tapered steel tube members fabricated from plates.

5.14.4—Slip Type Field Splice

The minimum length of any telescopic (i.e., slip type) field splices for all structures shall be 1.5 times the inside diameter of the exposed end of the female section.

5.15—WELDED CONNECTIONS

Welding design and fabrication shall be in accordance with the latest edition of the *AWS Structural Welding Code D1.1—Steel*.

C5.15

Recommendations for proper detailing of fatigue critical welded connections are included in Section 11, "Fatigue Design," in Table 11-2 and Figure 11-1.

5.15.1—Circumferential Welded Splices

Full-penetration (i.e., complete-penetration) groove welds shall be used for pole and arm sections joined by circumferential welds, and all welds shall be inspected. Only one-time repair of circumferential welds is allowed without written permission of the Owner.

C5.15.1

These circumferential welds are critical welds and should have proper inspection and controlled repair work. Inspection may be performed by nondestructive methods of radiography or ultrasonics or by destructive tests acceptable to the Owner. It is not intended that the inspection requirements be mandatory for small arms, such as luminaire arms, unless specified by the Owner.

5.15.2—Longitudinal Seam Welds

Longitudinal seam welds for pole and arm sections shall have 60 percent minimum penetration, except for the following areas:

- longitudinal seam welds within 150 mm (6 in.) of circumferential welds, which are full-penetration groove welds at butt joints of high-level lighting (i.e., pole-type) supports, shall be full-penetration groove welds; and
- longitudinal seam welds, on the female section of telescopic (i.e., slip type) field splices of high-level lighting (i.e., pole-type) supports, shall be full-penetration groove welds for a length equal to the minimum splice length (Article 5.14) plus 150 mm (6 in.).

One hundred percent of full-penetration groove welds and a random 25 percent of partial-penetration groove welds of longitudinal seams shall be inspected.

C5.15.2

Full-penetration groove weld inspection may be performed by nondestructive methods of radiography or ultrasonics. In addition, partial-penetration groove welds may be inspected by magnetic particle. Both types of weld may be tested by destructive methods acceptable to the Owner. It is not intended that the inspection requirements be mandatory for small arms, such as luminaire arms, unless specified by the Owner.

5.15.3—Base Connection Welds

A random 25 percent of all base connection welds shall be inspected. Only one-time repair of base connection welds is allowed without written permission of the Owner.

Welded support-to-base plate connections for high-level pole-type luminaire supports, overhead cantilever sign supports, overhead bridge sign supports with single-column end supports, common luminaire supports, and traffic signal supports shall be one of the following:

- full-penetration groove welds, or
- socket-type joint with two fillet welds.

C5.15.3

This Article applies to poles and arms. Full-penetration groove weld inspection may be performed by nondestructive methods of radiography or ultrasonics. Fillet welds may be inspected by magnetic particle. Both types of welds may be tested by destructive methods acceptable to the Owner.

The provisions of this Article are not intended to be mandatory for small arms, such as luminaire arms, unless specified by the Owner.

When full-penetration groove welds are used, additional fillet welds may be used when deemed necessary by the Designer or Owner.

Laminated structures have been used; however, fatigue testing of the laminated pole-to-base plate has not been accomplished. Full-penetration groove welds should be used on laminated sections.

5.16—BOLTED CONNECTIONS

Design of bolted connections shall be in accordance with the current *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*, except as provided for anchor bolts in Article 5.17.

5.17—ANCHOR BOLT CONNECTIONS

This Article provides the minimum requirements for design of steel anchor bolts used to transmit loads from attachments into concrete supports or foundations by means of tension, bearing, and shear.

Figure 5-1 shows a typical steel-to-concrete double-nut connection. Figure 5-2 shows a typical single-nut connection.

C5.17

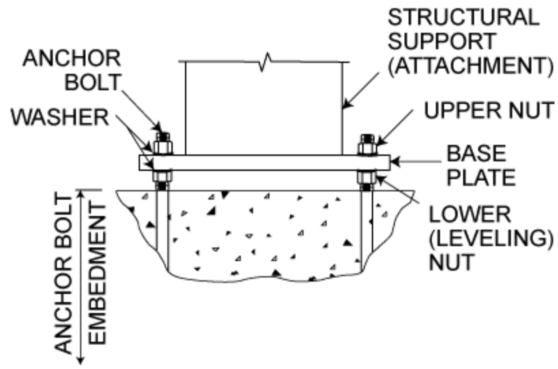


Figure 5-1. Typical Double-Nut Connection

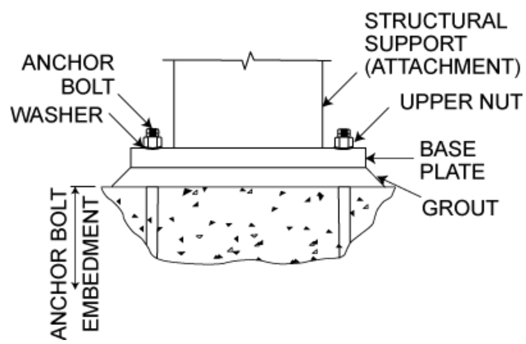


Figure 5-2. Typical Single-Nut Connection

5.17.1—Anchor Bolt Types

Cast-in-place anchor bolts shall be used in new construction.

The following requirements shall apply:

- Anchor bolts may be headed through the use of a preformed bolt head or by other means, such as a nut, flat washer, or plate;
- Hooked anchor bolts with a yield strength not exceeding 380 MPa (55 ksi) may be used; and
- Deformed reinforcing bars may be used as anchor bolts.

C5.17.1

Research (Jirsa et al., 1984) has shown that headed cast-in-place anchor bolts perform significantly better than hooked anchor bolts, regarding possible pull-out prior to development of full tensile strength. Caution should be exercised when using deformed reinforcing bars as anchor bolts, because no fatigue test data are available on threaded reinforcing bar. The ductility of deformed reinforcing bars, as measured by elongation, can be significantly less than most other anchor bolts.

5.17.2—Anchor Bolt Materials

Anchor bolt material, not otherwise specified, shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F 1554, *Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55 and 105-ksi Yield Strength*.

For hooked smooth bars, the yield strength shall not exceed 380 MPa (55 ksi).

C5.17.2

Steel with yield strengths greater than 830 MPa (120 ksi) have been found to be susceptible to stress corrosion in most anchorage environments (ACI 349–90 1995). Galvanized steel with tensile strengths greater than 1100 MPa (160 psi) are more susceptible to hydrogen embrittlement.

Reinforcing bar material used for anchor bolts shall conform to ASTM A 615 or ASTM A 706. The yield strength shall not exceed 550 MPa (80 ksi).

Typical anchor bolt design material properties are provided in Table 5-4.

Threaded reinforcing bars (ASTM A 706, *Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement*) may be used for anchor bolts. Reinforcing bars conforming to ASTM A 615, *Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement* have been used in the past. However, because of possible low toughness, ASTM A 615 reinforcing bars should not be used for nonredundant, fatigue susceptible support structures such as cantilevers and high-mast luminaries. Anchor bolts conforming to ASTM F 1554 usually have satisfactory fracture toughness. Charpy V-Notch impact testing is not required for anchor bolt material.

Table 5-4—Typical Anchor Bolt Material

Material Specification	Yield Strength MPa (ksi)	Minimum Tensile Strength MPa (ksi)
ASTM F 1554 Rods	250 (36)	400 (58)
ASTM F 1554 Rods	380 (55)	520 (75)
ASTM F 1554 Rods	725 (105)	860 (125)
ASTM A 706 Bars	415 (60)	550 (80)

Note: ASTM A 615 bars are not recommended for anchor bolts when subject to fatigue.

5.17.3—Design Basis

The anchor bolts and their anchorage shall be designed to transmit loads from the attachment into the concrete support or foundation by means of tension, bearing, and shear, or any combination thereof.

The design of the anchor bolt and its anchorage shall ensure transfer of load from anchor to concrete. The anchorage system shall be proportioned such that the load in the steel portion of the anchorage will reach its minimum tensile strength prior to failure of the concrete.

The following modes of failure shall be considered in the anchorage design:

- bolt failure,
- load transfer from the anchor to the concrete,
- tensile strength of concrete,
- lateral bursting of concrete, and
- base plate failure.

C5.17.3

Anchor bolts are susceptible to corrosion and fatigue, which have been identified as a mode of failure in several supports for highway signs, luminaires and traffic signals. For a design life of 50 yr, a minimum of six anchor bolts should be considered at the base plate connection of cantilever structures, and a minimum of four anchor bolts should be considered at each foundation of overhead noncantilevered bridge structures. The minimum number of anchor bolts does not apply to structures founded on breakaway supports.

A ductile connection to concrete fails by yielding of the steel anchor. A nonductile failure will occur by a brittle fracture of the concrete in tension or by the anchor slipping in the concrete without the steel yielding. All anchor bolts should be designed for a ductile steel failure prior to any sudden loss of capacity of the anchorages resulting from a brittle failure of the concrete.

NCHRP Report 469 presents Recommended Specification for Steel-to-Concrete Joints Using ASTM F 1554 Grades 36, 55 and 105 Smooth Anchor Rods; and ASTM A 615 and A 706 Grade 60 Deformed Bars. There is also a complete commentary available for the above specification in NCHRP Report 469. The NCHRP Report 469 specification is in a Load and Resistance Factor Design format.

The design strength of an anchor bolt connection shall be equal to or greater than the effect of the design loads on the connection. The design strength of an anchor bolt connection shall be calculated from equilibrium and deformation compatibility.

The design of anchor bolt connections should consider possible lateral loads during erection.

This Article of the Specification includes design provisions from NCHRP Report 469, converted to an Allowable Stress Design format where necessary. However, this information is not intended to provide comprehensive coverage of the design of anchor bolt connections. Other design considerations of importance to the satisfactory performance of the connected material, such as block shear rupture, shear lag, prying action, and base plate stiffness and its effect on the performance of the structure, are beyond the scope of this Specification and commentary and shall be designed in accordance with an appropriate specification.

The axial force in anchor bolts that are subject to tension, or combined shear and tension, shall be calculated with consideration of the effects of the externally applied tensile force and any additional tension resulting from prying action produced by deformation of the base plate.

Prying effects of the base plate should be taken into consideration in the design strength of anchor bolt connections. However, research (NCHRP Report 412) has shown that if the base plate thickness is equal to the anchor bolt diameter, these prying effects may be neglected.

5.17.3.1—Double-Nut Anchor Bolt Connections

The design stresses on anchor bolts shall be determined in accordance with Article 5.17.4.1. In determining the compression effects, bearing of the base plate on concrete or grout shall be neglected. The allowable stresses for the anchor bolts shall be as determined in Article 5.17.4.2. Anchor bolts in double-nut connections should be pretensioned according to Article 5.17.5.

If the clear distance between the bottom of the bottom leveling nut and the top of concrete is less than the nominal anchor bolt diameter, bending of the anchor bolt from shear forces or torsion may be ignored. If the clear distance exceeds one bolt diameter, bending in the anchor shall be considered according to Article 5.17.4.3.

C5.17.3.1

In double-nut-moment connections, the portion of an anchor bolt between the concrete surface and the bottom of the leveling nut may be subject to local bending. Therefore, it is desirable to maintain the clear distance between the concrete surface and the bottom of the leveling nut equal to or less than one anchor bolt diameter. Research (NCHRP Report 412) has shown that for this clear distance the bending effects may be neglected.

5.17.3.2—Single-Nut Anchor Bolt Connections

For anchor bolt connections in tension or flexure, the design tensile stress on contributing anchor bolts shall be determined in accordance with Article 5.17.4.1. The bearing strength of the base plate on the concrete shall be greater than the total compression effects, including axial load and flexure. The allowable stresses for the anchor bolts shall be as determined in Article 5.17.4.2. Anchor bolts in single-nut connections can be either pretensioned or snug-tightened according to Article 5.17.5, although pretensioned bolts have shown better service performance.

C5.17.3.2

Pretension of the anchor bolt in single-nut connections will allow part of the uplift axial load to be transferred through partial unloading of the concrete or grout within the range of service loads. However, at ultimate uplift load, the base plate may separate from the concrete or grout; therefore, the anchor bolts must be designed for the entire factored uplift load. At this point, the stress from the pretension has vanished because the concrete is no longer reacting against this pretension. Therefore, the effect of pretension is ignored in all design calculations, and it is also neglected in the fatigue design, even though it is clearly beneficial in reducing the actual load range in the anchor bolts at service load levels.

The contributions to the connection strength from bearing and shear friction of the base plate on the concrete or grout shall be calculated in accordance with the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*. Shear friction strength should be calculated using the load combination that gives minimum possible compression from dead load along with the maximum uplift that is consistent with the lateral load that is being evaluated. The effect of wind load should not be included when calculating the shear friction strength unless the wind load causes the lateral load or uplift.

The connection shear strength or torsional strength may be taken as the larger of:

- The friction strength between the base plate and the concrete surface; or
- The smaller of the sum of the steel shear strengths of the contributing individual anchor bolts or the concrete shear strength of the anchor group.

The combination of the friction strength and the shear strength of the anchor bolts is not permitted.

The compression force over the concrete may develop shear friction. The contribution of the shear friction for single-nut connections shall be based on the most unfavorable arrangement of loads that is also consistent with the lateral force that is being evaluated.

Single-nut connections may resist the shear force through shear friction, and consequently anchor bolts in those connections need not be designed to contribute to the shear strength. If the shear friction strength is smaller than the shear force in the connection, anchor bolts shall be designed to transmit all the shear force (i.e., it is not permitted to combine the strength from the friction and from the anchor bolts because these two peak load resistances may occur at different slip or deformation levels and therefore may not be simultaneously active).

5.17.3.3—Use of Grout

Grout, when specified under base plates in a load-carrying application, shall be nonshrink. Grout shall not contain any chlorides or other harmful additives that could cause corrosion of the anchor bolts. Grout shall not be considered as a load-carrying element in double-nut connections.

C5.17.3.3

Compressive load from the base plate in double-nut connections should be supported directly by the anchor bolt–leveling nuts. Fuchs et al. (1995) indicates that, in practice, many base plates are placed on a grout bed. For this type of installation, a grout failure may occur before any other type of failure.

Experience has indicated that anchor bolts may experience corrosion if cracking occurs in the grout packed beneath the base plate or if adequate drainage is not provided.

5.17.3.4—Wind-Induced Cyclic Loads

For the structure types specified in Section 11, "Fatigue Design," anchor bolts shall be designed for wind-induced cyclic loads, in accordance with the provisions of Section 11.

5.17.4—Anchor Bolt Design

5.17.4.1—Distribution of Anchor Bolt Forces

For checking allowable tension and compression, axial stresses in anchor bolts included in an anchor bolt group may be calculated assuming an elastic distribution of forces and moments. Double-nut connection distribution shall be based on the moment of inertia of the bolt group. The design tensile stress on contributing anchor bolts in single-nut connections shall be determined in accordance with equilibrium and deformation compatibility.

C5.17.4.1

In double-nut connections, the bolt axial stress may be calculated using the equation $N/A \pm Mc/I$, where N is the axial compressive load, A is the area of the bolt group, M is the applied moment, c is the distance from the centroid of the bolt group to the centroid of the outermost bolt, and I is the moment of inertia of the bolt group about the axis of bending. Experimental work (Kaczinski et al., 1998) indicated that this procedure is valid provided the clear distance between the bottom of the leveling nut and top of the foundation is less than one bolt diameter.

For checking allowable shear, shear stresses in anchor bolts included in an anchor bolt group may be calculated assuming an elastic distribution of forces and torsion, which is based on the polar moment of inertia of the bolt group.

The bolt shear force from torsion may be calculated using the equation *Tr*/*J*, where *T* is the applied torsion, *r* is the radial distance from the centroid of the bolt group to the outermost bolt, and *J* is the polar moment of inertia of the bolt group about the bolt group centroid. The shear stresses in the anchor bolts from torsion should be combined to the shear stresses from direct shear forces.

5.17.4.2—Allowable Stresses for Anchor Bolts

The allowable tension stress on the tensile stress area shall be:

$$F_t = 0.50F_y \tag{5-21a}$$

The allowable compression stress on the tensile stress area shall be:

$$F_c = 0.60F_y \tag{5-21b}$$

for anchor bolts with a clear distance between the bottom of the lower nut to the concrete surface equal to or less than four anchor bolt diameters. If this clear distance exceeds four bolt diameters, buckling of the anchor bolt shall be considered using column design criteria of Article 5.10.

The allowable shear stress on the tensile stress area shall be:

$$F_v = 0.30F_y \tag{5-22}$$

The tensile stress area of a threaded part shall be calculated as:

$$A = \frac{\pi}{4}\left(D - 0.9382P\right)^2 \left(\text{mm}^2\right) \tag{5-23}$$

$$A = \frac{\pi}{4}\left(D - \frac{0.9743}{n}\right)^2 \left(\text{in}^2\right)$$

where *D* is the nominal diameter of the bolt, *P* is the thread pitch in mm, and *n* is the number of threads per in.

For a single anchor bolt subjected to combined tension and shear, the following equation shall be satisfied:

$$\left(\frac{f_v}{F_v}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{f_t}{F_t}\right)^2 \le 1.0 \tag{5-24}$$

For a single anchor bolt subjected to combined compression and shear, the following equation shall be satisfied:

$$\left(\frac{f_v}{F_v}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{f_c}{F_c}\right)^2 \le 1.0 \tag{5-25}$$

C5.17.4.2

Eqs. 5-24 and 5-25 are interaction equations that provide a check so that the upper limit for combined shear and tension, or shear and compressions, is not exceeded.

F_v, F_c, and F_t may be increased by 1/3 for Group II and III loads, as allowed in Section 3, "Loads."

5.17.4.3—Bending Stress in Anchor Bolts

When the clearance between the bottom of the leveling nuts and the top of the concrete foundation exceeds one bolt diameter, bending stresses in the anchor bolts should be considered.

The combined tension and shear and compression and shear requirements of Article 5.17.4.2 shall be used to account for the combination of bending, tension, compression and shear. Eqs. 5-24 and 5-25 shall be met with the value of f_t equal to the summation of the axial tensile stress and the maximum tensile bending stress or f_c equal to the summation of the axial compressive stress and the maximum tensile bending stress.

C5.17.4.3

Bending stresses in individual bolts can be ignored if the standoff distance between the top of the foundation and bottom of the leveling nut is less than one bolt diameter. For larger standoff distances, the following beam model should be used.

The bending moments in the anchor bolt can be determined using a beam model fixed at the top of the concrete foundation and free to displace laterally but not rotate at the bottom of the leveling nut. The acting shear force on the anchor bolt is applied at the top of the beam (bottom of the leveling nut). The anchor bolt's section modulus shall account for the presence of threads.

5.17.4.4—Anchor Bolt Holes in Base Plate

If anchor bolts are required to resist shear or torsion, the:

- hole in the base plate must be a shear hole as defined in Table 5-5,
- design shear stress on contributing anchor bolts shall be determined in accordance with Article 5.17.4.1, and
- anchor bolt shear force is limited to the design-bearing strength of the base plate anchor bolt holes. In terms of anchor bolt shear stress, the limit is

$$f_v \leq \frac{4tF_u}{\pi D} \tag{5-26}$$

where:

D = nominal diameter of anchor bolt,

t = thickness of base plate, and

F_u = base plate design tensile strength (MPa, ksi)

C5.17.4.4

The hole-bearing strength for the base plate is from the AISC Allowable Stress Design hole-bearing capacity where the capacity is $1.0F_u$ on the projected area (Dt) of the bolt.

Table 5-5—Maximum Nominal Anchor Hole Dimensions

Anchor Bolt Diameter d_b, mm (in.)	Maximum Permitted Nominal Anchor Bolt Hole Dimensions[a,b], mm (in.)	
	Shear Holes (diameter)	Normal Holes (diameter)
13 ($^1/_2$)	16 ($^5/_8$)	27 ($1^1/_{16}$)
16 ($^5/_8$)	21 ($^{13}/_{16}$)	30 ($1^3/_{16}$)
19 ($^3/_4$)	24 ($^{15}/_{16}$)	33 ($1^5/_{16}$)
22 ($^7/_8$)	27 ($1^1/_{16}$)	40 ($1^9/_{16}$)
25 (1)	32 ($1^1/_4$)	46 ($1^{13}/_{16}$)
32 ($1^1/_4$)	40 ($1^9/_{16}$)	52 ($2^1/_{16}$)
38 ($1^1/_2$)	46 ($1^{13}/_{16}$)	59 ($2^5/_{16}$)
44 ($1^3/_4$)	52 ($2^1/_{16}$)	70 ($2^3/_4$)
51 (2)	8 ($^5/_{16}$) + d_b	32 ($1^1/_4$) + d_b

[a] The upper tolerance on the tabulated nominal dimensions shall not exceed 2 mm ($^1/_{16}$ in.).

[b] The slightly conical hole that naturally results from punching operations with properly matched punches and dies is acceptable.

5.17.5—Anchor Bolt Installation

5.17.5.1—Anchorage Requirements

Anchorage design of cast-in-place anchor bolts shall be based on accepted engineering practices or by full-scale testing. Anchor bolts shall be embedded in concrete with sufficient cover, length, and anchorage to ensure that the anchor bolts reach their minimum tensile strength prior to failure of the concrete.

When concrete strength alone is not sufficient for the anchor bolts to reach their minimum tensile strength, foundation reinforcement shall be positioned so that the minimum tensile strength of the anchor bolts will be attained prior to failure of the concrete.

5.17.5.2—Anchor Bolt Pretensioning

All anchor bolts shall be adequately tightened to prevent loosening of nuts and to reduce the susceptibility to fatigue damage. Anchor bolts in double-nut connections shall be pretensioned. Anchor bolts in single-nut connections shall be tightened to at least one-half of the pretensioned condition.

Anchor preload shall not be considered in design.

C5.17.5.2

The fatigue strength of anchor bolt connections is directly influenced by several installation conditions. Most important, all anchor bolt nuts shall be adequately tightened to eliminate the possibility of nuts becoming loose under service load conditions. When nuts become loose, the anchor bolts are more susceptible to fatigue damage. The most common method of pretensioning anchor bolts is the turn-of-the-nut method. For single-nut connections, one-half of pretensioned condition may be estimated as 50 percent of the values for the turn-of-the-nut method.

Anchor bolt preload does not affect the ultimate strength of a connection, but it does improve connection performance at working load levels. Fuchs et al. (1995) state that anchor bolt preload will affect the behavior of the anchor bolt at service loads and has practically no influence at failure load levels.

The testing described in NCHRP Report 412 shows that the Constant Amplitude Fatigue Limit (CAFL) for anchor bolts is nearly the same for both snug and pretensioned installations. Therefore, strength and fatigue of snug-tightened and pretensioned anchor bolts are designed in the same manner.

Whenever practical, however, anchor bolts should be pretensioned. Although no benefit is considered when designing pretensioned anchor bolts for infinite life, it should be noted that the pretensioned condition reduces the possibility of anchor bolt nuts becoming loose under service-load conditions. As a result, the pretensioned condition is inherently better with respect to the performance of anchor bolts.

The research report *Tightening Procedure for Large-Diameter Anchor Bolts* (James et al., 1997) provides recommendations for tightening 44-mm (1.75-in.) and larger anchor bolts for the pretensioned condition. This report recommends top nuts be tightened to one-sixth turn beyond snug-tight. Snug-tight was defined as the condition where the nut is in full contact with the base plate, and it was assumed that the full effort of a person on a 300-mm (12-in.) wrench results in a snug-tight condition. The research report contains additional recommendations regarding tightening procedures.

NCHRP Report 469 presents the following (Table 5-6) as a guideline for turn-of-the-nut tightening procedures for anchor bolts with UNC threads.

Table 5-6—Nut Rotation for Turn-of-the-Nut Pretensioning of UNC Threads

Anchor Bolt Diameter, mm (in.)	Nut Rotation beyond Snug-Tight[a,b,c]	
	F 1554 Grade 36	F 1554 Grades 55 and 105 A 615 and A 706 Grade 60
≤38 (≤$1^1/_2$)	$^1/_6$ turn	$^1/_3$ turn
>38 (>$1^1/_2$)	$^1/_{12}$ turn	$^1/_6$ turn

[a] Nut rotation is relative to anchor bolt. The tolerance is plus 20°.

[b] Applicable only to UNC threads.

[c] Refer to NCHRP Report 469 for method to determine torque values for snug-tight condition of top nuts.

Pretensioning of 75-mm (3-in.) diameter anchor bolts was addressed in research performed by Johns and Dexter (1998). The minimum amount of pretension tensile stress that should be in a high-strength structural bolt (i.e., ASTM A 325 bolts) is 70 percent of the ultimate strength; however, many anchor bolts are a lower strength than ASTM A 325 bolts. Using 70 percent of the ultimate strength for mild steel would result in stresses above the yield point; therefore, NCHRP Report 469 recommends a minimum pretensioning tensile stresses of 50 percent to 60 percent of ultimate for anchor bolts in pretensioned connections. A method is available to estimate the torque required to achieve this pretension (NCHRP Report 469).

Michigan DOT (Till and Lefke, 1994) has performed pretensioned turn-of-the-nut research on UNC and UN threaded anchor bolts. Snug-tight conditions for 38-mm ($1\,^1/_2$-in.), 50-mm (2-in.), and 64-mm ($2\,^1/_2$-in.) anchor bolts were obtained using the full effort of a person on an 865-mm (34-in.) wrench. Their recommendation is to specify $^1/_3$ turn past snug-tight for 25-mm (1-in.) to 64-mm ($2\,^1/_2$-in.) UN anchor bolts and 25-mm (1-in.) to 32-mm ($1\,^1/_4$-in.) UNC bolts. Specify $^1/_6$ turn past snug-tight for 38-mm ($1\,^1/_2$-in.) to 64-mm ($2\,^1/_2$-in.) UNC anchor bolts. All material tested was greater than ASTM F 1554 Grade 36.

Lubrication of the threaded and bearing surfaces is typically performed prior to tightening. In double-nut connections, lower nuts/washers should be in full contact with the base plate prior to snug tightening the top nuts. After top nuts are snug-tight, the lower nuts should be retightened to assure that full contact has been maintained.

5.17.5.3—Plumbness of Anchor Bolts

Anchor bolts shall be installed with misalignments of less than 1:40 from vertical. After installation, firm contact shall exist between the anchor bolt nuts, washers, and base plate on any anchor bolt installed in a misaligned position.

C5.17.5.3

Vertical misalignment is a common installation condition that can influence the fatigue strength of anchor bolts. However, research (Kaczinski, et al. 1998) has determined that bending stresses resulting from misalignments up to 1:40 do not need to be considered in stress calculations when designing anchor bolts provided that firm contact exists between the anchor bolt nuts, washers, and base plate. Where appropriate, a beveled washer may be utilized. NCHRP Report 412 verified the alignment limit.

5.18—MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURAL STEEL

5.18.1—General

Steel structures shall be protected from the effects of corrosion by means such as galvanizing, metalizing, painting, or other methods approved by the Designer or Owner. Corrosion likely to occur as a result of entrapped moisture or other factors shall be eliminated or minimized by appropriate design and detailing. Positive means to drain moisture and condensation shall be provided unless the member is completely sealed. Corrosion protection is not required for the surfaces of enclosed spaces that are permanently sealed from any external source of oxygen.

5.18.2—Painted Structures

For painted structures, the materials and methods shall conform to the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*. Parts inaccessible after erection, except the inside of tubing or pipe, shall be given three shop coats of paint.

5.18.3—Galvanized Structures

Hot-dip galvanizing after fabrication shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M 111 (ASTM A 123). Tubular steel pole shafts to be galvanized preferably shall have a silicon content equal to or less than 0.06 percent. Other components, such as base plates, should have silicon content controlled as required to prevent detrimental galvanizing effects. The placement of drainage and vent holes shall not adversely affect the strength requirements of a galvanized member. Damage to the coating shall be repaired subsequent to erection by a method approved by the Owner.

For structural bolts and other steel hardware, hot-dip galvanizing shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M 232 (ASTM A 153). Exposed parts of anchor bolts shall be zinc coated or otherwise suitably protected. The zinc coating should extend a minimum of 100 mm (4 in.) into the concrete. Steel anchorages located below grade and not encased in concrete shall require further corrosion protection in addition to galvanizing.

C5.18.3

Drainage and vent holes result in a reduction of a member's net section and cause stress risers, thereby reducing fatigue resistance. Holes shall be placed at noncritical locations where these reductions will not result in the member's strength being less than the required strength for maximum design loadings or fatigue.

5.19—REFERENCES

AASHTO. 1990. *Standard Specification for Steel Anchor Bolts*, M 314. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC. Available individually in downloadable form; also in *Standard Specifications for Transportation Materials and Methods of Sampling and Testing*, 28th Edition, HM-28.

AASHTO. 2004. *Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products*, M 111M/M 111. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC. Available individually in downloadable form; also in S*tandard Specifications for Transportation Materials and Methods of Sampling and Testing*, 28th Edition, HM-28.

AASHTO. 2006. *Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware*, M 232M/M 232. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC. Available individually in downloadable form; also in *Standard Specifications for Transportation Materials and Methods of Sampling and Testing*, 28th Edition, HM-28.

AASHTO. 2002. *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*, 17th Edition, HB-17. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

ACI. 1991. *State-of-the-Art Report on Anchorage to Concrete,* ACI 355.1R-91. American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI.

ACI. 1995. *Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete*, ACI 318-95. American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI.

ACI. 1995. "Code Requirements for Nuclear Safety Related Concrete Structures," Appendix B, "Steel Embedments," ACI 349-90. American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI.

AISC. 1989. *Manual of Steel Construction—Allowable Stress Design*, Ninth Edition. American Institute of Steel Construction, Chicago, IL.

AISC. 1994. *Manual of Steel Construction—Load and Resistance Factor Design,* Second Edition. American Institute of Steel Construction, Chicago, IL.

ASCE. 1990. *Design of Steel Transmission Pole Structures*, Second Edition. Manuals and Reports on Engineering Practice No. 72. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY.

ASTM. 1998. "Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength," ASTM F 1554-94, *Annual Book of ASTM Standards.* American Society for Testing Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

AWS. 1996. *Structural Welding Code—Steel*, ANSI/AWS D1.1-96. American Welding Society, Miami, FL.

Cannon, D. D., and R. A. LeMaster. 1987. *Local Buckling Strength of Polygonal Tubular Poles.* Transmission Line Mechanical Research Center, Electric Power Research Institute, Haslet, TX.

Cook, R. A., G. T. Doerr, and R. E. Klingner. 1989. *Design Guide for Steel-to-Concrete Connections*, Report No. FHWA/TX-89+1126–4F. Center for Transportation Research, Texas State Department of Highways and Public Transportation, Austin, TX.

Cook, R. A., D. S. Ellifritt, S. E. Schmid, A. Adediran, and W. Beese. 1995. *Design Procedure for Annular Base Plates*, Final Project Report No. FL/DOT/RMC/0697-8804, Structures and Materials Research Report No. 95-4. Florida Department of Transportation, Tallahassee, FL.

Currence, W. C. 1974. "Local Buckling Stability of Polygonal Cross-Sections in Bending." Paper presented at the American Society of Civil Engineers National Water Resources Meeting, Los Angeles, CA.

Dexter, R., and M. Ricker. 2002. *Fatigue-Resistant Design of Cantilever Signal, Sign, and Light Supports*, NCHRP Report 469. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

Fiss, R. A. 1971. "Local Buckling of Tubular Steel Poles in Bending." Paper presented at the American Society of Civil Engineers Annual and National Environmental Engineering Meeting, St. Louis, MO.

Fouad, F., et al. 2003. *Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaries, and Traffic Signals,* NCHRP Report 494. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

Fuchs, W., R. Eligenhausen, and J. E. Breen. 1995. "Concrete Capacity Design Approach for Fastening to Concrete," ACI Structural Journal 92, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, No. 1 (January–February 1995).

Hall, J. H. 2005. "The Effect of Baseplate Flexibility on the Fatigue Performance of Welded Socket Connections in Cantilevered Sign Structures." Master's thesis, Graduate School of Engineering, Lehigh University, Bethlehem, PA.

James, R. W., P. B. Keating, R. W. Bolton, F. C. Benson, D. E. Bray, R. C. Abraham, and J. B. Hodge. *Tightening Procedures for Large-Diameter Anchor Bolts*. Report No. FHWA/TX-98/1472-IF. Austin, Texas: Texas Transportation Institute, Texas Department of Transportation, June 1997.

Jirsa, J. O., et al. 1984. *Strength and Behavior of Bolt Installations Anchored in Concrete Piers*, Report No. FHWA/TX-85/51+305–1F. Texas State Department of Highways and Public Transportation, Austin, TX.

Johns, K. W., and R. J. Dexter. 1988. *Fatigue Related Wind Loads on Highway Support Structures*, Final ATLSS Report No. 98-03. Lehigh University, Bethlehem, PA. Prepared for New Jersey Department of Transportation.

Kaczinski, M. R., R. J. Dexter, and J. P. Van Dien. 1998. *Fatigue-Resistant Design of Cantilevered Signal, Sign and Light Supports*, NCHRP Report 412. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

Koenigs, M. T., T. A. Botros, D. Freytag, and K. H. Frank. 2003. *Fatigue Strength of Signal Mast Arm Connections,* Research Report 4178-2. Texas Department of Transportation, Austin, TX.

Plantema, F. J. 1946. *Collapsing Stresses of Circular Cylinders and Round Tubes.* Report No. S. 280. Nat. Luchtvaartlabatiorium, Amsterdam, The Netherlands.

Schilling, C. G. 1965. "Buckling Strength of Circular Tubes," *Journal of the Structural Division* 19, No. ST5 (October 1965). American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, pp. 325–348.

Seely, F. B., and J. O. Smith. 1967. *Advanced Mechanics of Materials*. John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY.

Till, R. D., and N. A. Lefke. 1994. *The Relationship Between Torque, Tension, and Nut Rotation of Large Diameter Anchor Bolts*, Research Report No. R-1330. Michigan Department of Transportation, Lansing, MI.

Timoshenko, S. P., and J. M. Gere. 1961. *Theory of Elastic Stability* McGraw–Hill, New York, NY.

Warpinski, M. K. 2006. *The Effect of Base Connection Geometry on the Fatigue Performance of Welded Socket Connections in Multi-Sided High-Mast Lighting Towers.* Master's thesis, Graduate School of Engineering, Lehigh University, Bethlehem, PA.

SECTION 6: ALUMINUM DESIGN

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 6:

ALUMINUM DESIGN

6.1—SCOPE

This Section specifies design provisions for structural supports made of aluminum alloys. Additional design provisions and information not covered in this Section shall be obtained from the *Aluminum Design Manual,* "Specifications for Aluminum Structures—Allowable Stress Design."

6.2—NOTATION

A = net area of cross-section of a tension member or tension flange of a beam, or gross area of cross-section of a compression member or compression flange of a beam (mm^2, in.^{2})

A_w = the portion of area of cross-section A lying within 25 mm (1 in.) of a weld (mm^2, in.^{2})

b = effective width. For flat plate elements supported along one edge, the effective width is the distance from the unsupported edge of element to toe of the fillet or bend. For flat plate elements supported along two edges, the effective width is the distance between the toe of the fillets or bends. For bent plates, if the inside corner radius exceeds 4 times the thickness, then the inside radius shall be assumed equal to 4 times the thickness in calculating b (mm, in.)

B = buckling constant (MPa, ksi), with following subscript:

c—compression in columns

p—compression in flat plates

t—compression in round tubes

tb—bending in round tubes

br—bending in rectangular bars

s—shear in flat plates

C = buckling constant with following subscript:

c—compression in columns

p—compression in flat plates

t—compression in round tubes

tb—bending in round tubes

br—bending in rectangular bars

s—shear in flat plates

c = distance from the neutral axis to the extreme fiber (mm, in.)

C_A = amplification factor to estimate additional moments due to P-delta effects, as defined in Article 4.8.1

C_b = coefficient that depends on moment gradient

d = depth of section or beam (mm, in.)

D = buckling constant (MPa, ksi), with following subscript:

c—compression in columns

p—compression in flat plates

t—compression in round tubes

tb—bending in round tubes

br—bending in rectangular bars

s—shear in flat plates

E = modulus of elasticity in compression (MPa, ksi)

F_{6061} = corresponding allowable stress for alloy 6061-T6 (MPa, ksi)

F_a = allowable compressive stress for a member considered as an axially loaded column (MPa, ksi)
f_a = average compressive or tensile stress on cross-section produced by an axial load (MPa, ksi)
F_{a0} = allowable compressive stress of an axially loaded member considered as a short column (MPa, ksi)
F_b = allowable stress for members subjected to bending only (MPa, ksi)
f_b = maximum bending stress produced by transverse loads or bending moments (MPa, ksi)
F_{bu} = bearing ultimate strength (MPa, ksi)
F_{buw} = bearing ultimate strength within 25 mm (1 in.) of a weld (MPa, ksi)
f_{bx} = bending stress about the major axis (MPa, ksi)
F_{bx} = allowable bending stress about the major axis (MPa, ksi)
f_{by} = bending stress about the minor axis (MPa, ksi)
F_{by} = allowable bending stress about the minor axis (Article 6.7.2.1) (MPa, ksi)
F_{by} = bearing yield strength (Tables 6-1 and 6-3) (MPa, ksi)
F_{byw} = bearing yield strength within 25 mm (1 in.) of a weld (MPa, ksi)
F_c = allowable compressive stress (MPa, ksi)
F_{cast} = allowable compressive or shear stress on slender element for casting (MPa, ksi)
$(F_{cast})_{tc}$ = allowable tensile or compressive stress for casting from Table 6-9 (MPa, ksi)
F_{cr} = local buckling stress for element (MPa, ksi)
F_{cy} = compressive yield strength (MPa, ksi)
F_{cyw} = compressive yield strength across a butt weld (0.2 percent offset in 250 mm (10 in.) gage length) (MPa, ksi)
F_e = elastic buckling stress divided by n_u (MPa, ksi)
F_{ec} = for columns, elastic critical stress (Article 6.4.4.1) (MPa, ksi)
F_{ec} = for beams, allowable elastic lateral buckling stress of beam calculated assuming that the elements are not buckled (Article 6.4.2.1) (MPa, ksi)
F_n = allowable stress for cross-section 25 mm (1 in.) or more from a weld (MPa, ksi)
F_{pw} = allowable stress on cross-section, part of whose area lies within 25 mm (1 in.) of a weld (MPa, ksi)
F_{rb} = allowable stress for beam with buckled element (MPa, ksi)
F_{rc} = allowable stress for column with buckled element (MPa, ksi)
f_s = shear stress on cross-section caused by torsion or transverse shear loads (MPa, ksi)
F_s = allowable shear stress for members subjected only to shear or torsion (MPa, ksi)
F_{su} = shear ultimate strength (MPa, ksi)
F_{suw} = shear ultimate strength within 25 mm (1 in.) of a weld (MPa, ksi)
F_{sy} = shear yield strength (MPa, ksi)
F_{syw} = shear yield strength within 25 mm (1 in.) of a weld (MPa, ksi)
F_t = allowable tensile stress for axial load only (MPa, ksi)
F_{tu} = tensile ultimate strength (MPa, ksi)
F_{tuw} = tensile ultimate strength across a butt weld (MPa, ksi)
F_{ty} = tensile yield strength (MPa, ksi)
F_{tyw} = tensile yield strength across a butt weld (0.2 percent offset in 250 mm (10 in.) gage length) (MPa, ksi)
F_w = allowable stress on cross-section if entire area were to lie within 25 mm (1 in.) of weld (MPa, ksi)
F_y = either F_{ty} or F_{cy}, whichever is smaller (MPa, ksi)
h = clear height of shear web (mm, in.)
I_y = moment of inertia of a beam about axis parallel to web (mm^4, in.^{4})
J = torsion constant (mm^4, in.^{4})
k = effective length factor by rational analysis. k shall be taken larger than or equal to unity unless rational analysis justifies a smaller value
k_1 = coefficient for determining slenderness limit S_2 for sections for which the allowable compressive stress is based on ultimate strength

k_2 = coefficient for determining allowable compressive stress in sections with slenderness ratio above S_2 for which the allowable compressive stress is based on ultimate strength

k_c = coefficient for compression members

k_t = coefficient for tension members

L = unsupported length in plane of bending. Bracing points are the points at which the compression flange is restrained against lateral movement or twisting (mm, in.)

L_b = length of the beam between bracing points or between a brace point and the free end of a cantilever beam (mm, in.)

L_t = length of tube between circumferential stiffeners (mm, in.)

n_a = factor of safety on appearance of buckling

n_u = factor of safety on ultimate strength

n_y = factor of safety on yield strength

R = mid-thickness radius of round tubular column or maximum mid-thickness radius of oval tubular column (mm, in.)

r = radius of gyration of the column about the axis of buckling (mm, in.)

R_b = mid-thickness radius of curvature of curved plate and tubular beam element (mm, in.)

R_o = for torsion and shear, outside radius of round tube or maximum outside radius of oval tube (mm, in.)

r_y = radius of gyration about axis parallel to web (mm, in.)

S = slenderness ratio of section

S_1, S_2 = slenderness limits

S_c = section modulus of a beam, compression side (mm^3, in.^{3})

t = thickness (mm, in.)

6.3—MATERIAL—ALUMINUM ALLOY

For principal materials used for structural members, minimum mechanical properties for nonwelded aluminum alloys shall be as given in Table 6-1, and for welded aluminum alloys in Table 6-2. Applicable ASTM specifications are Designations B 209, B 210, B 211, B 221, B 241, B 247, B 308, and B 429.

C6.3

For aluminum alloys not found in Tables 6-1 and 6-2, reference should be made to the *Aluminum Design Manual*, "Specifications for Aluminum Structures—Allowable Stress Design."

6.4—NONWELDED MEMBERS

Allowable stresses for nonwelded aluminum alloy members shall be determined in accordance with the formulas shown in Table 6-3, except as indicated in Articles 6.4.1, 6.4.2.1, and 6.4.4.1. When more than one formula is given, the smallest of the resulting stresses shall be used.

The safety factors for the basic allowable stresses shall follow those specified for building-type structures. The safety factors n_u, n_y, and n_a shall be taken as follows:

$$n_u = 1.95$$

$$n_y = 1.65$$

$$n_a = 1.20$$

Equations for buckling constants B, C, and D and values of k_1 and k_2 shall be as given in Tables 6-4 and 6-5. Values of coefficients k_t and k_c shall be as given in Table 6-6.

C6.4

Allowable stresses for commonly used alloys are tabulated in Appendix B in accordance with the formulas of Table 6-3. Tabulated allowable stresses for additional alloys are provided in the *Aluminum Design Manual*, "Design Aids."

Tabulated values of buckling constants for aluminum alloys are provided in the *Aluminum Design Manual*, "Design Aids."

Table 6-1—Minimum Mechanical Properties for Selected Aluminum Alloys

Alloy and Temper	Product[a]	Thickness Range, mm (in.)[a]	Tension		Compr.	Shear		Bearing		Compr. Modulus of Elasticity[c]
			F_{tu}[b] MPa (ksi)	F_{ty}[b] MPa (ksi)	F_{cy} MPa (ksi)	F_{su} MPa (ksi)	F_{sy} MPa (ksi)	F_{bu} MPa (ksi)	F_{by} MPa (ksi)	E MPa (ksi)
5083-H111	Extrusions	up thru 12.7 (0.500)	276 (40)	165 (24)	145 (21)	165 (24)	96.5 (14)	538 (78)	283 (41)	71 710 (10 400)
5083-H111	Extrusions	12.71 (0.501) and over	276 (40)	165 (24)	145 (21)	159 (23)	96.5 (14)	538 (78)	262 (38)	71 710 (10 400)
5083-H116, -H321	Sheet and Plate	4.78 (0.188)–38.1 (1.500)	303 (44)	214 (31)	179 (26)	179 (26)	124 (18)	579 (84)	365 (53)	71 710 (10 400)
5083-H116, -H321	Plate	38.11 (1.501)–76.2 (3.00)	283 (41)	200 (29)	165 (24)	165 (24)	117 (17)	538 (78)	338 (49)	71 710 (10 400)
5086-H34	Sheet and Plate Drawn Tube	All	303 (44)	234 (34)	221 (32)	179 (26)	138 (20)	579 (84)	400 (58)	71 710 (10 400)
5456-H111	Extrusions	up thru 12.7 (0.500)	290 (42)	179 (26)	152 (22)	172 (25)	103 (15)	565 (82)	303 (44)	71 710 (10 400)
5456-H111	Extrusions	12.71 (0.501) and over	290 (42)	179 (26)	152 (22)	165 (24)	103 (15)	565 (82)	290 (42)	71 710 (10 400)
5456-H112	Extrusions	up thru 127 (5.00)	283 (41)	131 (19)	138 (20)	165 (24)	75.8 (11)	565 (82)	262 (38)	71 710 (10 400)
5456-H116, H321	Sheet and Plate	4.78 (0.188)–31.75 (1.25)	317 (46)	228 (33)	186 (27)	186 (27)	131 (19)	600 (87)	386 (56)	71 710 (10 400)
5456-H116, H321	Plate	31.77 (1.251)–38.1 (1.50)	303 (44)	214 (31)	172 (25)	172 (25)	124 (18)	579 (84)	365 (53)	71 710 (10 400)
5456-H116, H321	Plate	38.11 (1.501)–76.2 (3.00)	283 (41)	200 (29)	172 (25)	172 (25)	117 (17)	565 (82)	338 (49)	71 710 (10 400)
6005-T5	Extrusions	up thru 25 (1.00)	262 (38)	241 (35)	241 (35)	165 (24)	138 (20)	552 (80)	386 (56)	69 640 (10 100)
6061-T6, T651	Sheet and Plate	0.254 (0.01)–101.6 (4.00)	290 (42)	241 (35)	241 (35)	186 (27)	138 (20)	607 (88)	400 (58)	69 640 (10 100)
6061-T6, T6510, T6511	Extrusions	up thru 25.4 (1.00)	262 (38)	241 (35)	241 (35)	165 (24)	138 (20)	552 (80)	386 (56)	69 640 (10 100)
6061-T6, T651	Cold Fin. Rod and Bar	up thru 203 (8.00)	290 (42)	241 (35)	241 (35)	172 (25)	138 (20)	607 (88)	386 (56)	69 640 (10 100)
6061-T6	Drawn Tube	0.635 (0.025)–12.7 (0.500)	290 (42)	241 (35)	241 (35)	186 (27)	138 (20)	607 (88)	386 (56)	69 640 (10 100)
6061-T6	Pipe	All	262 (38)	241 (35)	241 (35)	165 (24)	138 (20)	552 (80)	386 (56)	69 640 (10 100)
6063-T5	Extrusions	up thru 12.7 (0.500)	152 (22)	110 (16)	110 (16)	89.6 (13)	62.1 (9)	317 (46)	179 (26)	69 640 (10 100)
6063-T5	Extrusions	12.71 (0.501) and over	145 (21)	103 (15)	103 (15)	82.7 (12)	58.6 (8.5)	303 (44)	165 (24)	69 640 (10 100)
6063-T6	Extrusions and Pipe	All	207 (30)	172 (25)	172 (25)	131 (19)	96.5 (14)	434 (63)	276 (40)	69 640 (10 100)
6105-T5	Extrusions	up thru 12.7 (0.500)	262 (38)	241 (35)	241 (35)	165 (24)	138 (20)	552 (80)	386 (56)	69 640 (10 100)
6351-T5	Extrusions	up thru 25.4 (1.00)	262 (38)	241 (35)	241 (35)	165 (24)	138 (20)	552 (80)	386 (56)	69 640 (10 100)

Notes:

[a] Most product and thickness ranges are taken from the Aluminum Association 1997 edition of *Aluminum Standards and Data*.

[b] F_{tu} and F_{ty} are minimum specified values. Other strength properties are corresponding minimum expected values.

[c] Typical values. For deflection calculations, an average modulus of elasticity is used; numerically this is 690 MPa (100 ksi) lower than values in this column.

Table 6-2—Minimum Mechanical Properties for Selected Welded Aluminum Alloys

Alloy and Temper	Product	Thickness Range, mm (in.)	Tension		Compr.	Shear		Bearing	
			F_{tuw} [a,e] MPa (ksi)	F_{tyw} [b] MPa (ksi)	F_{cyw} [b] MPa (ksi)	F_{suw} MPa (ksi)	F_{syw} MPa (ksi)	F_{buw} MPa (ksi)	F_{byw} MPa (ksi)
5083-H111	Extrusions	All	269 (39)	145 (21)	138 (20)	159 (23)	82.7 (12)	538 (78)	221 (32)
5083-H116, H321	Sheet and Plate	4.78 (0.188)–38.1 (1.500)	276 (40)	165 (24)	165 (24)	165 (24)	96.5 (14)	552 (80)	248 (36)
5083-H116, H321	Plate	38.11 (1.501)–76.2 (3.00)	269 (39)	159 (23)	159 (23)	165 (24)	89.6 (13)	538 (78)	234 (34)
5086-H34	Sheet and Plate	All	241 (35)	131 (19)	131 (19)	145 (21)	75.8 (11)	483 (70)	193 (28)
5456-H111	Extrusions	All	283 (41)	165 (24)	152 (22)	165 (24)	96.5 (14)	565 (82)	262 (38)
5456-H112	Extrusions	All	283 (41)	131 (19)	131 (19)	165 (24)	75.8 (11)	565 (82)	262 (38)
5456-H116, H321	Sheet and Plate	4.78 (0.188)–38.1 (1.500)	290 (42)	179 (26)	165 (24)	172 (25)	103 (15)	579 (84)	262 (38)
5456-H116, H321	Plate	38.11 (1.501)–76.2 (3.00)	283 (41)	165 (24)	159 (23)	172 (25)	96.5 (14)	565 (82)	262 (38)
6005-T5	Extrusions	up to 6.35 (0.25)	165 (24)	117 (17)	117 (17)	103 (15)	69.0 (10)	345 (50)	207 (30)
6061-T6, T651, T6510, T6511	All	[c]	165 (24)	138 (20)	138 (20)	103 (15)	82.7 (12)	345 (50)	207 (30)
6061-T6, T651, T6510, T6511	All	Over 9.5 (0.375)[d]	165 (24)	103 (15)	103 (15)	103 (15)	62.1 (9)	345 (50)	207 (30)
6063-T5, -T6	All	All	117 (17)	75.8 (11)	75.8 (11)	75.8 (11)	44.8 (6.5)	234 (34)	152 (22)
6351-T5	Extrusions	[c]	165 (24)	138 (20)	138 (20)	103 (15)	82.7 (12)	345 (50)	207 (30)
6351-T5	Extrusions	Over 9.5 (0.375)[d]	165 (24)	103 (15)	103 (15)	103 (15)	62.1 (9)	345 (50)	207 (30)

Notes:

[a] Filler wires are recommended in Table 7.2-1 of the *Aluminum Design Manual,* "Specifications for Aluminum Structures—Allowable Stress Design." Values of F_{tuw} are ASME weld qualification values.

[b] 0.2 percent of offset in 250-mm (10-in.) gage length across a butt weld.

[c] Values when welded with 5183, 5356, or 5556 alloy filler wire, regardless of thickness. Values also apply to thicknesses less than or equal to 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) When welded with 4043 alloy filler wire.

[d] Values when welded with 4043 alloy filler wire.

[e] When formulas from Table 6-3 in the specification section are applied to welded structures, the tensile ultimate strength F_{tu} shall be 90 percent of the F_{tuw} values given in the above table, which are ASME weld qualification test values of ultimate strength.

Table 6-3—Allowable Stress Formulas

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component[a]	Eq. Set	Allowable Stress (Use the smaller of the two values:)
Tension, axial, net section	Any tension member	Eq. 6-1	$\frac{F_{ty}}{n_y}$ or $\frac{F_{tu}}{(k_t n_u)}$
Tension in Beams, extreme fiber, net section	Rectangular tubes, structural shapes bent around strong axis	Eq. 6-2	$\frac{F_{ty}}{n_y}$ or $\frac{F_{tu}}{(k_t n_u)}$
	Round or oval tubes	Eq. 6-3	$\frac{1.17F_{ty}}{n_y}$ or $\frac{1.24F_{tu}}{(k_t n_u)}$
	Shapes bent about weak axis, bars, plates	Eq. 6-4	$\frac{1.30F_{ty}}{n_y}$ or $\frac{1.42F_{tu}}{(k_t n_u)}$
Bearing	On bolts	Eq. 6-5	$\frac{F_{by}}{n_y}$ or $\frac{F_{bu}}{1.2n_u}$
	On flat surfaces and on bolts in slotted holes	Eq. 6-6	$\frac{F_{by}}{1.5n_y}$ or $\frac{F_{bu}}{1.8n_u}$

Notes:

[a] See Appendix B for details of members and components, and for allowable stress tables of commonly used alloys.

[b] See Article 6.4.4.1.

[c] See Article 6.4.1.

[d] For tubes with circumferential welds, R/t and R_b/t, as applicable, shall be less than or equal to 20, except when the design meets the details and post-weld heat treatment requirements of Article 6.5.

[e] See Article 6.4.2.1.

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\le S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\ge S_2$
Compression in Columns, axial, gross section	All columns[b]	Eq. 6-7	$\frac{F_{cy}}{k_c n_y}$	$\frac{kL}{r} = \frac{B_c - \frac{n_u F_{cy}}{k_c n_y}}{D_c}$	$\frac{1}{n_u}\left(B_c - D_c \frac{kL}{r}\right)$	$\frac{kL}{r} = C_c$	$\frac{\pi^2 E}{n_u \left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns buckling about a symmetry axis[c]	Eq. 6-8	$\frac{F_{cy}}{k_c n_y}$	$\frac{b}{t} = \frac{B_p - \frac{n_u F_{cy}}{k_c n_y}}{5.1D_p}$	$\frac{1}{n_u}\left(B_p - 5.1D_p \frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = \frac{k_1 B_p}{5.1D_p}$	$\frac{k_2\sqrt{B_p E}}{n_u\left(5.1\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns not buckling about a symmetry axis	Eq. 6-9	$\frac{F_{cy}}{k_c n_y}$	$\frac{b}{t} = \frac{B_p - \frac{n_u F_{cy}}{k_c n_y}}{5.1D_p}$	$\frac{1}{n_u}\left(B_p - 5.1D_p \frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = \frac{C_p}{5.1}$	$\frac{\pi^2 E}{n_u\left(5.1\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$

Continued on next page

Table 6-3—Allowable Stress Formulas—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≤ S_1	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≥ S_2
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section	Flat plates with both edges supported[c]	Eq. 6-10	$\frac{F_{cy}}{k_c n_y}$	$\frac{b}{t} = \frac{B_p - \frac{n_u F_{cy}}{k_c n_y}}{1.6D_p}$	$\frac{1}{n_u}\left(B_p - 1.6D_p \frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = \frac{k_1 B_p}{1.6D_p}$	$\frac{k_2\sqrt{B_p E}}{n_u\left(1.6\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Curved plates supported on both edges, walls of round or oval tubes[d]	Eq. 6-11	$\frac{F_{cy}}{k_c n_y}$	$\frac{R}{t} = \left(\frac{B_t - \frac{n_u F_{cy}}{k_c n_y}}{D_t}\right)^2$	$\frac{1}{n_u}\left(B_t - D_t\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}\right)$	$\frac{R}{t} = C_t$	$\frac{\pi^2 E}{16n_u\left(\frac{R}{t}\right)\left(1+\frac{\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
Compression in Beams, extreme fiber, gross section	Single web beams bent about strong axis[e]	Eq. 6-12	$\frac{F_{cy}}{n_y}$	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = \frac{1.2\left(B_c - F_{cy}\right)}{D_c}$	$\frac{1}{n_y}\left(B_c - \frac{D_c L_b}{1.2r_y}\right)$	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 1.2C_c$	$\frac{\pi^2 E}{n_y\left(\frac{L_b}{1.2r_y}\right)^2}$
	Round or oval tubes[d]	Eq. 6-13	$\frac{1.17F_{cy}}{n_y}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = \left(\frac{B_{tb} - 1.17F_{cy}}{D_{tb}}\right)^2$	$\frac{1}{n_y}\left(B_{tb} - D_{tb}\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}\right)$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = \left[\frac{\left(\frac{n_u}{n_y}B_{tb} - B_t\right)}{\frac{n_u}{n_y}D_{tb} - D_t}\right]^2$	Same as Eq. 6-11 (a), (c), or (e), as applicable, for $R = R_b$
	Solid rectangular and round section beams	Eq. 6-14	$\frac{1.3F_{cy}}{n_y}$	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = \frac{B_{br} - 1.3F_{cy}}{2.3D_{br}}$	$\frac{1}{n_y}\left(B_{br} - 2.3D_{br}\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}}\right)$	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = \frac{C_{br}}{2.3}$	$\frac{\pi^2 E}{5.29n_y\left(\frac{d}{t}\right)^2\left(\frac{L_b}{d}\right)}$
	Rectangular tubes and box sections[e]	Eq. 6-15	$\frac{F_{cy}}{n_y}$	$\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}} = \left(\frac{B_c - F_{cy}}{1.6D_c}\right)^2$	$\frac{1}{n_y}\left(B_c - 1.6D_c\sqrt{\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}}}\right)$	$\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}} = \left(\frac{C_c}{1.6}\right)^2$	$\frac{\pi^2 E}{2.56n_y\left(\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}}\right)}$

Continued on next page

Table 6-3—Allowable Stress Formulas—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\le S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\ge S_2$
Compression in Components of Beams, component under uniform compression, gross section	Flat plates supported on one edge[c]	Eq. 6-16	$\frac{F_{cy}}{n_y}$	$\frac{b}{t}=\frac{B_p-F_{cy}}{5.1D_p}$	$\frac{1}{n_y}\left[B_p-5.1D_p\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)\right]$	$\frac{b}{t}=\frac{k_1B_p}{5.1D_p}$	$\frac{k_2\sqrt{B_pE}}{n_y\left(5.1\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates with both edges supported[c]	Eq. 6-17	$\frac{F_{cy}}{n_y}$	$\frac{b}{t}=\frac{B_p-F_{cy}}{1.6D_p}$	$\frac{1}{n_y}\left[B_p-1.6D_p\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)\right]$	$\frac{b}{t}=\frac{k_1B_p}{1.6D_p}$	$\frac{k_2\sqrt{B_pE}}{n_y\left(1.6\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Curved plates supported on both edges[d]	Eq. 6-18	$\frac{1.17F_{cy}}{n_y}$	$\frac{R_b}{t}=\left(\frac{B_t-1.17F_{cy}}{D_t}\right)^2$	$\frac{1}{n_y}\left(B_t-D_t\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}\right)$	$\frac{R_b}{t}=C_t$	$\frac{\pi^2E}{16n_y\left(\frac{R_b}{t}\right)\left(1+\frac{\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
Compression in Components of Beams, component under bending in own plane, gross section	Flat plates with compression edge free, tension edge supported	Eq. 6-19	$\frac{1.3F_{cy}}{n_y}$	$\frac{b}{t}=\frac{B_{br}-1.3F_{cy}}{3.5D_{br}}$	$\frac{1}{n_y}\left[B_{br}-3.5D_{br}\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)\right]$	$\frac{b}{t}=\frac{C_{br}}{3.5}$	$\frac{\pi^2E}{n_y\left(3.5\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
	Flat plate with both edges supported[c]	Eq. 6-20	$\frac{1.3F_{cy}}{n_y}$	$\frac{h}{t}=\frac{B_{br}-1.3F_{cy}}{0.67D_{br}}$	$\frac{1}{n_y}\left[B_{br}-0.67D_{br}\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)\right]$	$\frac{h}{t}=\frac{k_1B_{br}}{0.67D_{br}}$	$\frac{k_2\sqrt{B_{br}E}}{n_y\left(0.67\frac{h}{t}\right)}$
Shear in Webs, gross section	Unstiffened flat webs	Eq. 6-21	$\frac{F_{sy}}{n_y}$	$\frac{h}{t}=\frac{B_s-F_{sy}}{1.25D_s}$	$\frac{1}{n_y}\left[B_s-1.25D_s\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)\right]$	$\frac{h}{t}=\frac{C_s}{1.25}$	$\frac{\pi^2E}{n_y\left(1.25\frac{h}{t}\right)^2}$

Table 6-4—Formulas for Buckling Constants for Products Whose Temper Designation Begins with -O, -H, -T1, -T2, -T3, or -T4

Type of Member and Stress	Intercept (ksi)	Intercept (MPa)	Slope (MPa, ksi)	Intersection
Compression in Columns and Beam Flanges	$B_c = F_{cy}\left[1+\left(\frac{F_{cy}}{1000}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\right]$	$B_c = F_{cy}\left[1+\left(\frac{F_{cy}}{6900}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\right]$	$D_c = \frac{B_c}{20}\left(\frac{6B_c}{E}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$	$C_c = \frac{2B_c}{3D_c}$
Compression in Flat Plates	$B_p = F_{cy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{cy}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}}{7.6}\right]$	$B_p = F_{cy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{cy}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}}{14.5}\right]$	$D_p = \frac{B_p}{20}\left(\frac{6B_p}{E}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$	$C_p = \frac{2B_p}{3D_p}$
Compression in Round Tubes Under Axial End Load	$B_t = F_{cy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{cy}\right)^{\frac{1}{5}}}{5.8}\right]$	$B_t = F_{cy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{cy}\right)^{\frac{1}{5}}}{8.5}\right]$	$D_t = \frac{B_t}{3.7}\left(\frac{B_t}{E}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$	C_t [a]
Compressive Bending Stress in Solid Rectangular Bars	$B_{br} = 1.3F_{cy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{cy}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}}{7}\right]$	$B_{br} = 1.3F_{cy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{cy}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}}{13.3}\right]$	$D_{br} = \frac{B_{br}}{20}\left(\frac{6B_{br}}{E}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$	$C_{br} = \frac{2B_{br}}{3D_{br}}$
Compressive Bending Stress in Round Tubes	$B_{tb} = 1.5F_y\left[1+\frac{\left(F_y\right)^{\frac{1}{5}}}{5.8}\right]$	$B_{tb} = 1.5F_y\left[1+\frac{\left(F_y\right)^{\frac{1}{5}}}{8.5}\right]$	$D_{tb} = \frac{B_{tb}}{2.7}\left(\frac{B_{tb}}{E}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$	$C_{tb} = \left(\frac{B_{tb}-B_t}{D_{tb}-D_t}\right)^2$
Shear Stress in Flat Plates	$B_s = F_{sy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{sy}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}}{6.2}\right]$	$B_s = F_{sy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{sy}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}}{11.8}\right]$	$D_s = \frac{B_s}{20}\left(\frac{6B_s}{E}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$	$C_s = \frac{2B_s}{3D_s}$
Ultimate Strength of Flat Plates in Compression or Bending	$k_1 = 0.50$, $k_2 = 2.04$			

Note:

[a] C_t can be found from a plot of curves of allowable stress based on elastic and inelastic buckling or by trial-and-error solution.

Table 6-5—Formulas for Buckling Constants for Products Whose Temper Designation Begins with -T5, -T6, -T7, -T8, or -T9

Type of Member and Stress	Intercept (ksi)	Intercept (MPa)	Slope (MPa, ksi)	Intersection
Compression in Columns and Beam Flanges	$B_c = F_{cy}\left[1+\left(\frac{F_{cy}}{2250}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\right]$	$B_c = F_{cy}\left[1+\left(\frac{F_{cy}}{15510}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\right]$	$D_c = \frac{B_c}{10}\left(\frac{B_c}{E}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$	$C_c = 0.41\frac{B_c}{D_c}$
Compression in Flat Plates	$B_p = F_{cy}\left[1+\left(\frac{F_{cy}}{11.4}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}\right]$	$B_p = F_{cy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{cy}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}}{21.7}\right]$	$D_p = \frac{B_p}{10}\left(\frac{B_p}{E}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$	$C_p = 0.41\frac{B_p}{D_p}$
Compression in Round Tubes Under Axial End Load	$B_t = F_{cy}\left[1+\left(\frac{F_{cy}}{8.7}\right)^{\frac{1}{5}}\right]$	$B_t = F_{cy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{cy}\right)^{\frac{1}{5}}}{12.8}\right]$	$D_t = \frac{B_t}{4.5}\left(\frac{B_t}{E}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$	C_t [a]
Compressive Bending Stress in Solid Rectangular Bars	$B_{br} = 1.3F_{cy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{cy}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}}{7}\right]$	$B_{br} = 1.3F_{cy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{cy}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}}{13.3}\right]$	$D_{br} = \frac{B_{br}}{20}\left(\frac{6B_{br}}{E}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$	$C_{br} = \frac{2B_{br}}{3D_{br}}$
Compressive Bending Stress in Round Tubes	$B_{tb} = 1.5F_y\left[1+\frac{\left(F_y\right)^{\frac{1}{5}}}{8.7}\right]$	$B_{tb} = 1.5F_y\left[1+\frac{\left(F_y\right)^{\frac{1}{5}}}{12.8}\right]$	$D_{tb} = \frac{B_{tb}}{2.7}\left(\frac{B_{tb}}{E}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$	$C_{tb} = \left(\frac{B_{tb}-B_t}{D_{tb}-D_t}\right)^2$
Shear Stress in Flat Plates	$B_s = F_{sy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{sy}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}}{9.3}\right]$	$B_s = F_{sy}\left[1+\frac{\left(F_{sy}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}}{17.7}\right]$	$D_s = \frac{B_s}{10}\left(\frac{B_s}{E}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$	$C_s = 0.41\frac{B_s}{D_s}$
Ultimate Strength of Flat Plates in Compression	$k_1 = 0.35$, $k_2 = 2.27$			
Ultimate Strength of Flat Plates in Bending	$k_1 = 0.50$, $k_2 = 2.04$			

Note:

[a] C_t can be found from a plot of curves of allowable stress based on elastic and inelastic buckling or by trial-and-error solution.

Table 6-6—Values of Coefficients k_t and k_c[a]

	Nonwelded or Regions Farther than 25 mm (1 in.) from a Weld		Regions Within 25 mm (1 in.) of a Weld	
Alloy and Temper	k_t	k_c	k_t	k_c[b]
6005-T5; 6061-T6, -T651[c]; 6063-T5, -T6, -T83; 6105-T5; 6351-T5	1.0	1.12	1.0	1.0
All Others Listed in Table 6-1	1.0	1.10	1.0	1.0

Notes:

[a] These coefficients are used in the formulas in Table 6-3.

[b] If the weld compressive yield strength exceeds 0.9 times the parent material compressive yield strength, the allowable compressive stress within 25 mm (1 in.) of a weld should be taken equal to the allowable stress for nonwelded material.

[c] Values also apply to -T6510 and -T6511 extrusion tempers.

6.4.1—Local Buckling Stress

Where local buckling stress values are required to be calculated, the critical stresses F_{cr}, given in Table 6-7, shall be used. For cases of $b/t>S_2$ for Eqs. 6-8(e), 6-10(e), 6-16(e), 6-17(e), and 6-20(e), allowable stresses in thin sections should not exceed the value of F_{cr}/n_a, as provided in Table 6-7. For cases not covered in Table 6-7, the value of F_{cr} shall be determined using the expression for F_c in the appropriate selection of Table 6-3 for the case of $b/t>S_2$ with n_u or n_y taken as 1.0.

C6.4.1

For cases of $b/t>S_2$, it should be noted that the local buckling stresses F_{cr} calculated from Eqs. 6-8(e), 6-10(e), 6-16(e), 6-17(e), and 6-20(e) of Table 6-3 are based on post buckling strength, which can be significantly higher than the local buckling strength. Local buckling may need to be checked for certain circumstances. For cases where post buckling strength is used, the allowable compressive stresses given may result in visible local buckling, even though an adequate margin of safety is provided against ultimate failure.

Table 6-7—Local Buckling Stress

Equations of Table 6-3	Local Buckling Stress, F_{cr}
Limiting stress for Eq. 6-8(e) and Eq. 6-16(e)	$F_{cr}=\dfrac{\pi^2 E}{\left(\dfrac{5.1b}{t}\right)^2}$ Eq. 6-22
Limiting stress for Eq. 6-10(e) and Eq. 6-17(e)	$F_{cr}=\dfrac{\pi^2 E}{\left(\dfrac{1.6b}{t}\right)^2}$ Eq. 6-23
Limiting stress for Eq. 6-20(e)	$F_{cr}=\dfrac{\pi^2 E}{\left(\dfrac{0.67h}{t}\right)^2}$ Eq. 6-24

6.4.2—Allowable Bending Stress

The allowable tension stress in the extreme fiber on the net section due to bending shall be based on:

- Eq. 6-2 in Table 6-3 for rectangular tubes and structural shapes bent around their strong axis,
- Eq. 6-3 in Table 6-3 for round or oval tubes, and
- Eq. 6-4 in Table 6-3 for shapes bent about their weak axis, bars, and plates.

The allowable compression stress in the extreme fiber on the gross section due to bending shall be based on:

- Eq. 6-12 in Table 6-3 for single-web beams bent about the strong axis,
- Eq. 6-13 in Table 6-3 for round or oval tubes. For tubes with circumferential welds, R_b/t shall be less than or equal to 20, except when the design meets the details and post-weld heat treatment requirements of Article 6.5,
- Eq. 6-14 in Table 6-3 for solid rectangular beams and Eq. 6-14(a) for round section beams, and
- Eq. 6-15 in Table 6-3 for rectangular tubes and box sections.

The allowable compression stress in components under uniform compression on the gross section due to bending shall be based on:

- Eq. 6-16 in Table 6-3 for flat plates supported on one edge,
- Eq. 6-17 in Table 6-3 for flat plates with both edges supported, and
- Eq. 6-18 in Table 6-3 for curved plates supported on both edges. For tubes with circumferential welds, R_b/t shall be less than or equal to 20, except when the design meets the details and post-weld heat treatment requirements of Article 6.5.

The allowable compression stress in a component in its own plane on the gross section due to bending shall be based on:

- Eq. 6-19 in Table 6-3 for flat plates with compression edge free and with the tension edge supported, and
- Eq. 6-20 in Table 6-3 for flat plate with both edges supported.

C6.4.2

For single-web beams, rectangular tubes, and box sections bent about the strong axis, the effect of the variation of the moment in the span can be accounted for by replacing L_b by:

$$\frac{L_b}{\sqrt{C_b}}$$

in the equations and limits in Eq. 6-12 and by replacing L_b by L_b/C_b in the equations and limits in Eqs. 6-14 and 6-15 in Table 6-3. C_b may conservatively be taken as 1.0, or may be determined by Article 4.9.4, "Lateral Buckling Coefficients" in *Aluminum Design Manual*, "Specifications for Aluminum Structures—Allowable Stress Design." Solid round section beams are not subject to lateral torsional buckling; therefore, only Eq. 6-14(a) would apply to them.

NCHRP Project 17-10(2) will establish strength and failure criteria for bending about the diagonal axis of square and rectangular tubes. The information given in Table 6-3 for square or rectangular tubes bent about their principal axis should provide equal or lesser allowable stresses than actually occurring for bending about the diagonal axis.

6.4.2.1—Effect of Local Buckling on Beam Strength

The allowable compressive bending stress shall be reduced for single-web beams whose flanges consist of thin, flat elements supported on one edge and in which local buckling of the cross-section occurs at a stress that is less than the lateral buckling stress of the beam, calculated assuming that the elements are not buckled. The allowable stress shall not exceed the value given by:

$$F_{rb} = \frac{\left(F_{ec}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}\left(F_{cr}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}}}{n_y}, \text{ for } \frac{F_{cr}}{n_y} < F_c \qquad \text{(6-25)}$$

where F_{ec} is calculated using Eq. 6-12(e) and F_{cr} is calculated based on Article 6.4.1. The allowable stress also shall not exceed the allowable stress for the section as given in Eqs. 6-12 and 6-15 in Table 6-3.

6.4.3—Allowable Tension Stress

The allowable tension stress on the net section for axially loaded member shall be calculated based on Eq. 6-1 in Table 6-3.

6.4.3.1—Slenderness Limit

For truss members in tension, L/r should not exceed 200.

6.4.4—Allowable Compression Stress

The allowable compressive stress based on an axial load on the gross section shall be calculated based on Eq. 6-7 in Table 6-3.

The allowable compressive stress in components based on an axial load on the gross section shall be calculated based on:

- Eq. 6-8 in Table 6-3 for flat plates supported along one edge and the column buckling about a symmetry axis,
- Eq. 6-9 in Table 6-3 for flat plates supported along one edge and the column not buckling about a symmetry axis,
- Eq. 6-10 in Table 6-3 for flat plates with both edges supported, and
- Eq. 6-11 in Table 6-3 for curved plates supported on both edges and for walls of round or oval tubes. For tubes with circumferential welds, R/t shall be less than or equal to 20, except when the design meets the details and post-weld heat treatment requirements of Article 6.5.

C6.4.4

Singly symmetric and unsymmetric columns, such as angles or tee-shaped columns, and doubly symmetric columns, such as cruciform columns, may require consideration of flexural–torsional buckling. Additional information on torsional or torsional–flexural buckling is provided in Articles 3.4.7.2 and 3.4.7.3 of the *Aluminum Design Manual*, “Specifications for Aluminum Structures—Allowable Stress Design.”

The buckling strength of circumferentially welded tubes has been shown to be given accurately by the same equations as those for unwelded tubes for cases in which $R/t \leq 20$ (approximately). For circumferentially welded cylinders with much higher R/t values, studies have shown that the provision of Eq. 6-11 may be very unconservative. This same limitation for circumferentially welded tubes applies to Eq. 6-13 and Eq. 6-18.

6.4.4.1—Effect of Local Buckling on Column Strength

An additional limitation shall be placed on the allowable stress for columns in which local buckling of the cross-section occurs at a stress that is less than the calculated flexural buckling stress of the column, assuming that the elements are not buckled. The allowable stress shall not exceed the value given by:

$$F_{rc} = \frac{\left(F_{ec}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}\left(F_{cr}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}}}{n_y}, \text{ for } \frac{F_{cr}}{n_u} < F_c \tag{6-26}$$

where:

$$F_{ec} = \frac{\pi^2 E}{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2} \tag{6-27}$$

and F_c is calculated based on Eq. 6-7 and F_{cr} is calculated based on Article 6.4.1. The allowable stress also shall not exceed the allowable stress for the section as given in Eq. 6-7 in Table 6-3.

6.4.4.2—Slenderness Limit

For truss members in compression, kL/r should not exceed 120.

6.4.5—Allowable Shear Stress

The allowable shear stress on the gross section for unstiffened flat webs shall be calculated based on Eq. 6-21 in Table 6-3.

6.4.5.1—Torsion and Shear in Tubes

Allowable shear stresses in round or oval tubes due to torsion or transverse shear loads shall be determined from Eq. 6-21 in Table 6-3 with the ratio h/t replaced by the equivalent h/t given by the following:

Equivalent

$$\frac{h}{t} = 2.9\left(\frac{R_o}{t}\right)^{\frac{5}{8}}\left(\frac{L_t}{R_o}\right)^{\frac{1}{4}} \tag{6-28}$$

6.4.6—Bearing

The allowable stress for bearing on bolts shall not exceed Eq. 6-5 in Table 6-3. This value shall be used for a ratio of edge distance to fastener diameter of 2 or greater. For smaller ratios, this allowable stress shall be multiplied by the ratio: (edge distance)/(2 × fastener diameter). Edge distance is the distance from the center of the fastener to the edge of the material in the direction of the applied load and shall not be less than 1.5 times the fastener diameter to extruded, sheared, sawed, rolled, or planed edges.

The allowable stress for bearing on flat surfaces and on bolts in slotted holes shall not exceed Eq. 6-6 in Table 6-3.

6.5—WELDED MEMBERS

Allowable stresses for welded members shall be determined from the same formulas that are used for nonwelded members. The buckling formulas for nonwelded members apply to welded members only to those cases in which welds are at the supports of beams and columns and at the edge of plates. These formulas are given in Table 6-3. In applying these formulas to welded structures, the maximum strengths are limited to those given in Table 6-2. An exception is the case of welded tubes (Eqs. 6-11, 6-13, and 6-18), for which the buckling coefficients are determined from the formulas in Tables 6-4 and 6-5, using the 250-mm (10-in.) gage length compressive strength, F_{cyw}, from Table 6-2.

For luminaires and traffic support assemblies of aluminum alloy 6063 up through 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) thick, which are welded in the -T4 temper with filler alloy 4043 and precipitation heat treated (artificially aged) to the -T6 temper, by an approved method after welding, the allowable stresses within 25 mm (1 in.) of the weld shall be 85 percent of the values for nonwelded alloy 6063-T6.

For luminaires and traffic support assemblies of aluminum alloy 6005, up through 6.5 mm (0.25 in.) thick, which are welded in the -T1 temper with filler alloy 4043 and precipitation heat treated (artificially aged) to the -T5 temper, by an approved method after welding, the allowable stresses within 25 mm (1 in.) of the weld shall be 85 percent of the values for nonwelded alloy 6005-T5.

C6.5

Allowable stresses for commonly used alloys are tabulated in Appendix B. The tabulated values for locations within 25 mm (1 in.) of a weld apply only to members supported at both ends with transverse welds at the ends only (not farther than 0.05L from the supports). See Article 6.5.3 for members with transverse welds not meeting these conditions.

Most structural aluminum alloys attain their strength by heat treatment or strain hardening. Welding causes local annealing, which produces a zone of lower strength along both sides of the weld bead. This Article gives provisions for the decrease in strength in welded members.

6.5.1—Filler Wire

Allowable shear stresses in fillet welds shall be those listed in Table 6-8. For filler wires not shown, the *Aluminum Design Manual*, "Specifications for Aluminum Structures—Allowable Stress Design" shall be referenced.

C6.5.1

Information on recommended aluminum alloy filler metals for structural welding various base-to-base aluminum alloys is provided in the *Aluminum Design Manual*, "Specifications for Aluminum Structures—Allowable Stress Design."

Table 6-8—Allowable Shear Stresses in Fillet Welds, MPa (ksi) (Shear stress is considered to be equal to the load divided by the throat area.)

Filler Alloy[a]	4043	5183	5356, 5554	5556
Parent Alloy				
5083	—	55.2 (8)	48.3 (7)	58.6 (8.5)
5086	—	55.2 (8)	48.3 (7)	58.6 (8.5)
5456	—	55.2 (8)	48.3 (7)	58.6 (8.5)
6005, 6061, 6351	34.5 (5)	55.2 (8)	48.3 (7)	58.6 (8.5)
6063	34.5 (5)[b]	44.8 (6.5)[c]	44.8 (6.5)[c]	44.8 (6.5)[c]

Notes:

[a] Minimum expected shear strengths of filler alloys are:

Alloy		
	4043	79.3 MPa (11.5 ksi)
	5183	128 MPa (18.5 ksi)
	5356	117 MPa (17 ksi)
	5554	117 MPa (17 ksi)
	5556	138 MPa (20 ksi)

[b] 55.2 MPa (8 ksi) for welds joining round or oval members subject to bending and loaded transversely in socket-type base assemblies for alloy 6063 lighting poles through 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) wall thickness, when welded in T4 temper and artificially aged to T6 temper following welding. 40.7 MPa (5.9 ksi) for lighting pole 6063 tubular joints other than socket type.

[c] Values controlled by shear strength of the parent metal.

6.5.2—Members with Longitudinal Welds

If less than 15 percent of the area of a given member cross-section or beam flange lies within 25 mm (1 in.) of a weld, regardless of material thickness, the effect of welding may be neglected and allowable stresses should be calculated as outlined in Article 6.4. If A_w is equal to or greater than 15 percent of A, the allowable stress shall be calculated from:

$$F_{pw} = F_n - \frac{A_w}{A}\left(F_n - F_w\right) \tag{6-29}$$

A beam flange is considered to consist of that portion of the member farther than $2c/3$ from the neutral axis, where c is the distance from the neutral axis to the extreme fiber. In calculating F_w, the strength across a groove weld shall be as given in Table 6-2. For yield strength (F_{tyw}, F_{cyw}), the allowable stress is based on a calculated yield strength equal to 0.75 times the as-welded strength given in Table 6-2. The column-buckling formulas for the reduced strength material are calculated using the buckling coefficients given in Table 6-4, regardless of alloy and temper.

6.5.3—Members with Transverse Welds

The allowable stresses in Article 6.4 apply to members supported at both ends with welds at the ends only (not farther than 0.05L from the supports).

For columns and beams with transverse welds at locations other than the supports, and/or cantilever columns and cantilever beams with transverse welds at or near the supported end, the strength shall be calculated assuming that the entire column or beam has a yield strength, F_{cyw}, as given in Table 6-2. The buckling coefficients given in Tables 6-4 and 6-5 shall be used to develop the buckling formulas.

C6.5.3

If a column is simply supported at both ends, welds at the ends have little effect on the buckling strength, except in the range of slenderness ratios where the allowable stress is controlled by the welded yield strength. However, if a weld is in a location where it can materially affect the bending strength of the column as it buckles (for example, at the center of a column supported on both ends or at the fixed end of a cantilever column), it may have an appreciable effect on the buckling strength. For these cases, the strength is calculated as though the entire column has the welded strength as given by the compressive yield strength.

6.6—CASTING ALLOYS

The allowable stresses for casting alloys shall be as given in Table 6-9.

C6.6

The *Aluminum Design Manual* provides allowable stresses for bridge-type structures only. Table 6-9 provides allowable stresses for building-type structures. The allowable stresses for building-type structures are obtained by multiplying the allowable stresses for bridge-type structures by 1.12, which is the ratio of the bridge to building safety factors.

Table 6-9—Allowable Stresses for Casting Alloys

Product	Location	Permanent Mold Castings				Sand Castings	
Alloy and Temper [a]		A444.0-T4	356.0-T6	356.0-T7	A356.0-T61	356.0-T6	356.0-T7
Type of Stress	Allowable Stress, MPa (ksi)						
Tension or compression, either axial loading or bending [b]	Nonwelded [c]	46.3 (6.72)	61.8 (8.96)	54.1 (7.84)	69.5 (10.1)	46.3 (6.72)	46.3 (6.72)
	Welded [d]	38.6 (5.6)	38.6 (5.6)	38.6 (5.6)	38.6 (5.6)	38.6 (5.6)	38.6 (5.6)
Shear [b]	Nonwelded [d]	30.9 (4.48)	38.6 (5.6)	34.8 (5.04)	46.3 (6.72)	30.9 (4.48)	30.9 (4.48)
	Welded [d]	23.2 (3.36)	23.2 (3.36)	23.2 (3.36)	23.2 (3.36)	23.2 (3.36)	23.2 (3.36)
Bearing on Bolts	Nonwelded [d]	81.1 (11.8)	108 (15.7)	96.5 (14.0)	124 (17.9)	81.1 (11.8)	81.1 (11.8)
	Welded [d]	61.8 (8.96)	61.8 (8.96)	61.8 (8.96)	61.8 (8.96)	61.8 (8.96)	61.8 (8.96)
Bearing on Flat Surfaces	Nonwelded [d]	54.1 (7.84)	73.3 (10.6)	61.8 (8.96)	81.1 (11.8)	54.1 (7.84)	54.1 (7.84)
	Welded [d]	42.5 (6.16)	42.5 (6.16)	42.5 (6.16)	42.5 (6.16)	42.5 (6.16)	42.5 (6.16)

Notes:

[a] For welding castings, use 4043 filler metal for the alloys in Table 6-9. For some applications, 4047 filler metal may be used.

[b] Values given for compression and shear apply to parts that are sufficiently thick so that the slenderness S is less than the slenderness limit S_1 for alloy 6061-T6. Allowable compressive and shear stresses for parts with $S > S_1$ may be determined from the allowable stresses for highway structures of alloy 6061-T6 by means of the following formula:

$$F_{cast} = (F_{6061})\frac{(F_{cast})_{tc}}{117.2} \text{ in MPa}$$

or:

$$F_{cast} = (F_{6061})\frac{(F_{cast})_{tc}}{17} \text{ in ksi}$$

where:

F_{cast} = allowable compressive or shear stress on slender element for casting,

F_{6061} = corresponding allowable stress for alloy 6061-T6, and

$(F_{cast})_{tc}$ = allowable tensile or compressive stress for casting from above table.

[c] Apply to nonwelded members and to welded members at locations farther than 25 mm (1 in.) from a weld.

[d] Apply to locations within 25 mm (1 in.) of a weld.

6.7—COMBINED STRESSES

Members subjected to combined bending, axial compression or tension, shear, and torsion shall be proportioned to meet the limitations of Article 6.7.1 or 6.7.2, as applicable. Calculations of F_a, F_{a0}, F_b, F_e, F_s, and F_t, in Eqs. 6-30 through 6-34 may be increased by $^1/_3$ for Group II and Group III load combinations, as allowed in Section 3, "Loads."

6.7.1—Vertical Cantilever Pole-Type Supports

Vertical cantilever pole-type supports, subjected to axial compression, bending moment, shear, and torsion, shall be proportioned to satisfy the following requirement:

$$\frac{f_a}{F_{a0}} + \frac{f_b}{C_A F_b} + \left(\frac{f_s}{F_s}\right)^2 \leq 1.0 \qquad (6\text{-}30)$$

C_A shall be calculated in accordance with Article 4.8.1 to estimate the second-order effects. If the more detailed procedure of Article 4.8.2 is used to calculate second-order effects, f_b is the bending stress based on the second-order moment and C_A is taken as 1.0.

C6.7.1

Eq. 6-30 applies specifically to single vertical cantilever pole-type supports where the term $1/C_A$ is an amplification coefficient to estimate additional moments due to the P-delta effect. Determination of C_A is discussed in Article 4.8.1.

F_{a0} is the allowable compressive stress of an axially loaded member considered as a short column with consideration for yielding and local buckling of the section. This term establishes a more accurate relationship between the axial stress present in a pole with this type of loading and the stress that will cause failure by yielding or local buckling. A short column is considered to have a slenderness value less than S_1. The term F_{a0} is used when the axial stress is small and the term f_b/F_b is usually of negligible magnitude. Flexural buckling will typically not govern in cantilever pole-type supports because of the very low axial loads; hence the use of F_{a0} instead of F_a in Eq. 6-30.

6.7.2—Other Members

6.7.2.1—Axial Compression, Bending, and Shear

All members that are subjected to axial compression, bending moment, shear, and torsion, except vertical cantilever pole-type supports, shall meet the following criteria:

$$\frac{f_a}{F_{a0}} + \frac{f_b}{C_A F_b} + \left(\frac{f_s}{F_s}\right)^2 \leq 1.0 \qquad (6\text{-}31)$$

$$\frac{f_a}{F_a} + \frac{f_b}{F_b\left(1 - \frac{f_a}{F_e}\right)} + \left(\frac{f_s}{F_s}\right)^2 \leq 1.0 \qquad (6\text{-}32)$$

where:

$$F_e \frac{\pi^2 E}{n_u \left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$$

which is calculated in the plane of bending.

The following equation is permitted in lieu of Eq. 6-31 and Eq. 6-32 when:

$$\frac{f_a}{F_a} \leq 0.15$$

C6.7.2.1

This Article generally applies to sign support members and miscellaneous structural members subjected to axial compression combined with bending, shear, and torsion. The term:

$$\frac{1}{\left(1 - \frac{f_a}{F_e}\right)}$$

in Eq. 6-32 is a factor that accounts for secondary bending caused by the axial load when member deflects laterally. This factor may be ignored when $f_a/F_a \leq 0.15$.

For biaxial bending, except for round and polygonal tubular sections, the second term of Eq. 6-32 can be substituted by:

$$\frac{f_{bx}}{\left(1 - \frac{f_a}{F_{ex}}\right) F_{bx}} + \frac{f_{by}}{\left(1 - \frac{f_a}{F_{ey}}\right) F_{by}}$$

and the second term f_b/F_a of Eqs. 6-30, 6-31, 6-33, and 6-34 can be substituted by:

$$\frac{f_{bx}}{F_{bx}} + \frac{f_{by}}{F_{by}}$$

$$\frac{f_a}{F_a}+\frac{f_b}{F_b}+\left(\frac{f_s}{F_s}\right)^2 \leq 1.0 \qquad (6\text{-}33)$$

6.7.2.2—Axial Tension, Bending, and Shear

All members that are subjected to axial tension, bending moment, shear, and torsion shall meet the following criteria:

$$\frac{f_a}{F_t}+\frac{f_b}{F_b}+\left(\frac{f_s}{F_s}\right)^2 \leq 1.0 \qquad (6\text{-}34)$$

C6.7.2.2

Eq. 6-34 will typically apply to truss members in tension and cantilevered horizontal supports. The bending amplification factors of $1/C_A$ in Eq. 6-30 and $1-f_a/F_e$ in Eq. 6-32 do not apply for members having no axial load and members in axial tension combined with bending, shear, and torsion.

6.8—DETAILS OF DESIGN

6.8.1—Minimum Thickness of Material

The minimum thickness of the material shall be 3.17 mm (0.125 in.). Aluminum supports for small roadside signs may be less than 3.17 mm (0.125 in.) in thickness. Abrasion blasting shall not be used on aluminum less than or equal to 3.17 mm (0.125 in.) thick.

C6.8.1

The minimum recommended thickness for welded aluminum is 3.17 mm (0.125 in.).

6.8.2—Dimensional Tolerances

The diameter of round tapered aluminum tubing members or the dimension across the flat of square, rectangular, octagonal, dodecagonal, and hexdecagonal straight or tapered aluminum tubing members shall not vary more than two percent from the specified dimension.

C6.8.2

This Article provides dimensional tolerances for straight or tapered aluminum tube members fabricated from plates.

6.9—WELDED CONNECTIONS

Welding shall conform to the latest edition of ANSI/AWS D1.2, *Structural Welding Code—Aluminum*. Workmanship requirement of class I structures shall be specified for tubular support structures. Class II workmanship requirements may be specified where more rigid controls are desired.

C6.9

The *Structural Welding Code—Aluminum* provides specifications for welding aluminum. It contains additional requirements for tubular structures, which include sign, luminaire, and traffic signal supports that are to be classified as class I workmanship. Because of configuration and loading, certain types of structures may require the more stringent class II workmanship.

Recommendations for proper detailing of fatigue-critical welded connections are included in Section 11, "Fatigue Design," in Table 11-2 and Figure 11-1.

6.10—BOLTED CONNECTIONS AND ANCHOR BOLTS

Design of bolted connections shall conform to the *Aluminum Design Manual*, "Specifications for Aluminum Structures—Allowable Stress Design."

Design and installation of steel anchor bolts for aluminum structures shall be in accordance with Article 5.17.

6.11—PROTECTION

Structures of the aluminum alloys covered by these Specifications are not ordinarily painted. Surfaces shall be painted where:

- The aluminum alloy parts are in contact with, or are fastened to, steel members or other dissimilar materials,
- The structures are to be exposed to extremely corrosive conditions, or
- The Owner has requested it be done for reason of appearance.

Preparation, cleaning, and painting are covered in the following Articles. Treatment and painting of the structure in accordance with United States Military Specification MIL-T-704 is also acceptable.

C6.11

The reason that most aluminum structures are not painted is that all aluminum surfaces develop a thin, tough oxide film that protects the surface against further oxidation. If the surface is scraped so that the oxide film is removed, a new film is formed immediately unless oxygen is kept from the surface. The alloying ingredients that give aluminum particular properties, such as extra-high strength, affect resistance to corrosion. Painting is not needed for the medium-strength alloys in general structural use in atmospheric exposure.

6.11.1—Galvanic Corrosion (Contact with Dissimilar Materials)

Where the aluminum alloy parts are in contact with, or are fastened to, steel members or other dissimilar materials, the aluminum shall be kept from direct contact with the steel or other dissimilar material by painting as follows.

Steel surfaces to be placed in contact with aluminum shall be painted with good-quality, nonlead-containing priming paint, such as zinc molybdate alkyd-type primer in accordance with Federal Specification TT-P-645B, followed by two coats of paint consisting of 0.24 kg (2 lb) of aluminum paste pigment (ASTM D 962-88, Type 2, Class B) per liter (gallon) of varnish meeting Federal Specification TT-V-81, Type II, or equivalent. Where severe corrosion conditions are expected, additional protection can be obtained by applying a suitable sealant to the faying surfaces, capable of excluding moisture from the joint during prolonged service, in addition to the zinc molybdate alkyd-type primer. Aluminized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized steel placed in contact with aluminum need not be painted. Stainless steel (300 series) placed in contact with aluminum need not be painted, except in high-chloride–containing environments.

Aluminum shall not be placed in direct contact with porous materials that may absorb water and cause corrosion. When such contacts cannot be avoided, an insulating barrier between the aluminum and the porous material shall be installed. Before installation, the aluminum surfaces shall be given a heavy coat of alkali-resistant bituminous paint or other coating having equivalent protection to provide this insulating barrier. Aluminum in contact with concrete or masonry shall be similarly protected in cases where moisture is present and corrodents will be entrapped between the surfaces.

C6.11.1

Galvanic corrosion can occur when another metal, such as steel, is coupled to aluminum in the presence of an electrolyte. An aluminum part bolted to a steel structure with moisture allowed in the faying surface or an aluminum part in concrete and coupled to the steel reinforcement are examples. The aluminum parts may act as an anode and be sacrificed in time. The attack can be prevented by isolating the two materials from each other.

Materials such as elastomeric spacers have also been used to keep aluminum alloy parts from direct contact with steel or other dissimilar materials.

Aluminum surfaces to be embedded in concrete ordinarily need not be painted, unless corrosive components are added to the concrete or unless the assembly is subjected for extended periods to extremely corrosive conditions. In such cases, aluminum surfaces shall be given one coat of suitable quality paint, such as zinc molybdate primer conforming to Federal Specification No. TT-P-645B or equivalent, or a heavy coating of alkali-resistant bituminous paint, or shall be wrapped with a suitable plastic tape applied in such a manner as to provide adequate protection at the overlaps. Aluminum shall not be embedded in concrete to which corrosive components such as chlorides have been added, if the aluminum will be electrically connected to steel.

Water that comes in contact with aluminum, after first running over a heavy metal, such as copper, may contain trace quantities of the dissimilar metal or its corrosion product, which will cause corrosion of the aluminum. Protection shall be obtained by painting or plastic coating the dissimilar metal or by designing the structure so that the drainage from the dissimilar metal is diverted away from the aluminum.

Prepainted aluminum generally does not need additional painting, even in contact with other materials such as wood, concrete, or steel. Under extremely corrosive conditions, additional protection shall be provided as described in the preceding paragraphs.

6.11.2—Overall Painting

Structures of the alloys covered by these Specifications either are not ordinarily painted for surface protection or are made of prepainted aluminum components. There may be applications where the structures are to be exposed to extremely corrosive conditions. In these cases, overall painting shall be specified.

6.11.3—Cleaning and Treatment of Metal Surfaces

Prior to field painting of structures, all surfaces to be painted shall be cleaned immediately before painting by a method that will remove all dirt, oil, grease, chips, and other foreign substances.

Exposed metal surfaces shall be cleaned with a suitable chemical cleaner, such as a solution of phosphoric acid and organic solvents meeting United States Military Specification MIL-M-10578. Abrasion-blasting shall not be used on aluminum less than or equal to 3.17 mm (0.125 in.) thick.

6.11.4—Anodizing

An anodized finish may be provided, if specified by the Owner.

C6.11.4

Anodizing is an electro-chemical process that results in a colored aluminum oxide layer on the pole surface. The Owner should be aware that anodized finishes may result in color variations between extrusions, coatings, and weldments.

6.12—REFERENCES

Aluminum Association. 1994. *Aluminum Design Manual*. Aluminum Association, Washington, DC.

Aluminum Association. 1997. *Aluminum Standards and Data*. Aluminum Association, Washington, DC.

Aluminum Association. 2002. *Welding Aluminum: Theory and Practice*. Aluminum Association, Washington, DC.

AWS. 2008. *Structural Welding Code—Aluminum*. ANSI/AWS D1.2/D1.2M:2008. American Welding Society, Miami, FL.

Davis, J. R. 1993. *Aluminum and Aluminum Alloys.* ASM International, Materials Park, OH.

Kissell, J. R., and R. L. Ferry. 1995. *Aluminum Structures: A Guide to Their Specifications and Design.* John Wiley and Sons, New York, NY.

Mazzolani, F. M. 1985. *Aluminum Alloy Structures.* Pitman Publishing, Southport, UK.

Sharp, M. L. 1993. *Behavior and Design of Aluminum Structures.* McGraw–Hill, New York, NY.

SECTION 7: PRESTRESSED CONCRETE DESIGN

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 7:

PRESTRESSED CONCRETE DESIGN

7.1—SCOPE

This Section specifies design provisions for prestressed concrete members. Additional required design provisions, such as those noted in the commentary of this Section, shall be obtained from the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*.

7.2—DEFINITIONS

Cracking Moment—A bending moment that produces a tensile stress greater than the sum of induced compression plus the tensile strength of the concrete resulting in tensile cracks on the tension face of the pole.

Development Length—Length of embedded tendon required to develop the design strength of prestressing tendons at a critical section.

Effective Prestress—Stress remaining in prestressing tendons after all losses have occurred, excluding effects of dead load and superimposed load.

Post-Tensioning—Method of prestressing in which tendons are tensioned after concrete has hardened.

Precast Concrete—Structural concrete element cast elsewhere than its final position in the structure.

Prestressed Concrete—Structural concrete in which internal stresses have been introduced to reduce potential tensile stresses in concrete resulting from loads.

Pretensioning—Method of prestressing in which tendons are tensioned before concrete is placed.

Reinforcement—Steel material, including reinforcing bar and excluding prestressing tendons.

Spiral Reinforcement—Continuously wound reinforcement in the form of a cylindrical helix.

Strength, Design—Nominal strength multiplied by a strength reduction factor.

Strength, Nominal—Strength of a member or cross-section before application of any strength reduction factors.

Strength, Required—Strength of a member or cross-section required to resist factored loads.

Tendon—Steel element, such as wire, bar, or strand, or a bundle of such elements, used to impart a prestress to concrete.

Transfer—Act of transferring stress in prestressing tendons from jacks or pretensioning bed to concrete member.

7.3—NOTATION

A_v = area of the shear reinforcement (mm^2, in.^{2})
b = width of compression face of the member (mm, in.)
b_w = width of the web (mm, in.)
d = the distance from the extreme compression fiber to the centroid of longitudinal tension reinforcement (mm, in.)
d_b = nominal diameter of pretensioning strand (mm, in.)
f'_c = specified 28-day design compressive strength of concrete (MPa, psi)
f'_{ci} = compressive strength of concrete at time of initial prestress (MPa, psi)

$\sqrt{f'_c}$ = square root of specified compressive strength of concrete (MPa, psi)

$\sqrt{f'_{ci}}$ = square root of compressive strength of concrete at time of initial prestress (MPa, psi)

f_{pc} = effective compressive stress in concrete due to prestress (MPa, psi)

f_{ps} = stress in prestressed reinforcement at nominal strength (MPa, psi)

f_{pu} = specified tensile strength of prestressing tendon (MPa, psi)

f_{py} = specified yield strength of prestressing tendon (MPa, psi)

f_{se} = effective stress in prestressed reinforcement (after allowance for all prestress losses) (MPa, psi)

F_t = tensile strength of concrete (MPa, psi)

f_y = specified yield strength of nonprestressed reinforcement (MPa, psi)

I = moment of inertia of the cross-section (mm^4, in.^{4})

J = polar moment of inertia (mm^4, in.^{4})

L_d = development length of prestressing strand (mm, in.)

M = moment due to load (N-mm, lb-in.)

M' = moment due to handling loads (N-mm, lb-in.)

M_n = nominal moment strength of a section (N-mm, lb-in.)

M_u = factored moment at section (N-mm, lb-in.)

Q = moment of area above the centroid (mm^3, in.^{3})

r_o = outside radius of section (mm, in.)

s = spacing between shear reinforcement (mm, in.)

t = wall thickness (mm, in.)

T = torsional load (N-mm, lb-in.)

T_n = nominal torsional strength at a section (N-mm, lb-in.)

T_u = factored torsional moment (N-mm, lb-in.)

V = shear load (N, lb)

V_c = nominal shear strength provided by the concrete (N, lb)

V_n = nominal shear strength (N, lb)

V_s = nominal shear strength provided by reinforcement (N, lb)

V_u = factored shear force (N, lb)

x = shorter overall dimension of rectangular part of cross-section (mm, in.)

y = longer overall dimension of rectangular part of cross-section (mm, in.)

η = factor, as defined in Article 7.8.3

φ = strength reduction factor

7.4—MATERIALS

All materials and testing shall conform to the current editions of the appropriate standards included in the *Standard Specifications for Transportation Materials and Methods of Sampling and Testing* and/or from the American Society for Testing and Materials.

7.5—DESIGN

7.5.1—Method of Design

Design of prestressed concrete members shall be based on the allowable stresses and ultimate strength requirements of this Section.

C7.5.1

Working stresses resulting from prestress forces and Group I load combination (dead load) are investigated using an allowable stress design approach. Extreme loadings of Group II and Group III load combinations, which include wind and ice, are based on ultimate strength design.

7.5.2—Concrete Strength

The minimum 28-day compressive strength f'_c shall be 35 MPa (5000 psi).

7.6—ALLOWABLE STRESSES

7.6.1—Concrete

Allowable stresses in concrete shall be in accordance with Table 7-1.

Table 7-1—Allowable Stresses in Concrete

Load Condition	Allowable Compressive Stress (MPa, psi)	Allowable Tensile Stress (MPa, psi)
Pretensioned members at prestress transfer (before time-dependent prestress losses)	$0.60f'_{ci}$	$0.25\sqrt{f'_{ci}}$ (MPa) $3\sqrt{f'_{ci}}$ (psi)
Post-tensioned members at prestress transfer (before time-dependent prestress losses)	$0.55f'_{ci}$	$0.25\sqrt{f'_{ci}}$ (MPa) $3\sqrt{f'_{ci}}$ (psi)
Dead load—Group I load combination (after allowance for all prestress losses)	$0.45f'_c$	0

7.6.2—Prestressing Tendons

Tensile stress in prestressing tendons shall not exceed the following:

- Due to tendon jacking force: $0.94f_{py}$, but not greater than the lesser of $0.80f_{pu}$ and the maximum value recommended by the manufacturer of prestressing tendons or anchorages;
- Immediately after prestress transfer: $0.82f_{py}$, but not greater than $0.74f_{pu}$; and
- Post-tensioning tendons, at anchorages and couplers, immediately after tendon anchorage: $0.70f_{pu}$.

C7.6.2

The allowable stresses for prestressing tendons are in accordance with the *Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete* for use with low-relaxation wire and strands, ordinary tendons (i.e., wire, strands, and bars), and bar tendons. Specifications for prestressing strand and wire are given in ASTM A 416 and A 421, respectively. Low-relaxation wire and strand tendons meeting the requirements of ASTM A 416 and A 421 are commonly used for prestressed concrete poles. Low-relaxation tendons are recognized for their higher yield strength and reduced prestress losses.

7.7—LOSS OF PRESTRESS

Loss of prestress shall be considered in the design of pretensioned and post-tensioned members.

C7.7

A detailed analysis of losses is not necessary except for unusual situations where deflections could become critical. Lump sum estimate of losses may be used if supported by research data. Depending on the materials used, total prestress loss is usually between 15 percent and 25 percent. Reasonably accurate methods for calculation of prestress loss, such as that prescribed in the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*, Article 5.9.5, "Loss of Prestress," can be used for a better estimate of losses in lieu of using lump sum estimates.

To determine the effective prestress f_{se} losses due to anchorage seating, elastic shortening, creep of concrete, shrinkage of concrete, and relaxation of steel should be considered. Losses due to anchorage seating and elastic shortening are instantaneous, whereas losses due to creep, shrinkage, and relaxation are time-dependent. It should be recognized that the time-dependent losses resulting from creep and relaxation are also interdependent. This renders the *exact* calculation of prestress losses very difficult. However, undue refinement is seldom warranted or even possible at the design stage, because many of the component factors are either unknown or beyond the control of the Designer.

Actual losses, greater or smaller than the computed values, have little effect on the design strength of the member, but they could affect service load behavior (i.e., deflections, camber, cracking load).

7.8—STRENGTH REQUIREMENTS

7.8.1—Design Flexural Strength

The flexural design of the section shall be based on:

$$M_u \leq \varphi M_n \quad (7\text{-}1)$$

where:

$$\varphi = 0.9 \quad (7\text{-}2)$$

and:

$$M_u = 1.3M \quad (7\text{-}3)$$

and M is the moment due to Group II or Group III load combination.

For handling loads,

$$\varphi M_n \leq 1.5M' \quad (7\text{-}4)$$

where M' is the maximum moment expected during handling and erection of the member under its own weight and any attachments.

C7.8.1

Equations for the nominal flexural resistance, M_n, are given in the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications* for rectangular prestressed or partially prestressed members. For other cross-sections, M_n may be determined by strain compatibility analysis based on the assumptions specified in Article 5.7.2 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*. Where the applicability of analysis methods is uncertain, ultimate strength may be determined by approved tests on full-scale sections.

7.8.2—Design Shear Strength

The following shear strength requirement shall be satisfied:

$$V_u \leq \varphi V_n \tag{7-5}$$

where:

$$\varphi = 0.85 \tag{7-6}$$

$$V_u = 1.3V \tag{7-7}$$

$$V_n = V_c + V_s \tag{7-8}$$

and V is applied shear due to Group II or Group III load combination.

For square and rectangular prestressed concrete members with effective prestress force not less than 40 percent of the tensile strength of the flexural reinforcement, V_c may be computed as:

$$V_c = \left(0.05\sqrt{f_c'} + 4.8\left(\frac{V_u d}{M_u}\right)\right) b_w d \quad \text{(N)} \tag{7-9}$$

$$V_c = \left(0.6\sqrt{f_c'} + 700\left(\frac{V_u d}{M_u}\right)\right) b_w d \quad \text{(lb)}$$

However, V_c need not be less than:

$$0.17\sqrt{f_c'} b_w d \quad \text{(N)}$$

$$2\sqrt{f_c'} b_w d \quad \text{(lb)}$$

nor shall it be greater than:

$$0.42\sqrt{f_c'} b_w d \quad \text{(N)}$$

$$5\sqrt{f_c'} b_w d \quad \text{(lb)}$$

The quantity $V_u d/M_u$ shall not be greater than *1.0* where M_u is the factored moment occurring simultaneously with V_u at the section considered. The quantity d in the term $V_u d/M_u$ shall be the distance from the extreme compression fiber to the centroid of prestressed reinforcement.

C7.8.2

For hollow circular prestressed members, V_c may be computed as:

$$V_c = \frac{\sqrt{F_t^2 + F_t f_{pc}}}{\frac{Q}{2It}} \tag{7-10}$$

where:

$$F_t = 0.33\sqrt{f_c'} \quad \text{(MPa)} \tag{7-11}$$

$$F_t = 4\sqrt{f_c'} \quad \text{(psi)}$$

The shear force V_s contributed by the steel may be computed as:

$$V_s = \frac{A_v f_y d}{s} \tag{7-12}$$

Design yield strength of shear reinforcement shall not exceed 415 MPa (60 000 psi).

7.8.3—Design Torsional Strength

The following torsional strength requirement shall be satisfied:

$$T_u \leq \varphi T_n \tag{7-13}$$

where:

$$\varphi = 0.85 \tag{7-14}$$

and:

$$T_u = 1.3T \tag{7-15}$$

and T is the applied torsional moment due to Group II or Group III load combination.

The value of T_n for a square or rectangular cross-section may be calculated using the following equation:

$$T_n = 0.5\sqrt{f_c'}\sqrt{1 + \frac{10 f_{pc}}{f_c'}}\sum \eta x^2 y \quad \text{(N-mm)} \tag{7-16}$$

$$T_n = 6\sqrt{f_c'}\sqrt{1 + \frac{10 f_{pc}}{f_c'}}\sum \eta x^2 y \quad \text{(lb-in.)}$$

where:

$$\eta = \frac{0.35}{0.75 + \frac{b}{d}} \tag{7-17}$$

The nominal shear strength of concrete is calculated based on elastic analysis and the assumption that cracking will occur when the principal stress reaches:

$$0.33\sqrt{f_c'} \quad \text{(MPa)}$$

$$4\sqrt{f_c'} \quad \text{(psi)}$$

For circular cross-sections:

$$T_n = \frac{J}{r_o}\sqrt{F_t^2 + F_t f_{pc}} \qquad (7\text{-}18)$$

where:

$$F_t = 0.33\sqrt{f_c'} \quad \text{(MPa)} \qquad (7\text{-}19)$$

$$F_t = 4\sqrt{f_c'} \quad \text{(psi)}$$

7.8.4—Combined Shear and Torsion

For members subjected to flexural shear and torsion, the following interaction equation may be used to represent the strength of the member:

$$\left(\frac{V_u}{\varphi V_n}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{T_u}{\varphi T_n}\right)^2 \leq 1.0 \qquad (7\text{-}20)$$

7.9—DEVELOPMENT OF PRESTRESSING STRAND

7.9.1—Development Length

Three- and seven-wire pretensioning strand shall be bonded beyond the critical section for a development length, L_d, of not less than:

$$L_d = \left(f_{ps} - \frac{2}{3}f_{se}\right)\frac{d_b}{6.9} \quad \text{(mm)} \qquad (7\text{-}21)$$

$$L_d = \left(f_{ps} - \frac{2}{3}f_{se}\right)\frac{d_b}{1000} \quad \text{(in.)}$$

C7.9.1

The expression for the development length, L_d, may be rewritten as:

$$L_d = \frac{f_{se}}{20.7}d_b + \left(f_{ps} - f_{se}\right)\frac{d_b}{6.9} \quad \text{(mm)} \qquad (C7\text{-}1)$$

$$L_d = \frac{f_{se}}{3000}d_b + \left(f_{ps} - f_{se}\right)\frac{d_b}{1000} \quad \text{(in.)}$$

The first term represents the transfer length of the strand (i.e., the distance over which the strand must be bonded to the concrete to develop the prestress f_{se} in the strand). The second term represents the additional length over which the strand must be bonded so that a stress f_{ps} may develop in the strand at nominal strength of the member (ACI 318-95).

7.9.2—Transfer Length

The transfer length of the prestressing tendons shall be considered at ends of members. The prestress force shall be assumed to vary linearly from zero at end of tendon to a maximum at a distance from end of tendon equal to the transfer length, assumed to be 50 diameters for strand and 100 diameters for single wire.

7.10—DURABILITY

7.10.1—General

Concrete structures shall be designed to provide protection of the prestressing tendons and reinforcing steel against corrosion throughout the life of the structure. Aggregates from sources known to have experienced alkali–silica reactions shall be prohibited. Portland cement with low alkali content, less than 0.6 percent, should be specified to ensure long-term durability. Additional requirements may be specified for structures in highly corrosive environments. Such requirements may include the use of special concrete additives, coatings, epoxy-coated strand, or increase in concrete cover.

7.10.2—Concrete Cover

The minimum clear concrete cover for prestressed and nonprestressed reinforcement shall be as follows:

- 19 mm ($^3/_4$ in.) for centrifugally cast poles, and
- 25 mm (1 in.) for static cast poles.

Cover may be reduced to 13 mm ($^1/_2$ in.) for street lighting poles. For prestressed concrete structures exposed to severe corrosive environments, the minimum cover shall be increased by 50 percent.

C7.10.2

Severe corrosive environments include exposure to deicing salt, water or airborne sea salt, and airborne chemicals in heavy industrial areas.

The centrifugal casting process results in a highly consolidated concrete that is denser than normal concrete, and hence the reduction in cover requirements for centrifugally cast (spun) poles.

7.11—MANUFACTURING TOLERANCES

The following manufacturing tolerances shall apply:

- Length shall vary by no more than 50 mm (2 in.), or 25 mm plus 20 mm per 10 m (1 in. plus $^1/_4$ in. per 10 ft) in length, whichever is greater.
- Outside diameter shall vary by no more than 6 mm ($^1/_4$ in.) for spun poles. For static cast poles, tolerance shall not vary in cross-section dimensions for less than 600 mm (24 in.), ±10 mm (±$^3/_8$ in.); 600 mm (24 in.) to 900 mm (36 in.), ±13 mm (±$^1/_2$ in.); over 900 mm (36 in.), ±16 mm (±$^5/_8$ in.).
- Wall thickness shall be not less than minus 12 percent of the design thickness or 6 mm ($^1/_4$ in.), whichever is greater.
- Deviation from longitudinal axis shall vary no more than 20 mm per 10 m ($^1/_4$ in. per 10 ft) of length, applicable for the entire length or any segment thereof.
- Mass shall vary no more than 10 percent of the design mass.
- End squareness shall vary no more than 0.042 mm/mm ($^1/_2$ in. per 1 ft) of diameter. For poles with base plates, more stringent requirements shall be specified.

- Longitudinal reinforcement shall vary no more than 6 mm ($^1/_4$ in.) for individual elements, and no more than 3 mm ($^1/_8$ in.) for the centroid of a group.
- Circumferential wire spacing shall be a maximum of 100 mm (4 in.), except at the ends (measured from either the top or bottom to a distance of 300 mm [1 ft]), where the maximum spacing shall be 25 mm (1 in.). Circumferential wire shall be within 40 mm (1 $^1/_2$ in.) of its specified location, except at the ends (measured from either top or bottom to a distance of 300 mm [1 ft]) where the spacing location shall be within ±6 mm (±$^1/_4$ in.). The number of spirals of cold-drawn circumferential wire along any 1.5 m (5 ft) of length shall not be less than required by design.

7.12—INSPECTION

The quality of materials, the process of manufacture, and the finished poles shall be subjected to inspection and approval by the Owner, the Designer, or both. Inspection records shall include quality and proportions of concrete materials and strength of concrete; placement of reinforcement, mixing, placing, and curing of concrete; and tensioning prestressing tendons.

7.13—REFERENCES

AASHTO. 2002. *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*, 17th Edition, HB-17. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

AASHTO. 2007. *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*, Fourth Edition, LRFDUS-4-M and LRFDSI-4. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

AASHTO. 2008. *Standard Specifications for Transportation Materials and Methods of Sampling and Testing*, 28th Edition, HM-28. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

ACI. 1995. *Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete*, ACI 318-95. American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI.

ASTM. 1998. "Standard Specification for General Requirements for Prestressed Concrete Poles Statically Cast," ASTM C 935-95. In *Annual Book of ASTM Standards.* American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASTM. 1998. "Standard Specification for Spun Cast Prestressed Concrete Poles," ASTM C 1089-98. In *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASCE/PCI Joint Committee on Concrete Poles. 1997. "Guide for the Design of Prestressed Concrete Poles—Final Draft," *PCI Journal.* American Society of Civil Engineers and Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute, Chicago, IL, November/ December 1997.

PCI. 1992. *PCI Design Handbook—Precast and Prestressed Concrete*, Fourth Edition. Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute, Chicago, IL.

SECTION 8: FIBER-REINFORCED COMPOSITES DESIGN

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 8:

FIBER-REINFORCED COMPOSITES DESIGN

8.1—SCOPE

This Section specifies design and testing provisions for fiber-reinforced composite (FRC) structural supports for luminaires and signs. The provisions of this Section apply only to fiberglass-reinforced polyester (FRP) composites. Other structural composites may be used if approved by the Owner.

C8.1

Applications of FRCs are expanding as the experience in using these materials increases. Although reinforced plastic composites have been successfully employed in major structural applications, the use of the material is relatively new and there is lack of information on its behavior and design. This Section provides guidelines for the design of structural supports manufactured from FRP. This Section may be expanded in the future to include other composite materials.

8.2—DEFINITIONS

Fiber-Reinforced Composite (FRC)—A composite material in which the plastic resin matrix is reinforced with high-strength fibers, most commonly glass.

Fiberglass-Reinforced Polyester (FRP)—A composite material in which the polyester resin matrix is reinforced with glass fibers.

Surface Veil—A surfacing mat used in the outer surrounding layer of an FRP pole to produce a smooth surface and to protect the underlying material from weathering degradation.

Weathering Resistance—A property of the FRP material that resists degradation caused by environmental factors such as outdoor sunlight and wind-borne particulates. Degradation is evidenced by exposed fibers, cracks, crazes, or checks in the pole surface.

8.3—NOTATION

b	=	effective width of the side of a polygonal section (mm, in.)
b_f	=	width of the flange of an I or W shape (mm, in.)
C_1	=	lateral buckling constant
D	=	outer diameter (mm, in.)
d	=	depth of bending member (mm, in.)
E_b	=	modulus of elasticity (MPa, psi) in bending
E_c	=	modulus of elasticity (MPa, psi) in compression
E_t	=	modulus of elasticity (MPa, psi) in tension
E_1	=	modulus of elasticity in bending in the longitudinal direction of the member (MPa, psi)
E_2	=	modulus of elasticity in bending in the transverse direction of the member (MPa, psi)
F_a	=	allowable compression stress (MPa, psi)
F_{au}	=	ultimate compression stress (MPa, psi)
F_b	=	allowable bending stress (MPa, psi)
F_{bu}	=	ultimate bending stress (MPa, psi)
F_{bx}	=	allowable bending stress about the major axis (MPa, psi)
F_{by}	=	allowable bending stress about the minor axis (MPa, psi)
F'_e	=	Euler stress divided by the safety factor in compression n (Table 8-2) (MPa, psi)
F'_{ex}	=	Euler stress divided by the safety factor in compression n (Table 8-2), in the x-direction (MPa, psi)
F'_{ey}	=	Euler stress divided by the safety factor in compression n (Table 8-2), in the y-direction (MPa, psi)

F_t = allowable tension stress (MPa, psi)
F_{tu} = ultimate tension stress (MPa, psi)
F_v = allowable shear stress (MPa, psi)
F_{vu} = ultimate shear stress (MPa, psi)
f_a = computed compressive stress (MPa, psi)
f_b = computed bending stress (MPa, psi)
f_{bx} = computed bending stress about the major axis (MPa, psi)
f_{by} = computed bending stress about the minor axis (MPa, psi)
f_t = computed tension stress (MPa, psi)
f_v = computed shear stress (MPa, psi)
G = in-plane shear modulus (MPa, psi)
h = pole height above ground (m, ft)
I_2 = moment of inertia about the centroidal weak axis (mm^4, in.^{4})
J = torsional constant (mm^4, in.^{4})
K_1 = orthotropy factor
k = effective buckling length factor
k_b = effective buckling length factor in the plane of bending
L = unbraced length of member (mm, in.)
M_{max} = maximum bending moment induced by the wind on the arm and luminaire computed according to Section 3, "Loads," for Group II and Group III load combinations (N-m, lb-ft)
M_{xc} = lateral torsional strength (N-mm, lb-in.)
n = safety factor (Table 8-2)
P_e = load to produce a moment at ground line equal to the design moment resultant (N, lb)
P_{e2} = Euler load to produce buckling in the weak direction of the member (N, lb)
R_1 = distance from center to external face for round tubular sections or radius of circle inscribed through apexes for polygonal sections (mm, in.)
r = radius of gyration (mm, in.)
r_b = radius of gyration in the plane of bending (mm, in.)
S_1 = section modulus about the strong axis (mm^3, in.^{3})
t = wall thickness (mm, in.)
t_f = flange thickness of W- and I-shape beams (mm, in.)
μ = constant relating Poisson's ratio of an orthotropic material
υ_{12} = Poisson's ratio in the longitudinal direction of the member

8.4—MATERIAL—FIBERGLASS-REINFORCED POLYESTER

FRP shall be composed of two principal constituents: polyester resin and glass fiber reinforcement.

C8.4

The Specifications cover primarily FRP composites, which are the most widely used composites for civil engineering applications requiring structural reliability.

FRP is composed of two principal constituents, namely polyester resin and glass fiber reinforcement. The FRP composite possesses superior properties not available to each constituent alone. The glass fiber reinforcement, which is significantly higher in strength than the polyester resin, constitutes the main load-carrying element of the composite. The polyester resin undergoes large deformations while the load is being transmitted to the glass fibers. From a practical standpoint, FRP may be considered an elastic material, which exhibits a stress–strain behavior that is fairly linear up to failure. The material does not yield or exhibit a permanent set due to transient overloads.

8.4.1—Polyester Resins

Unsaturated polyester shall be used as the principal matrix resin

C8.4.1

The unsaturated polyester resin is a cross-linked thermosetting plastic that is hard and brittle and fractures on impact. However, when reinforced with high-strength fibers (usually but not limited to glass fibers), it develops reliable structural qualities.

8.4.2—Glass Fiber Reinforcement

Reinforcement for FRP composites shall be E-, C-, or S-glass. Glass fiber may take any of the following forms:

- Continuous strands (i.e., rovings and yarns),
- Mats,
- Chopped strands,
- Milled fibers, or
- Fabrics.

C8.4.2

The high-strength glass fibers reinforce the polyester resin and provide the strength and stiffness required for structural purposes. Three types of glass are commonly used as fiber reinforcement: E-, C-, and S-glass. E-glass, or electrical grade, is for general purpose structural uses, as well as for good heat resistance and high electrical properties. C-glass, or chemical grade, is best for resistance to chemical corrosion. S-glass, or high silica, is a special glass for high heat resistance and also has enhanced structural properties. Of the three types, E-glass is the most common in engineering applications.

8.5—MANUFACTURING METHODS

FRP members shall be manufactured by generally accepted methods that ensure high quality, good performance, and reliable mechanical properties of the members produced. (See Table 8-1.)

C8.5

Various processes are employed for the manufacturing of FRP. Manufacturing processes that are commonly used for structural supports include filament winding, pultrusion, and centrifugal casting.

From a structural standpoint, the manufacturing process can markedly influence the structural properties of the material. Other factors that affect the properties of the FRP laminate are the orientation of the glass fibers and the fiber content. Aligning fibers in a single direction provides high stiffness and strength parallel to the fibers, but properties in the perpendicular direction approach those of the plastic matrix. Typically in pole structures, the glass reinforcement is primarily oriented in the longitudinal direction with minimum reinforcement in the transverse direction. The glass-to-resin ratio (by weight) is usually used as a measure of the fiber content. The strength and stiffness properties of FRP generally increase with increasing the glass-to-resin ratio. Typical mechanical properties of FRP laminates are shown in Table 8-1.

Three manufacturing processes that are commonly used for structural supports are filament winding, pultrusion, and centrifugal casting. Filament winding is the oldest and most common method of producing FRP poles. A filament winding machine is used where glass fiber strands are impregnated with polyester resin and continuously wound onto a tapered mandrel. The number of windings and the angle at which the glass fiber strands are wound on the mandrel are controlled and set according to design. The laminate is then cured, sometimes with the assistance of an external heat source, and on completion the mandrel is removed.

Pultrusion is a continuous molding process where selected reinforcements are fed continuously in predetermined amounts and preplanned layering from multiple creels through a resin bath. The resin-impregnated reinforcements are pulled through a die that determines the sectional geometry of the product and controls reinforcement and resin content. Resin cure is initiated in the heated section of the die. The product is drawn through the die by a puller mechanism and is cut to the desired length. Pultrusion is appropriate for any shape that may be extruded, but it is limited to prismatic members.

Centrifugal casting is a method most suited for cylindrical shapes such as pipes, poles, and tubing. In this process, glass fabric in a predetermined amount and configuration is placed in a hollow steel mold. The mold is rotated (spun) at high speeds during which resin is injected and distributed uniformly throughout the reinforcement. Centrifugal forces distribute and compact the resin and reinforcement against the wall of the rotating mold. Curing of the product is accelerated through the application of an external heat source.

Table 8-1—Typical Ranges for Mechanical Properties of FRP Laminates

Process	Percent of Glass Fiber by Weight	Tensile Strength MPa (ksi)	Tensile Modulus 10^3 MPa (10^3 ksi)	Flexural Strength MPa (ksi)	Compressive Strength MPa (ksi)
Filament Winding (glass-polyester)	40–60	241–344 (35–50)	17 237–24 822 (2500–3600)	207–345 (30–50)	207–310 (30–45)
Pultrusion (glass mat-polyester)	40–80	414–1034 (60–150)	27 579–41 369 (4000–6000)	689–1034 (100–150)	207–483 (30–70)
Pultrusion (glass mat and roving polyester)	30–55	48–241 (7–35)	5516–17 237 (800–2500)	69–207 (10–30)	103–270 (15–40)
Centrifugal Casting	40–45	207–276 (30–40)	15 168–17 237 (2200–2500)	207–276 (30–40)	172–241 (25–35)

Note: These values are provided for information only and should not be used for design.

Source: Values for filament winding and pultrusion are from the *Structural Plastics Design Manual* (ASCE, 1985).

8.6—METHOD OF DESIGN

The design of FRP members shall be based on the allowable stress design approach.

The structural design of FRP members shall be performed either by full-scale testing as specified in Article 8.7 or by calculation using the allowable stresses specified in Article 8.8. If testing is not performed, the design calculations provided shall be verified by documented test results on similar structures.

8.6.1—Design Assumptions

Design of FRP members shall be based on conventional linear elastic theory.

C8.6.1

FRP materials are generally anisotropic in character with varying directional properties. The mechanical properties vary according to the fiber content, orientation of the fibers, and the mechanical characteristics of the fibers and the resin. Depending on the particular placement of the fibers, the material may be considered orthotropic or isotropic.

Theories are available in the literature to predict the overall behavior of FRP based on the properties of its constituents (i.e., resin and glass). For practical design, however, the behavior of resin and glass is viewed at a gross scale and *smeared* to provide overall properties of the cross-section.

Although FRP qualifies as a viscoelastic material, which is temperature- and time-dependent, its behavior can be considered as linearly elastic that obeys Hooke's law. A basic assumption is that "plane sections remain plane after bending." This is primarily because of the fairly linear stress–strain behavior up to failure.

8.7—TESTING

Full-scale structural testing shall be used to verify the strength and deflection of FRP members.

The bending test criteria for FRP poles is summarized in Article 8.7.1. Other tests that may be required are given in Article 8.7.2.

C8.7

Because FRP poles are usually round tubular tapered members whose performance is dependent upon the composition of the material and the manufacturing procedure, testing is required to determine the bending and torsional strength, as well as the weathering resistance of FRP poles.

Cracking and early failure can occur at handholes during bending of poles, and early pole attachment failures can occur at cast shoe bases (i.e., pole-to-tube junction). These items can also be checked through testing.

8.7.1—Bending Strength of FRP Poles

The bending strength of FRP poles shall be determined in accordance to ASTM D 4923 procedure, except for the following requirements:

- The pole shall be capable of sustaining an equivalent point load P_e applied 0.3 m (1 ft) from the top with a maximum deflection at the top no greater than 15 percent of the pole height above ground. The equivalent point load shall be computed as:

$$P_e = \frac{M_{\max}}{(h - 0.30)} \quad \text{(N)} \tag{8-1}$$

$$P_e = \frac{M_{\max}}{(h - 1.0)} \quad \text{(lb)}$$

- The pole shall be capable of sustaining a maximum point load of $2.0P_e$ applied 0.3 m (1 ft) from the top before failure.
- For poles with mast arms, the slope at the top of the pole resulting from the dead load moment of the arm and luminaire shall not exceed 30 mm/m (0.35 in./ft).

C8.7.1

A safety factor of 2.0 against failure in bending is specified for the test. The safety factor is greater than the 1.5 value specified by the ASTM standard in order to account for the variability in mechanical properties of FRP.

8.7.2—Other Tests

The following additional tests shall be performed if required by the Owner:

a. Torsional strength per ASTM D 4923,

b. Fatigue strength per ASTM D 4923,

c. Weathering resistance per ASTM G 53,

d. Adhesion of coatings,

e. Color change from UV exposure, and

f. Fatigue strength of connections.

8.8—ALLOWABLE STRESSES

Allowable stresses may be computed by provisions of Articles 8.8.2 through 8.8.7 if the design calculations provided are verified by documented test results on similar structures.

C8.8

Allowable stress equations presented in Article 8.8 are intended for normal loading conditions and are obtained from various sources (Johnson, 1985; British Standards Institute, 1994). If the applied load is long term or cyclic, or if elevated temperatures and exposure to aggressive environments are expected, reductions in the allowable stress should be considered.

Allowable stress equations may also be obtained from the Manufacturer provided that adequate supporting documentation including test data is made available.

8.8.1—Determination of Mechanical Properties of FRP

The strength of FRP laminates shall be determined by testing using flat sheet samples in accordance with the ASTM standards listed in Table 8-2. Samples shall be manufactured in the same manner as that proposed for the structural member.

For structural members where the fiber orientation changes along the member, sheet samples shall be taken at locations of critical stresses.

C8.8.1

Because the mechanical properties of the FRP material could vary significantly depending on the particular composition and the manufacturing process, the test samples must be representative of the actual conditions in the final product.

The proposed safety factors shown in Table 8-2 are minimum values based on common industry practice. Other values may be used when agreed on by the Owner and the Manufacturer.

Table 8-2—Standard Tests for Determining the Mechanical Properties of FRP

Property	Standard Test	Minimum Safety Factor, *n*
Bending Strength, F_{bu} (MPa, psi)	ASTM D 790	2.5
Modulus of Elasticity in Bending, E_b (MPa, psi)	ASTM D 790	—
Tensile Strength, F_{tu} (MPa, psi)	ASTM D 638	2.0
Modulus of Elasticity in Tension, E_t (MPa, psi)	ASTM D 638	—
Compressive Strength, F_{au} (MPa, psi)	ASTM D 695	3.0
Modulus of Elasticity in Compression, E_c (MPa, psi)	ASTM D 695	—
Shear Strength, F_{vu} (MPa, psi)	ASTM D 732	3.0
Poisson's ratio in the longitudinal direction, υ_{12}	ASTM D 3039	—

8.8.2—Allowable Bending Stress for Tubular Sections

The allowable bending stress for tubular sections may be calculated as follows:

- For round tubular sections:

$$F_b = \frac{0.75 E_1 K_1}{n\left(\dfrac{D}{t}\right)\mu^{\frac{1}{2}}} \leq \frac{F_{bu}}{n} \tag{8-2}$$

where:

$$K_1 = 1.414\left[\left(1 + \upsilon_{12}\left(\frac{E_2}{E_1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\right)\left(\frac{E_2}{E_1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{G}{E_1}\right)\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

C8.8.2

For thin-walled FRP sections, local buckling is a major parameter that controls the strength of the member in bending. The allowable bending stress is defined as a function of the critical buckling stress of the section. Equations to obtain the critical buckling stress are based on the plate theory for orthotropic elements, and they are expressed in terms of the aspect ratio *b/t* of the plate or the aspect ratio *D/t* of the cylinder. For polygonal sections, the critical buckling stress is determined for a long plate with simply supported long edges. Because there is some edge restraint at the intersection between sides of the polygon, the assumption of simply supported long edges leads to conservative values for the critical buckling stress.

- For polygonal sections (hexdecagonal, dodecagonal, octagonal, and square tubular sections):

$$F_b = \frac{3.27 E_1 K_1}{n\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2 \mu} \leq \frac{F_{bu}}{n} \quad (8\text{-}3)$$

where:

$$K_1 = 0.5\left[\left(\frac{E_2}{E_1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} + \upsilon_{12}\left(\frac{E_2}{E_1}\right) + \left(\frac{2G\mu}{E_1}\right)\right]$$

for $\mu = 1 - \upsilon_{12}^2\left(\frac{E_2}{E_1}\right)$

According to Johnson (1985), it has been shown that the critical compressive stress caused by bending is 30 percent higher than the critical compressive stress caused by axial compressive loads for round tubular sections. Therefore, the critical buckling stress for a round tubular member under bending Eq. 8-2 is taken as 1.3 times the critical buckling stress for a round tubular member under axial compression Eq. 8-8.

Eqs. 8-2 and 8-3 may be used for planar isotropic materials by setting $E_1 = E_2$ in the equations for K_1 and μ.

8.8.3—Allowable Bending Stress for W and I Sections

The allowable bending stress for W and I sections may be calculated as follows:

- For laterally supported W and I shapes:

$$F_b = \frac{0.40 E_b}{n\left(\frac{b_f}{t_f}\right)^2} \leq \frac{F_{bu}}{n} \quad (8\text{-}4)$$

- For unsupported W and I shapes:

$$F_b = \frac{C_1}{nS_1}\sqrt{M_{xc}^2 + \left(\frac{d\ P_{e2}}{2}\right)^2} \leq \frac{F_{bu}}{n} \quad (8\text{-}5)$$

where:

$$M_{xc} = \frac{\pi}{kL}\sqrt{E_b I_2 G J}$$

$$P_{e2} = \frac{\pi^2 E_b I_2}{(kL)^2}$$

For cantilever members, $C_1 = 1.0$, and $k = 2.1$.

C8.8.3

Allowable bending stresses for W and I shapes are provided for isotropic materials. For thin-walled FRP sections, local buckling is the parameter controlling the strength of the member in bending; therefore, the critical bending stress is defined as the critical buckling stress of the section. The equations to obtain the critical buckling stress are based on the plate theory for isotropic elements, and they are expressed in terms of the aspect ratio (b/t) of the plate.

Barbero and Raftoyiannis (1993) has proposed a general equation for the allowable bending stress of pultruded W and I beams based on the equations developed for the allowable bending stresses of wood members. A main assumption in those equations is that pultruded W and I shapes are members with unidirectional fibers similar to wood. Because only a very limited number of tests have been performed to validate those equations, they have not been included in these Specifications.

8.8.4—Allowable Compression Stress—Flexural Buckling

The allowable compression stress considering flexural buckling may be calculated as follows:

- For:

$$\frac{kL}{r} < \sqrt{\frac{2\pi^2 E_c}{F_{au}}}$$

$$F_a = \frac{F_{au}}{\pi} - \frac{F_{au}^{\frac{3}{2}}}{2n\sqrt{2\pi^2 E_c}}\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right) \quad (8\text{-}6)$$

- For:

$$\frac{kL}{r} \geq \sqrt{\frac{2\pi^2 E_c}{F_{au}}}$$

$$F_a = \frac{\pi^2 E_c}{n\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2} \quad (8\text{-}7)$$

C8.8.4

Compression design of FRP members is generally controlled by buckling. Flexural buckling and local buckling should be considered. Equations for the allowable compression stress for flexural buckling are taken from the *Structural Plastics Design Manual*, and they are applicable to isotropic and orthotropic materials.

8.8.5—Allowable Compression Stress—Local Buckling

The allowable compressive stress considering local buckling may be calculated as follows:

- For round tubular sections:

$$F_a = \frac{0.57 E_1 K_1}{n\left(\frac{D}{t}\right)\mu^{\frac{1}{2}}} \leq \frac{F_{au}}{n} \quad (8\text{-}8)$$

- For polygonal sections (hexdecagonal, dodecagonal, octagonal, and square tubular sections):

$$F_a = \frac{3.27 E_1 K_1}{n\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2 \mu} \leq \frac{F_{au}}{n} \quad (8\text{-}9)$$

where K_1 and μ are determined according to Article 8.8.2.

C8.8.5

Compression design of FRP hollow tubes is usually controlled by local buckling of the wall, except for unusual combinations of very long members with large axial loads. Equations provided for the allowable compressive stress for short-column action are developed for orthotropic materials, but they may be used for planar isotropic materials by setting $E_1 = E_2$ in the equations for K_1 and μ.

In practice, the critical buckling stress of round tubular sections is about 50 percent of the theoretical critical buckling stress as a result of geometrical and material imperfections. To account for this difference between the theoretical and the actual buckling stress, the theoretical buckling stress in Eq. 8-8 has been multiplied by a factor of 0.50.

8.8.6—Allowable Tension Stress

The allowable tension stress on the net cross-sectional area may be calculated as follows:

$$F_t = \frac{F_{tu}}{n} \quad (8\text{-}10)$$

The net cross-sectional area shall be calculated as the remaining area after discounting holes or other discontinuities in the member.

C8.8.6

Bolt holes and handholes produce abrupt reductions in the cross-sectional area of the member that generate stress concentrations. The Designer should account for the stress concentrations that may reduce the capacity of the member under tension. Information for computing the reduction in capacity due to stress concentrations at discontinuities in tension members is given in the *Structural Plastics Design Manual*.

8.8.7—Allowable Shear Stress

The allowable shear stress for tubular members under transverse loads or torsion may be calculated as follows:

$$F_v = \frac{1}{n}\left[\frac{0.533F_{tu}\left(1+\upsilon_{12}\right)}{\mu}\right]\left(\frac{G}{F_{vu}}\right)\left(\frac{t}{R_1}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}} \le \frac{F_{vu}}{n} \quad (8\text{-}11)$$

where μ is determined according to Article 8.8.2.

C8.8.7

The allowable shear stress equation is provided for orthotropic materials, but may be used for planar isotropic materials by setting $E_1 = E_2$ in the equation for μ. Equations to compute maximum shear stresses due to transverse loads and torsion are provided in Appendix B "Design Aids," to determine the computed shear stress, f_v.

8.9—COMBINED STRESSES

Members subjected to combined bending, axial compression, or tension may be proportioned to meet the limitations of Article 8.9.1 or Article 8.9.2, as applicable. Calculations of F_a, F_b, and F_t, per Article 8.8 may be increased by 1/3 for Group II and Group III load combinations, as allowed in Section 3, "Loads."

8.9.1—Bending and Compression

Members subjected to bending and compression may satisfy the following equations:

$$\frac{f_a}{F_a} + \frac{f_b}{F_b\left(1-\frac{f_a}{F'_e}\right)} \le 1.0 \quad (8\text{-}12)$$

where:

$$F'_e = \frac{\pi^2 E_c}{n\left(\frac{k_b L}{r_b}\right)^2}$$

and:

$$\frac{f_a}{F_a} + \frac{f_b}{F_b} \le 1.0 \quad (8\text{-}13)$$

where F_a in Eq. 8-13 is the allowable compression stress due to local buckling.

C8.9.1

For practical design, simplified combined stress ratio (CSR) equations similar to those used for metal structures have been adopted for FRP (ASCE 1985). Although composite materials do not fail according to principal stress criteria, the simplified CSR equations should give conservative approximations. Research is needed in this area to develop CSR equations based on the failure criteria of FRP.

Two equations are presented to check combined bending and compression stresses. Eq. 8-12 includes the term:

$$1-\frac{f_a}{F'_e}$$

which accounts for the second-order moments that occur as a result of the P-delta effect. The equation is intended for intermediate unbraced locations where the member is susceptible to lateral displacement. Eq. 8-13 is intended for locations at the end of the member where lateral displacement is restrained. The combined stresses at such locations may, in some cases, exceed those at the intermediate points.

For biaxial bending, except for round and polygonal tubular sections, the second term of Eq. 8-12 can be substituted by:

$$\frac{f_{bx}}{F_{bx}\left(1-\frac{f_a}{F'_{ex}}\right)}+\frac{f_{by}}{F_{by}\left(1-\frac{f_a}{F'_{ey}}\right)}$$

and the second term f_b/F_b of Eq. 8-13 can be substituted by $f_{bx}/F_{bx} + f_{by}/F_{by}$.

8.9.2—Bending and Tension

Members subjected to bending and tension may satisfy the following equation:

$$\frac{f_t}{F_t}+\frac{f_b}{F_b}\leq 1.0 \quad (8\text{-}14)$$

C8.9.2

With the exception of round tubular sections and polygonal sections, the term f_b/F_b can be substituted by $f_{bx}/F_{bx} + f_{by}/F_{by}$ in Eq. 8-14.

8.10—MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FRP MEMBERS

FRP members shall be protected from UV radiation to minimize degradation of the structural properties of the member. FRP members as fabricated shall not show evidence of exposed fibers, cracks, crazes, or checks on the member surface.

UV protection of FRP members shall be provided by using one or more of the following methods:

- Surface veil,
- Urethane coating, or
- UV stabilizers.

Other UV protection methods may be used if proven effective and agreed on by the Owner and Manufacturer.

C8.10

Ultraviolet rays and heat from solar radiation degrade the natural molecular structure of FRP. Other weathering elements, such as industrial pollutants or salt spray, can accelerate the degradation due to UV radiation. The results of exposing FRP to any of these conditions can be discoloration, loss of mechanical strength, embrittlement, and loss of electrical insulation and resistance properties. Chemical stabilizers, fillers, and weather-resistant paints or coatings should be used to provide the necessary protection. The service life of coatings is dependent on the coating's quality, adhesion, and thickness.

8.11—REFERENCES

ASTM. 1997. "Standard Practice for Operating Light and Water Exposure Apparatus (Fluorescent UV-Condensation Type) for Exposure of Non-Metallic Materials," ASTM G 53-93. In *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASTM. 1997. "Standard Specification for Reinforced Thermosetting Plastic Poles," ASTM D 4923-92. In *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASTM. 1997. "Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties of Rigid Plastics," ASTM D 695-91. In Annual Book of ASTM Standards. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASTM. 1997. "Standard Test Method for Flexural Properties of Unreinforced and Reinforced Plastics and Electrical Insulating Materials," ASTM D 790-92. In *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASTM. 1997. "Standard Test Method for Shear Strength of Plastics by Punch Tool," ASTM D 732-93. In *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASTM. 1997. "Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics," ASTM D 638-94b. In *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASTM. 1997. "Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Polymer Matrix Composite Materials," ASTM D 3039-95. In *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASCE. 1985. Structural Plastics Design Manual, ASCE Manuals and Reports on Engineering Practice No. 63. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY.

ASM International. 1995. *Engineered Materials Handbook*. ASM International, Materials Park, OH.

Bank, L. C. 1990. "Shear Properties of Pultruded Glass FRP Materials," *Journal of Materials in Civil Engineering*. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 2, No. 2 (May 1990).

Bank, L. C., M. Nadipelli, and T. R. Gentry. 1994. "Local Buckling and Failure of Pultruded Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Beams," *Journal of Engineering Materials and Technology*. American Society of Mechanical Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 116 (April 1994).

Barbero, E. J., and R. A. Ritchey. 1993. "A Universal Design Equation for FRP Columns." Paper presented at the 48th Annual Conference, Composites Institute, Cincinnati, OH, February 8–11, 1993. The Society of the Plastics Industry, Inc., Washington, DC.

Barbero, E. J., and I. G. Raftoyiannis. 1993. "Local Buckling of FRP Beams and Columns," *Journal of Materials in Civil Engineering*. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 5, No. 3 (August 1993).

Benjamin, B. S. 1982. *Structural Design with Plastics*, Second Edition. Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, NY.

British Standards Institute. 1994. *Design of Lighting Columns*, British Standard BD 26/94. British Standards Institute, London, UK.

Caltrans. 1995. *Evaluation of Deflection and Bending Characteristics of Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Lighting Standards*, Study No. F92TL12. California Department of Transportation, Sacramento, CA.

Composites Fabricators Association Architectural Committee. 1992. *Guidelines and Recommended Practices for Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic Architectural Products.* Composites Fabricators Association, Arlington, VA.

Hackett, R. M., and K. T. Slattery. 1992. "Modeling Stiffness Degradation in Filamentary Composite Materials," *Journal of Materials in Civil Engineering*. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 4, No. 2 (May 1992).

Jang, B. Z. 1994. Adv*anced Polymer Composites*. ASM International, Materials Park, OH.

Johnson, A. F. 1985. "Design of RP Cylinders under Buckling Loads." Paper presented at the 40th Annual Conference, Reinforced Plastics/Composites Institute, Atlanta, GA, January 28–February 1, 1985, The Society of the Plastics Industry, Inc., Washington, DC.

Lankford, J. 1995. "Compressive Failure of Fiber-Reinforced Composites: Buckling, Kinking, and the Role of the Interphase," *Journal of Materials Science*. Thomson Reuters, New York, NY, Vol. 30.

Mottram, J. T. 1994. "Compression Strength of Pultruded Flat Sheet Material," *Journal of Materials in Civil Engineering*. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 6, No. 2 (May 1994).

Rosner, C. N., and S. H. Rizkalla. 1995. "Bolted Connections for Fiber-Reinforced Composite Structural Members: Experimental Program," *Journal of Materials in Civil Engineering*. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 7, No. 4 (November 1995).

Rosner, C. N., and S. H. Rizkalla. 1995. "Bolted Connections for Fiber-Reinforced Composite Structural Members: Analytical Model and Design Recommendations," *Journal of Materials in Civil Engineering*. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 7, No. 4 (November 1995).

Sims, G. D., A. F. Johnson, and R. D. Hill. 1987. "Mechanical and Structural Properties of a GRP Pultruded Section," *Composite Structures*. Elsevier, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, Vol. 8.

Slaughter, W. S., N. A. Fleck, and B. Budiansky. 1993. "Compressive Failure of Fiber Composites: The Roles of Multiaxial Loading and Creep," *Journal of Engineering Materials and Technology*. American Society of Mechanical Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 115 (July 1993).

SECTION 9: WOOD DESIGN

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 9:

WOOD DESIGN

9.1—SCOPE

This Section specifies design provisions for wood structural supports for highway signs, luminaires, and traffic signals. The provisions of this Section apply only to cantilevered wood posts and poles. The design provisions for wood posts and poles are generally based on the *National Design Specification for Wood Construction* (NDS, 1997), including the *Design Values for Wood Construction* (NDS Supplement, 1997), except as modified herein.

C9.1

The design provisions of this Section are applicable to common post and pole usages given in Article 9.5.1. Additional design provisions given in the NDS may be required for other member types or usages.

9.2—DEFINITIONS

Class—Group of poles that have approximately the same load-carrying capacity regardless of species.

Dry Condition—Condition of having relatively low moisture content, i.e., not more than 19 percent for sawn lumber.

Effective Modulus of Elasticity—Modulus of elasticity multiplied by applicable adjustment factors listed in Table 9-6.

Grade—Designation of the material quality of a manufactured piece of wood.

Grain—Direction, size, arrangement, appearance, or quality of the fibers in wood or lumber.

Green Condition—Condition of having relatively high moisture content, i.e., more than 19 percent for sawn lumber.

NDS—*National Design Specification for Wood Construction* by the American Forest and Paper Association.

NELMA—Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association, a grading agency.

Nominal Size—As applied to timber or lumber, the size by which it is specified and sold; often differs from the actual size.

Normal Load Duration—Condition of fully stressing a member to its allowable design stress by the application of the full design load for a cumulative period of approximately 10 yr, and/or the application of 90 percent of the full design load continuously throughout the remainder of the life of the structure.

NSLB—Northern Softwood Lumber Bureau, a grading agency.

Pole—Solid wood member, round in cross-section, of any size or length, usually used with the larger end in the ground.

Post—Solid wood member with a square or nearly square cross-section, with the width not more than 50 mm (2 in.) greater than the thickness.

Preservative—Any substance that is effective in preventing the development and action of wood-decaying fungi, borers of various kinds, and harmful insects.

Size Adjustment Factors—Factors that adjust basic design values listed in Table 9-3 for effects of member size.

SPIB—Southern Pine Inspection Bureau, a grading agency.

Structural Lumber—Lumber that is intended for use where predictable material properties are required.

Visually Graded Lumber—Structural lumber graded solely by visual examination.

WCLIB—West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau, a grading agency.

Wet-Use—Use conditions where the moisture content of the wood in service exceeds the dry condition.

WWPA—Western Wood Products Association, a grading agency.

9.3—NOTATION

a = support condition parameter (0.7 for cantilever members)
b = width of rectangular bending member (mm, in.)
C_M = wet service factor
C_u = untreated factor for timber poles
D = diameter of round section (mm, in.)
D_b = diameter at groundline section of the member (mm, in.)
D_t = diameter at top of the member (mm, in.)
d = depth of rectangular bending member (mm, in.)
d_b = dimension of one side of the rectangular section at groundline section of the member (mm, in.)
d_t = dimension of one side of the rectangular section at top of the member (mm, in.)
E = basic modulus of elasticity (MPa, psi)
E' = effective modulus of elasticity (MPa, psi)
F_b = basic bending design value (MPa, psi)
F'_b = allowable bending stress (MPa, psi)
F'_{bx} = allowable bending stress about x axis (strong axis) (MPa, psi)
F'_{by} = allowable bending stress about y axis (weak axis) (MPa, psi)
F_c = basic compression design value parallel to grain (MPa, psi)
F'_c = allowable compression stress parallel to grain (MPa, psi)
F_{cE} = critical buckling stress for compression members (MPa, psi)
F_{cEx} = critical buckling stress for compression members in the x direction (MPa, psi)
F_{cEy} = critical buckling stress for compression members in the y direction (MPa, psi)
F_{cp} = basic compression design value perpendicular to grain (MPa, psi)
F'_{cp} = allowable compression stress perpendicular to grain (MPa, psi)
F_t = basic tension design value parallel to grain (MPa, psi)
F'_t = allowable tension stress parallel to grain (MPa, psi)
F_v = basic shear design value parallel to grain (horizontal shear) (MPa, psi)
F'_v = allowable shear stress parallel to grain (horizontal shear) (MPa, psi)
f_b = computed bending stress (MPa, psi)
f_{bx} = computed bending stress about x axis (strong axis) (MPa, psi)
f_{by} = computed bending stress about y axis (weak axis) (MPa, psi)
f_c = computed compression stress parallel to grain (MPa, psi)
f_v = computed shear stress parallel to grain (MPa, psi)
I = moment of inertia of cross-section about centroidal axis (mm^4, $in.^4$)
K_{cE} = Euler buckling coefficient for columns
L_e = effective length of a bending or compression member (mm, in.)
L_u = unsupported length of bending member (mm, in.)
Q = static moment of area about the neutral axis (mm^3, $in.^3$)
V = shear force (N, lb)

9.4—MATERIAL

9.4.1—Wood Products

This Section covers the following wood products:

- Wood posts and
- Round timber poles.

C9.4.1

Posts and poles are the most commonly used wood products for structural supports for highway signs, luminaires, and traffic signals. This Section is limited to the coverage of wood posts from visually graded lumber and round timber poles.

Visually graded lumber is a type of structural lumber graded by visual examination based on certain rules established by the grading agency.

In general, posts are used to support small structures such as roadside signs. Round timber poles are used as vertical supports for street lighting or strain poles for temporary span-wire configurations.

Engineered wood products such as laminated veneer lumber may be used for structural supports such as posts. Design of these products, however, should be based on technical information provided by the manufacturer and approved by the Owner, because the basic design values could vary for products from different manufacturers.

9.5—DESIGN—GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

9.5.1—Design Dimensions of Posts

Stresses in posts shall be computed on the basis of the net dimension of the cross-section. For 100-mm (4-in.) (nominal) wide posts, the net dry dressed dimensions shall be used in stress checks regardless of the moisture content at the time of manufacture or use. For 125-mm (5-in.) (nominal) and wider posts, the net green dressed dimensions shall be used in stress checks regardless of the moisture content at the time of manufacture or use.

C9.5.1

For all standard dressed posts 100 mm (4 in.) (nominal) and wider, the dressed dimensions used in stress checks are equal to 13 mm (0.5 in.) less than the nominal dimensions.

9.5.2—Design Dimensions of Poles

Design dimensions of poles shall conform to applicable provisions of *Specifications and Dimensions for Wood Poles*.

C9.5.2

Wood poles are grouped by class according to their required minimum circumference at 1.83 m (6 ft) from the butt of the pole. Tables 9-1 and 9-2 provide typical dimensions for wood poles. For other species not presented in the tables, reference should be made to *Specifications and Dimensions for Wood Poles*.

Poles of a given class and length have approximately the same load-carrying capacity regardless of species. Therefore, poles can be specified by class number and length without reference to species.

Table 9-1—Dimensions of Red Pine Poles

Class	1	2	3	4	5
Minimum circumference at top mm (in.)	686 (27)	635 (25)	584 (23)	533 (21)	483 (19)
Length of pole m (ft)	Minimum circumference at 1.83 m (6 ft) from butt mm (in.)				
6.08 (20)	826 (32.5)	775 (30.5)	724 (28.5)	673 (26.5)	622 (24.5)
7.62 (25)	914 (36.0)	851 (33.5)	787 (31.0)	736 (29.0)	686 (27.0)
9.14 (30)	991 (39.0)	**927 (36.5)**	**864 (34.0)**	**800 (31.5)**	**737 (29.0)**
10.67 (35)	1054 (41.5)	**978 (38.5)**	**914 (36.0)**	**851 (33.5)**	**787 (31.0)**
12.19 (40)	**1118 (44.0)**	**1041 (41.0)**	**965 (38.0)**	**902 (35.5)**	**838 (33.0)**
13.72 (45)	**1168 (46.0)**	**1092 (43.0)**	**1016 (40.0)**	**940 (37.0)**	**876 (34.5)**
15.24 (50)	**1219 (48.0)**	**1143 (45.0)**	**1067 (42.0)**	991 (39.0)	914 (36.0)
16.76 (55)	**1257 (49.5)**	**1181 (46.5)**	**1105 (43.5)**	1029 (40.5)	—
18.29 (60)	**1308 (51.5)**	**1219 (48.0)**	**1143 (45.0)**	1067 (42.0)	—

Notes:

[a] Dimensions for other species are given in Specifications and Dimensions for Wood Poles.

[b] Classes and lengths for which circumferences at 1.83 m (6 ft) from the butt, listed in bold-face type, are the preferred standard sizes. Those shown in light type are included for engineering purposes only.

Table 9-2—Dimensions of Douglas Fir and Southern Pine Poles

Class	1	2	3	4	5
Minimum circumference at top mm (in.)	686 (27)	635 (25)	584 (23)	533 (21)	483 (19)
Length of pole m (ft)	Minimum circumference at 1.83 m (6 ft) from butt mm (in.)				
6.08 (20)	787 (31.0)	734 (29.0)	686 (27.0)	635 (25.0)	584 (23.0)
7.62 (25)	851 (33.5)	800 (31.5)	749 (29.5)	699 (27.5)	648 (25.5)
9.14 (30)	927 (36.5)	**864 (34.0)**	**813 (32.0)**	**749 (29.5)**	**699 (27.5)**
10.67 (35)	991 (39.0)	**927 (36.5)**	**864 (34.0)**	**800 (31.5)**	**737 (29.0)**
12.19 (40)	**1041 (41.0)**	**978 (38.5)**	**914 (36.0)**	**851 (33.5)**	**787 (31.0)**
13.72 (45)	**1092 (43.0)**	**1029 (40.5)**	**953 (37.5)**	**889 (35.0)**	**826 (32.5)**
15.24 (50)	**1143 (45.0)**	**1067 (42.0)**	**991 (39.0)**	927 (36.5)	864 (34.0)
16.76 (55)	**1181 (46.5)**	**1105 (43.5)**	**1029 (40.5)**	965 (38.0)	—
18.29 (60)	**1219 (48.0)**	**1143 (45.0)**	**1067 (42.0)**	991 (39.0)	—

Notes:

[a] Dimensions for other species are given in Specifications and Dimensions for Wood Poles.

[b] Classes and lengths for which circumferences at 1.83 m (6 ft) from the butt, listed in bold-face type, are the preferred standard sizes. Those shown in light type are included for engineering purposes only.

9.5.3—Net Section

In calculating stresses for wood members (e.g., posts and poles), the net section of the member shall be used. The net section shall be determined by deducting from the gross section the projected area of all material removed by boring, grooving, dapping, notching, or other means.

9.6—BASIC DESIGN VALUES FOR WOOD MEMBERS

Basic design values for posts are given in Tables 9-3 and 9-4.

Basic design values for round timber poles are given in Table 9-5.

C9.6

Basic design values listed in Tables 9-3 and 9-4 are given for some common species and grades of lumber for posts. For other species or grades not listed in these tables, the NDS should be used.

ASTM D 3200 provides a test method for determining the basic design values of round timber poles.

The NDS does not contain basic design values for poles; however, the *Timber Construction Manual* suggests using the basic design values for poles included in the NDS, based on single-member use. Table 9-5 lists basic design values using this recommendation for three species of poles. Designs preformed for each of these species will require the same class or approximately the same class of pole for a given loading and length of pole. For poles specified by class and length only, designs based on the Southern Pine species will result in the average class requirement for these species.

Basic design values from Tables 9-3, 9-4, and 9-5 apply to normal load duration. Normal load duration is defined as the condition of fully stressing a member to its allowable stress by the application of the full design load for a cumulative period of approximately 10 yr, and/or the application of 90 percent of the full design load continuously throughout the remainder of the life of the structure.

When the design load is applied for a cumulative period of more than 10 yr, basic design values except the modulus of elasticity, E, and the compression perpendicular to grain, F_{cp}, are reduced by ten percent to account for the possibility of creep and other long-term effects. This condition corresponds to Group I load combination, which considers only dead load.

Table 9-3—Basic Design Values for Visually Graded Lumber Posts for 100 × 100 mm (4 × 4 in.) through 100 × 150 mm (4 × 6 in.)
(See note d for adjustments of basic design values.)

Species and commercial grade	Bending F_b MPa (psi)	Tension parallel to grain, F_t MPa (psi)	Shear parallel to grain, F_v MPa (psi)	Compression perpendicular to grain, F_{cp} MPa (psi)	Compression parallel to grain, F_c MPa (psi)	Modulus of elasticity, E MPa (psi) $\times 10^3$	Grading rules agency
Douglas Fir-Larch							WCLIB WWPA
select structural	10.34 (1500)	6.90 (1000)	0.65 (95)	4.31 (625)	11.72 (1700)	13.10 (1900)	
No. 1	6.90 (1000)	4.65 (675)	0.65 (95)	4.31 (625)	10.34 (1500)	11.72 (1700)	
No. 2	6.21 (900)	3.96 (575)	0.65 (95)	4.31 (625)	9.31 (1350)	11.03 (1600)	
Hem Fir							WCLIB
select structural	9.65 (1400)	6.38 (925)	0.52 (75)	2.79 (405)	10.34 (1500)	11.03 (1600)	WWPA
No. 1	6.72 (975)	4.31 (625)	0.52 (75)	2.79 (405)	9.31 (1350)	10.34 (1500)	
No. 2	5.86 (850)	3.45 (500)	0.52 (75)	2.79 (405)	8.62 (1250)	8.96 (1300)	
Southern Pine 100 × 100 mm (4 × 4 in.)							SPIB
select structural	19.65 (2850)	11.03 (1600)	0.69 (100)	3.90 (565)	14.48 (2100)	12.41 (1800)	
No. 1	12.76 (1850)	7.24 (1050)	0.69 (100)	3.90 (565)	12.76 (1850)	11.72 (1700)	
No. 2	10.34 (1500)	5.69 (825)	0.62 (90)	3.90 (565)	11.38 (1650)	11.03 (1600)	
Southern Pine 100 × 125 or 150 mm (4 × 5 or 6 in.)							SPIB
select structural	17.58 (2550)	9.65 (1400)	0.62 (90)	3.90 (565)	13.79 (2000)	12.41 (1800)	
No. 1	11.38 (1650)	6.21 (900)	0.62 (90)	3.90 (565)	12.07 (1750)	11.72 (1700)	
No. 2	8.62 (1250)	5.00 (725)	0.62 (90)	3.90 (565)	11.03 (1600)	11.03 (1600)	
Spruce-Pine-Fir (South)							NELMA NSLB
select structural	8.96 (1300)	3.96 (575)	0.48 (70)	2.31 (335)	8.27 (1200)	8.96 (1300)	WCLIB
No. 1	6.03 (875)	2.76 (400)	0.48 (70)	2.31 (335)	7.24 (1050)	8.27 (1200)	WWPA
No. 2	5.34 (775)	2.41 (350)	0.48 (70)	2.31 (335)	6.90 (1000)	7.58 (1100)	
Western Cedar							WCLIB
select structural	6.90 (1000)	4.14 (600)	0.52 (75)	2.93 (425)	6.90 (1000)	7.58 (1100)	WWPA
No. 1	5.00 (725)	2.93 (425)	0.52 (75)	2.93 (425)	5.69 (825)	6.90 (1000)	
No. 2	4.83 (700)	2.93 (425)	0.52 (75)	2.93 (425)	4.48 (650)	6.90 (1000)	

Notes:

[a] Basic design values for other grades or species of posts are given in the NDS.

[b] Basic design values are based on dry service conditions (i.e., moisture content less than or equal to 19 percent). For wet service conditions (i.e., moisture content greater than 19 percent), provisions of Article 9.8.1 shall be considered.

[c] Values for modulus of elasticity are average values that conform to ASTM D 245 and ASTM D 1990. Adjustments in modulus of elasticity have been taken to reflect appropriate increases for seasoning; increases for density where applicable; and, where required, reductions have been made to account for the effect of grade on stiffness.

[d] For all species other than Southern Pine, the tabulated bending, tension, and compression parallel to grain basic design values shall be multiplied by the following size-adjustment factors to determine the actual basic design values (size adjustment factors have already been incorporated in the tabulated values for Southern Pine):

Size-Adjustment Factors

Post Size	F_b	F_t	F_c
100 × 100 mm (4 × 4 in.)	1.5	1.5	1.15
100 × 125 mm (4 × 5 in.)	1.4	1.4	1.1
100 × 150 mm (4 × 6 in.)	1.3	1.3	1.1

Table 9-4—Basic Design Values for Visually Graded Lumber Posts 125 × 125 mm (5 × 5 in.) and Larger

Species and commercial grade	Bending F_b MPa (psi)	Tension parallel to grain, F_t MPa (psi)	Shear parallel to grain, F_v MPa (psi)	Compression perpendicular to grain, F_{cp} MPa (psi)	Compression parallel to grain, F_c MPa (psi)	Modulus of elasticity, E MPa (psi) $\times 10^3$	Grading rules agency
Douglas Fir-Larch							WCLIB
select structural	10.34 (1500)	6.90 (1000)	0.59 (85)	4.31 (625)	7.93 (1150)	11.03 (1600)	
No. 1	8.27 (1200)	5.69 (825)	0.59 (85)	4.31 (625)	6.90 (1000)	11.03 (1600)	
No. 2	5.17 (750)	3.27 (475)	0.59 (85)	4.31 (625)	4.83 (700)	8.96 (1300)	
Douglas Fir-Larch							WWPA
select structural	10.34 (1500)	6.90 (1000)	0.59 (85)	4.31 (625)	7.93 (1150)	11.03 (1600)	
No. 1	8.27 (1200)	5.69 (825)	0.59 (85)	4.31 (625)	6.90 (1000)	11.03 (1600)	
No. 2	4.83 (700)	3.27 (475)	0.59 (85)	4.31 (625)	3.27 (475)	8.96 (1300)	
Hem Fir							WCLIB
select structural	8.27 (1200)	5.52 (800)	0.48 (70)	2.79 (405)	6.72 (975)	8.96 (1300)	
No. 1	6.72 (975)	4.50 (650)	0.48 (70)	2.79 (405)	5.86 (850)	8.96 (1300)	
No. 2	3.96 (575)	2.59 (375)	0.48 (70)	2.79 (405)	3.96 (575)	7.58 (1100)	
Hem Fir							WWPA
select structural	8.27 (1200)	5.52 (800)	0.48 (70)	2.79 (405)	6.72 (975)	8.96 (1300)	
No. 1	6.55 (950)	4.50 (650)	0.48 (70)	2.79 (405)	5.86 (850)	8.96 (1300)	
No. 2	3.62 (525)	2.41 (350)	0.48 (70)	2.79 (405)	2.59 (375)	7.58 (1100)	
Southern Pine							SPIB
select structural	10.34 (1500)	6.90 (1000)	0.76 (110)	2.59 (375)	6.55 (950)	10.34 (1500)	
No. 1	9.31 (1350)	6.21 (900)	0.76 (110)	2.59 (375)	5.69 (825)	10.34 (1500)	
No. 2	5.86 (850)	3.79 (550)	0.69 (100)	2.59 (375)	3.62 (525)	8.27 (1200)	
Spruce-Pine-Fir (South)							NELMA
select structural	6.90 (1000)	4.65 (675)	0.45 (65)	2.31 (335)	4.83 (700)	8.27 (1200)	NSLB
No. 1	5.52 (800)	3.79 (550)	0.45 (65)	2.31 (335)	4.31 (625)	8.27 (1200)	WWPA
No. 2	3.27 (475)	2.24 (325)	0.45 (65)	2.31 (335)	2.93 (425)	6.90 (1000)	
Western Cedar							WCLIB
select structural	7.58 (1100)	5.00 (725)	0.48 (70)	2.93 (425)	6.38 (925)	6.90 (1000)	
No. 1	6.03 (875)	4.14 (600)	0.48 (70)	2.93 (425)	5.52 (800)	6.90 (1000)	
No. 2	3.79 (550)	2.41 (350)	0.48 (70)	2.93 (425)	3.80 (550)	5.52 (800)	
Western Cedar							WWPA
select structural	7.58 (1100)	5.00 (725)	0.48 (70)	2.93 (425)	6.38 (925)	6.90 (1000)	
No. 1	6.03 (875)	4.14 (600)	0.48 (70)	2.93 (425)	5.52 (800)	6.90 (1000)	
No. 2	3.45 (500)	2.41 (350)	0.48 (70)	2.93 (425)	2.59 (375)	5.52 (800)	

Notes:

[a] Basic design values for other grades or species of posts are given in the NDS.

[b] Basic design values are based on dry service conditions (i.e., moisture content less than or equal to 19 percent), except for Southern Pine. For wet service conditions (i.e., moisture content greater than 19 percent), provisions of Article 9.8.1 shall be considered. Basic design values for Southern Pine are based on wet service conditions, and they may be used for dry service conditions.

[c] Values for modulus of elasticity are average values that conform to ASTM D245 and ASTM D1990. Adjustments in modulus of elasticity have been taken to reflect appropriate increases for seasoning; increases for density where applicable; and, where required, reductions have been made to account for the effect of grade on stiffness.

Table 9-5—Basic Design Values for Treated Round Timber Poles

Species	Bending F_b MPa (psi)	Tension parallel to grain, F_t MPa (psi)	Shear parallel to grain, F_v MPa (psi)	Compression perpendicular to grain, F_{cp} MPa (psi)	Compression parallel to grain, F_c MPa (psi)	Modulus of elasticity, E MPa (psi) $\times 10^3$	Standard
Douglas Fir	13.10 (1900)	—	0.79 (115)	1.59 (230)	6.90 (1000)	10.34 (1500)	ASTM D 2899
Red Pine	10.00 (1450)	—	0.59 (85)	1.07 (155)	5.00 (725)	8.83 (1280)	ASTM D 2899
Southern Pine	12.76 (1850)	—	0.76 (110)	1.72 (250)	6.55 (950)	10.34 (1500)	ASTM D 2899

Note:

[a] Basic design values are based on wet service conditions (i.e., moisture content greater than 19 percent), and they may be used for dry service conditions (i.e., moisture content less than or equal to 19 percent).

9.7—ALLOWABLE STRESSES FOR WOOD MEMBERS

Basic design values from Tables 9-3, 9-4, and 9-5 shall be multiplied by all applicable adjustment factors as shown in Table 9-6 to determine the allowable stresses and the effective modulus of elasticity of wood members.

C9.7

Round or square cross-sections are not susceptible to lateral torsional buckling. However, lateral torsional buckling should be considered in the case of rectangular sections bent about their major axis. A beam stability factor is provided by the NDS to modify the allowable stresses in cases of bending of rectangular members. The modification of the allowable bending stress for rectangular sign posts may be neglected when the post depth does not exceed the post thickness by more than 50 mm (2 in.).

Cantilever members such as those covered by this Section (i.e., posts and poles) are usually subjected to small axial compressive loads. Therefore, a reduction in the compressive stress to account for the slenderness of the member is not considered. Slenderness should be considered for members subjected to appreciable axial compressive loads. As conservative criteria, slenderness effects should be considered when f_c/F_c is greater than 0.02. A column stability factor is provided by the NDS to modify the allowable compressive stresses for the effects of member slenderness.

Table 9-6—Allowable Stresses and Effective Modulus of Elasticity

	Posts	Poles
Allowable bending stress	$F'_b = (C_M)F_b$	$F'_b = (C_u)F_b$
Allowable tension stress (parallel to grain)	$F'_t = (C_M)F_t$	—
Allowable compression stress (perpendicular to grain)	$F'_{cp} = (C_M)F_{cp}$	$F'_{cp} = (C_u)F_{cp}$
Allowable compression stress (parallel to grain)	$F'_c = (C_M)F_c$	$F'_c = (C_u)F_c$
Allowable shear stress (parallel to grain)	$F'_v = (C_M)F_v$	$F'_v = (C_u)F_v$
Effective modulus of elasticity	$E' = (C_M)E$	$E' = (1.0)E$

Notes:

[a] C_M is the wet service factor defined in Article 9.8.1 for posts. See Article 9.8.2 for poles.

[b] C_u is the untreated factor defined in Article 9.8.3.

[c] The F_b, F_t, and F_c values for posts shall include applicable adjustments from the size-adjustment factors given in Table 9-3.

9.8—ADJUSTMENT FACTORS

9.8.1—Wet Service Factor for Posts C_M

Basic design values from Tables 9-3 and 9-4 shall be used for the design of posts under dry service conditions, where the moisture content in use will be a maximum of 19 percent. If the moisture content of the post is expected to exceed 19 percent, the basic design values shall be multiplied by the wet service factor, C_M, specified in Table 9-7.

Table 9-7—Wet Service Factor, C_M

Post Size	F_b	F_t	F_v	F_{cp}	F_c	E
Posts 100 × 100 mm (4 × 4 in.) through 100 × 150 mm (4 × 6 in.)	0.85	1.00	0.97	0.67	0.80	0.90
Posts 125 × 125 mm (5 × 5 in.) and larger	1.00	1.00	1.00	0.67	0.91	1.00

Notes:

[a] When $F_b \leq$ 7.93 MPa (1150 psi), C_M = 1.0 for posts 100 × 100 mm (4 × 4 in.) through 100 × 150 mm (4 × 6 in.).

[b] When $F_c \leq$ 5.17 MPa (750 psi), C_M = 1.0 for F_c of posts 100 × 100 mm (4 × 4 in.) through 100 × 150 mm (4 × 6 in.).

[c] For Southern Pine posts 125 × 125 mm (5 × 5 in.) and larger, C_M = 1.0 for all basic design values.

9.8.2—Wet Service Use for Poles

Basic design values in Table 9-5 shall be used for the design of poles under wet service conditions, and their use is conservative for dry service conditions.

9.8.3—Untreated Factor for Poles C_u

When poles are air dried or kiln dried only prior to pressure treatment, C_u shall be taken as follows:

- C_u shall be taken as 1.18, for Southern Pine and
- C_u shall be taken as 1.11, for other species.

C9.8.3

Basic design values listed in Table 9-5 are provided for treated poles, and they include an adjustment to compensate for strength reductions due to steam conditioning or boultonizing prior to treatment. When poles are air dried or kiln dried only prior to treatment, the untreated factor can be used.

Poles are often ordered by class number only; therefore, the exact seasoning or conditioning process of the supplied poles may not be known. The *Specifications and Dimensions for Wood Poles* provides general information on seasoning and conditioning processes for various species of poles.

9.9—TAPERED COMPRESSION MEMBERS

For the calculations of compression stresses and buckling loads of tapered compression members with rectangular cross-section, the representative dimension, d, for each face of the member shall be derived as follows:

$$d = d_t + \left(d_b - d_t\right)\left[a - 0.15\left(1 - \frac{d_t}{d_b}\right)\right] \tag{9-1}$$

For the design of tapered members with round cross-section, the representative diameter D shall be derived using Eq. 9-1 by replacing d_b by D_b, and d_t by D_t.

Calculations of the computed compression stress parallel to grain, f_c, shall be based on the representative dimensions of d, for rectangular members, or the representative diameter, D, for round members. In addition, f_c at any cross-section of the tapered member shall not exceed the basic compression design value parallel to grain from Tables 9-3, 9-4, or 9-5 multiplied by all applicable adjustment factors specified in Table 9-6.

C9.9

Eq. 9-1 provides the cross-section dimensions of rectangular or round members at the critical section for compression. The support condition parameter a in Eq. 9-1 accounts for the particular support conditions at the ends of the tapered member. The value a = 0.70 is valid only for tapered cantilever posts and poles.

The values of d_b and D_b are at the groundline section of the member. The taper of a pole may be approximated from the tabulated values for minimum circumference at top of pole and at 1.83 m (6 ft) from the butt.

9.10—STRESS CALCULATIONS

Axial, shear, and bending stresses shall be computed based on the linear elastic theory.

9.10.1—Shear Stress

For shear stresses, the maximum induced shear stress parallel to the grain shall be used.

Calculations of F'_v in Table 9-6 may be increased by $^1/_3$ for Group II and Group III load combinations, as allowed in Section 3, "Loads." Calculations of F'_v in Table 9-6 shall be decreased by ten percent for Group I load combination to account for creep and other long-term effects.

Members subjected to shear stress shall be proportioned so that:

$$\frac{f_v}{F'_v} \leq 1.0 \qquad (9\text{-}2)$$

C9.10.1

For shear stress calculations, the maximum shear stress parallel to grain should be used. The general expression to compute the maximum shear stress parallel to grain is:

$$f_v = \frac{VQ}{Ib} \text{ (MPa, psi)} \qquad (C9\text{-}1)$$

The average shear stress should not be used for wood beams because the shear strength parallel to the grain (i.e., usually parallel to the longitudinal axis of the member) is much less than the shear strength across the grain (Breyer, 1993).

For a rectangular bending member of width *b*, and depth *d*, Eq. C9-1 may be expressed as:

$$f_v = \frac{3V}{2bd} \text{ (MPa, psi)} \qquad (C9\text{-}2)$$

and, for a solid round bending member of diameter *D*, Eq. C9-1 may be expressed as:

$$f_v = \frac{16V}{3\pi D^2} \text{ (MPa, psi)} \qquad (C9\text{-}3)$$

9.11—COMBINED STRESSES

Members subjected to combined bending and compression shall be proportioned to meet the limitations of Article 9.11.1. Calculations of F'_c and F'_b in Table 9-6 may be increased by $^1/_3$ for Group II and Group III load combinations, as allowed in Section 3, "Loads." Calculations of F'_c and F'_b in Table 9-6 shall be decreased by ten percent for Group I load combinations to account for creep and other long-term effects.

9.11.1—Combined Bending and Axial Compression

Members subjected to a combination of bending and axial compression shall be proportioned so that:

$$\left(\frac{f_c}{F_c'}\right)^2 + \frac{f_b}{F_b'\left(1-\frac{f_c}{F_{cE}}\right)} \le 1.0 \quad (9\text{-}3)$$

where:

$$F_{cE} = \frac{0.75K_{cE}E'}{\left(\frac{L_e}{D}\right)^2} \quad (9\text{-}4)$$

for round members, and:

$$F_{cE} = \frac{K_{cE}E'}{\left(\frac{L_e}{d}\right)^2} \quad (9\text{-}5)$$

calculated in the plane of bending for rectangular members. K_{cE} shall be 0.3 for posts and timber poles.

The effective column length L_e may be taken as $2.1L_u$ for cantilever members.

C9.11.1

The term:

$$\frac{1}{1-\frac{f_c}{F_{cE}}}$$

is a factor that accounts for secondary bending moments that occur as a result of the P-delta effects.

For biaxial bending in rectangular members, the second term of Eq. 9-3 can be substituted by:

$$\frac{f_{bx}}{F_{bx}'\left(1-\frac{f_c}{F_{cEx}}\right)} + \frac{f_{by}}{F_{by}'\left(1-\frac{f_c}{F_{cEy}}\right)}$$

The term:

$$\frac{1}{1-\frac{f_c}{F_{cE}}}$$

is included to be used for conditions where secondary bending effects are significant. Secondary bending effects can normally be neglected for posts of roadside signs.

9.12—CONNECTIONS

Mechanical connections and their installation shall conform to the requirements of the NDS.

C9.12

Components at mechanical connections, including the wood members, connecting elements, and fasteners, should be proportioned so that the design strength equals or exceeds the required strength for the loads acting on the structure. The strength of the connected wood components should be evaluated considering the net section, eccentricity, shear, tension perpendicular to grain, and other factors that may reduce component strength.

For Group II and Group III load combinations, the nominal design strengths of mechanical connections may be increased by $^1/_3$. For Group I load combination, the nominal design strengths of mechanical connections shall be decreased by ten percent. Load duration factors given in the NDS shall not be used.

9.13—MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR WOOD PRODUCTS

Wood products shall be protected from biological attack of wood-destroying organisms, such as decay, fungi, insects, and marine borers. Minimum accepted preservative treatments for wood posts and poles shall be in accordance to Articles 9.13.1 and 9.13.2, respectively.

C9.13

Preservative treatments are those that guard wood against decay, insects, and marine borers. The three basic types of pressure preservatives are:

- Creosote and creosote solutions,
- Oilborne treatments (e.g., pentachlorophenol and others dissolved in hydrocarbon solvents), and
- Waterborne oxides.

There are a number of variations on each of these categories. The choice of the preservative treatment and the required retention are specified by the standards from the American Wood Preservers' Association (AWPA).

The use and disposal of some wood preservatives may be controlled or restricted by various local, state, or governmental agencies.

9.13.1—Preservative Treatment for Posts

Posts shall be pressure treated in accordance with the standards C2 and C14 in the *Book of Standards.*

C9.13.1

The following are some of the preservatives for protection of wood posts:

- Creosote, creosote–coal tar, or creosote petroleum,
- Pentachlorophenol (PA),
- Ammonical copper arsenate (ACA),
- Aammonical copper zinc arsenate (ACZA), and
- Chromated copper arsenate (CCA).

AWPA standards C2 and C14 cover preservative treatments and specify minimum retention for the listed preservatives for different species of wood posts.

9.13.2—Preservative Treatment for Poles

Round poles shall be pressure treated in accordance with standards C4 and C14 in the *Book of Standards.*

C9.13.2

The following are some of the preservatives for protection of round timber poles:

- Creosote,
- Pentachlorophenol (PA),
- Ammonical copper arsenate (ACA),
- Aammonical copper zinc arsenate (ACZA), and
- Chromated copper arsenate (CCA).

Creosote–coal tar and creosote petroleum are not recommended for round timber poles. AWPA standards C4 and C14 cover preservative treatments and specify minimum retention for the listed preservatives for different species of round timber poles.

9.14—REFERENCES

AF&PA. 1997. *Design Values for Wood Construction, Supplement to the 1997 Edition—National Design Specification*. American Forest and Paper Association, Washington, DC.

AF&PA. 1997. *National Design Specification for Wood Construction*, ANSI/AF&PA NDS-1997. American Forest and Paper Association, Washington, DC.

American Institute of Timber Construction. 1994. *Timber Construction Manual*, Fourth Edition. John Wiley and Sons, New York, NY.

ANSI. 1992. *Specifications and Dimensions for Wood Poles*, ANSI O5.1-1992. American National Standard Institute, New York, NY.

ASTM. 1997. "Standard Methods for Establishing Design Stresses for Round Timber Piles," ASTM D 2899-86. In *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASTM. 1997. "Standard Practice for Establishing Allowable Properties for Visually Graded Dimension Lumber from In-Grade Test of Full-Size Specimens," ASTM D 1990-91. In *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASTM. 1997. "Standard Practice for Establishing Structural Grades and Related Allowable Properties for Visually Graded Lumber," ASTM D 245-93. In *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASTM. 1997. "Standard Specification and Test Method for Establishing Recommended Design Stresses for Round Timber Construction Poles," ASTM D 3200-74 (Reapproved 1994). In Annual Book of ASTM Standards. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASTM. 1997. "Standard Specifications for Round Timber Piles," ASTM D 25-91. In *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASTM. 1997. "Standard Test Methods for Establishing Clear Wood Strength Values," ASTM D 2555-88. In *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA.

AWPA. 1996. *Book of Standards 1996*. American Wood Protection Association (formerly the American Wood Preservers' Association), Birmingham, AL.

Breyer, Donald E. 1993. *Design of Wood Structures*. McGraw–Hill, New York, NY.

SECTION 10: SERVICEABILITY REQUIREMENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 10:

SERVICEABILITY REQUIREMENTS

10.1—SCOPE

This Section provides serviceability requirements for support structures.

10.2—DEFINITIONS

Camber—The condition of the horizontal support being arched.

Quadri-Chord Truss—A horizontal member composed of four longitudinal chords connected by bracing.

Rake—To slant or incline from the vertical.

Tri-Chord Truss—A horizontal member composed of three longitudinal chords connected by bracing.

10.3—NOTATION

d_{DL}	=	deflection at free end of horizontal support under dead load (mm, in.)
d_P	=	deflection at tip of vertical support under dead load from horizontal cantilevered support (mm, in.)
d_{PDL}	=	deflection at free end of horizontal support caused by slope at the tip of the vertical support (mm, in.)
d_{TOTAL}	=	total dead load deflection at free end of horizontal support (mm, in.)
E	=	modulus of elasticity (MPa, psi)
H	=	height of vertical support (mm, in.)
I	=	moment of inertia of vertical support (mm^4, $in.^4$)
L	=	distance between supports for an overhead bridge structure; distance from vertical support to free end for horizontal cantilevered support (mm, in.)
M	=	moment caused by dead loads applied to the vertical support at the connection of the horizontal support (N-mm, lb-in.)
r	=	radius of gyration (mm, in.)
u	=	prefabricated camber (slope) in the horizontal cantilevered arm (mm/mm, in./in.)

10.4—DEFLECTION

Highway support structures of all materials should be designed to have adequate structural stiffness that will result in acceptable serviceability performance. Deflections for specific structure types shall be limited as provided in Articles 10.4.1 and 10.4.2. Permanent camber for specific structure types shall be provided per Article 10.5.

C10.4

The deflection limits that are set by these Specifications are to serve two purposes. The first purpose is to provide an aesthetically pleasing structure under dead load conditions. The second purpose is to provide adequate structural stiffness that will result in acceptable serviceability performance under applied loads.

10.4.1—Overhead Bridge Supports for Signs and Traffic Signals

For overhead bridge monotube and truss structures supporting sign and traffic signals, the maximum vertical deflection of the horizontal support resulting from Group I load combination with the addition of ice loads (i.e., dead load plus ice) shall be limited to $L/150$, where L is the span length. For those locations where ice loading is not applicable, only deflection resulting from Group I load combination shall be used.

C10.4.1

Research was sponsored by the Arizona Department of Transportation (Ehsani et al. 1984; Martin et al. 1985) to determine an appropriate deflection limitation for steel monotube bridge support structures. This research included field tests and analytical studies using computer modeling. The studies investigated the static and dynamic behavior of monotube bridge sign support structures. It determined a dead load deflection limit that should be specified for monotube bridge structures. The 1989 Interim Specification was revised to limit deflection to the span divided by 150 for dead and ice load applications based on this research, replacing the previous limit of $d^2/400$ in feet, where d was the depth of the sign panel in feet. A later study (Lundgren, 1989) indicated that because the deflection criterion was an aesthetic limitation, it could be increased to the span divided by 100; however, no additional work has been found to justify changing the deflection limit to a more liberal value. Although this study considered only steel members, the deflection limit has been generalized for other materials because aesthetics was the governing consideration.

Other types of overhead bridge sign supports (i.e., two-chord, tri-chord, and quadri-chord trusses) generally have higher stiffness than the monotube type. It is believed that this dead load deflection limit of the span divided by 150 (i.e., $L/150$) could be adopted as a conservative limit for those types of overhead bridge sign and traffic signal support structures made with two-chord, tri-chord, or quadri-chord trusses.

10.4.2—Cantilevered Supports for Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals

10.4.2.1—Vertical Supports

The horizontal deflection limits for vertical supports, such as street lighting poles, traffic signal structures, and sign structures, shall be as follows:

- Under Group I load combination (dead load only), the deflection at the top of vertical supports with transverse load applications shall be limited to 2.5 percent of the structure height; and
- Under Group I load combination (dead load only), the slope at the top of vertical supports with moment load applications shall be limited to 30 mm/m (0.35 in./ft).

For luminaire support structures under Group II load combination (i.e., dead load and wind), deflection shall be limited to 15 percent of the structure height.

Deflections shall be computed by usual methods or equations for elastic deflections. For prestressed concrete members, the effects of cracking and reinforcement on member stiffness shall be considered.

C10.4.2.1

The dead load deflection and slope limitations were developed based on aesthetic considerations. The 2.5 percent deflection limit was developed for transverse load applications, such as strain pole applications, where a dead load caused by span-wire tension could cause unsightly deflection. The horizontal linear displacement at the top of the structure is measured in relation to a tangent to the centerline at the structure's base. The slope limitation of 30 mm/m (0.35 in./ft), which is equivalent to an angular rotation of 1º 40′, was initially developed for street lighting poles with a single mast arm, where the mast arm applied a concentrated dead load moment that could also cause unsightly deflections. It is measured by the angular rotation of the centerline at the top of the structure in relation to the centerline at its base. The concentrated moment loads result from the effect of eccentric loads of single or unbalanced multiple horizontally mounted arm members and their appurtenances.

The 15 percent deflection limitation for group II load combination is not a serviceability requirement, but it constitutes a safeguard against the design of highly flexible structures. It is intended mainly for high-level lighting poles. The deflections are calculated without the applied safety factor in Article 4.8.2, and second-order effects are normally considered in the analysis.

10.4.2.2—Horizontal Supports

Adequate stiffness shall be provided for the horizontal supports of cantilevered sign and traffic signal structures that will result in acceptable serviceability performance.

Galloping and truck gust-induced vibration deflections of cantilevered single-arm sign supports and traffic signal arms should not be excessive so as to result in a serviceability problem, as specified in Article 11.8.

C10.4.2.2

No dead load deflection limit is prescribed for horizontal supports of cantilevered sign and traffic signal structures. Stiffness requirements are determined by the Designer. Structures are typically raked or the horizontal supports are cambered such that the deflection at the end of the arm is above a horizontal reference line for the unloaded configuration, which provides the appearance of a structure that is not overloaded. Camber requirements for cantilevered sign and traffic signal structures are provided in Article 10.5.

10.4.3—Vibration

Structural supports that are susceptible to damaging vibrations and not designed for fatigue in accordance with Section 11 should be equipped with appropriate damping or energy-absorbing devices. All aluminum overhead bridge sign and traffic signal support structures should be equipped with appropriate damping or energy-absorbing devices to prevent significant wind-induced vibration in the structure, both before and after installation of sign panels or traffic signals.

C10.4.3

A mitigation device is not always mandatory if the structure is designed for fatigue in accordance with Section 11. Should the structure exhibit vibrations in the field, a mitigation device may be considered.

Section 11, "Fatigue Design," contains provisions for designing various structural supports for fatigue using design loads that are a result of wind-induced vibrations and truck gust-induced vibrations.

Vibrations may be caused by wind-induced loads, such as galloping or vortex shedding. Moving traffic may induce gusts on nearby structures, such as a large truck passing under overhead sign structures. Vibrations may also be a result of support movement, such as those found on bridges and elevated roadways.

For street-lighting poles, reducing vibration that is caused by wind or traffic-induced vibration of elevated roadways is important to reduce the potential for fatigue damage and to increase lamp life (Van Dusen, 1965 and 1968). Mitigation by using a Stockbridge-type damper is suggested by Burt and LeBlanc (1974) and by Dusel and Bon (1986). Vibrations caused by wind have been controlled in street lighting poles with the impact damper (Minor, 1973).

The Stockbridge-type vibration damper has been used to control vibration of aluminum overhead bridge sign structures (Lengel and Sharp 1969). For steel traffic signal structures with mast arms, research (McDonald et al., 1995) has suggested avoiding configurations that are susceptible to galloping, such as rigidly mounted traffic signals. Before these configurations (e.g., signals with an articulated connection to the arm) are used on a given structure, their acceptability from a traffic control perspective should be investigated. Permanent horizontal plane sign panels have been shown to reduce or eliminate galloping vibrations for some installations with rigidly mounted traffic signals, as discussed in Article 11.7.1.

Steel and aluminum overhead bridge sign and/or traffic signal support structures and cantilevered sign supports may be subject to damaging vibrations and oscillations when sign panels and/or traffic signals are not in place during erection or maintenance of the structure. To avoid these vibrations and oscillations, considerations should be given to providing temporary damping devices attached to the structure, such as blank sign panels.

10.4.3.1—Requirements for Individual Truss Members

The Specifications' limitations for *L*/*r* ratios should be adequate to prevent excessive vibration.

C10.4.3.1

Vibration in truss structures can occur in individual members. Slender tension members and redundant diagonals are particularly susceptible to vibration. Resistance to local vibrations can be provided by increasing member stiffness, thereby reducing flexural deflection and raising vibration response frequencies.

10.5—CAMBER

Permanent camber equal to *L*/1000, where *L* is the unsupported length of the horizontal support, shall be provided in addition to dead load camber for overhead sign and traffic signal structures.

C10.5

The camber requirement applies to overhead bridge sign and traffic signal supports and to sign and traffic signal supports with a horizontal cantilevered support. The permanent camber can aid in compensating for deflections resulting from foundation rotation. The permanent camber is in addition to the dead load camber, which compensates for dead load deflection.

Camber is the condition of the horizontal support being arched. Permanent camber is the condition of the horizontal support being arched upward after application of the dead loads. The horizontal support should be arched upward such that the vertical distance from the attachment point(s) to location of maximum deflection for the horizontal support is equal to *L*/1000. The permanent camber provides the visual effect of a low-pitched arch, which is more appealing than a horizontal support that is deflected downward.

Permanent camber can be provided by raking the vertical support and/or cambering the horizontal support. Raking the vertical support involves installing the vertical support with an initial deflection. The vertical support is raked during construction by adjusting the leveling nuts at the base of the structure. Raking the vertical support may result in the anchor bolts not being perpendicular to the support's base plate, and it can result in anchor bolt nuts not being properly tightened against the base plate. Cambering the horizontal support involves fabricating the support with an initial slope or curvature.

The following procedure may be used to calculate the camber required to compensate for dead load deflection in a cantilevered sign support structure with a monotube vertical support.

The cantilevered horizontal support should be cambered during fabrication, such that the permanent camber after application of dead load is a minimum of *L*/1000 above the horizontal plane, where *L* is the span of the horizontal support.

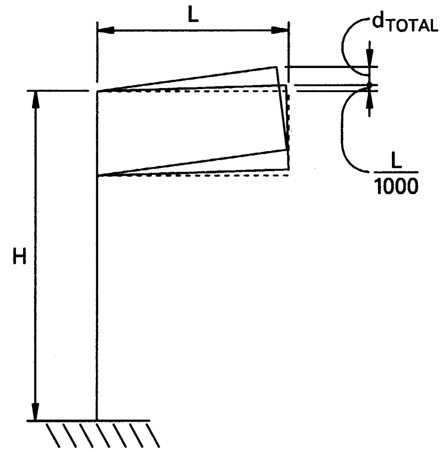


Figure 10-1—Camber of Cantilevered Sign Structure

The following procedure shown is for a nontapered vertical support with a constant stiffness.

Determine horizontal deflection at tip of vertical support due to dead load (deflection of vertical support not shown in figure):

$$d_P = \frac{MH^2}{2EI} \qquad \text{(C10-1)}$$

Determine deflection of horizontal support due to slope at tip of vertical support:

$$d_{PDL} = \frac{2d_P}{H} L \qquad \text{(C10-2)}$$

Determine deflection of horizontal support due to dead load acting on the horizontal support, d_{DL}.

Calculate total dead load deflection at the tip of the cantilevered arm:

$$d_{TOTAL} = d_{DL} + d_{PDL} \qquad \text{(C10-3)}$$

Determine the slope u of the prefabricated camber in the horizontal support, such that:

$$u = \frac{1}{1000} + \frac{d_{DL}}{L} + \frac{d_{PDL}}{L} \qquad \text{(C10-4)}$$

This slope will result in a final deflection at the end of the horizontal arm equal to $L/1000$ above the horizontal plane.

Provide fabrication details indicating the prefabricated camber (slope) u in horizontal support.

The above procedure does not consider the raking of the vertical support.

A slope for some cantilevered horizontal supports has been provided by tilting the arm by a small angle at its base connection.

When the total dead load deflection is very small, some vertical supports have been raked to compensate for the full deflection of the cantilevered horizontal support.

10.6—REFERENCES

Brockenbrough, R. L. 1970. *Suggested Structural Design Criteria for Steel Lighting Standards*, US Steel Report 6, Project No. 57-019-450(6), January 1970.

Burt, J. O., and E. J. LeBlanc. 1974. *Luminaire Vibration Suppression Study,* Report No. 75. Louisiana Department of Highways, Baton Rouge, LA; Federal Highway Administration, Washington, DC.

Dusel, J. P., and V. D. Bon. 1986. *Effectiveness of Stockbridge-Type Vibration Dampers on Reducing Fatigue Failures of Luminaires and Mast Arms on Lighting Standards Installed on Bridges.* California Department of Transportation, Sacramento, CA.

Ehsani, M. R., S. K. Chakrabarti, and R. Bjorhovde. 1984. *Static and Dynamic Behavior of Monotube Span-Type Sign Structures*, Report No. FHWA/AZ-84/194-I. Arizona Department of Transportation, Phoenix, AZ.

Lengel, J. S., and M. L. Sharp. 1969. "Vibration and Damping of Aluminum Overhead Sign Structures," *Highway Research Record*, Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC, No. 259.

Lundgren, H. R. 1989. *Evaluation of Monotube Sign Support Structure*, Report No. FHWA-AZ89-829. Arizona Department of Transportation, Phoenix, AZ.

Martin, K. A., M. R. Ehsani, and R. Bjorhovde. 1985. *Field Testing of Monotube Sign Support Structures*, Report No. FHWA/AZ-86/237. Arizona Department of Transportation, Phoenix, AZ.

McDonald, J. R., K. C. Mehta, W. W. Oler, and N. Pulipaka. 1995. *Wind Load Effects on Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals Structures*, Report No. 1303-F. Wind Engineering Research Center, Texas Department of Transportation, Lubbock, TX.

Minor, R. C. 1973. "Damp Destructive Pole Vibration," *Electric Light and Power*. December 1973.

Van Dusen, H. A. 1968. "Street Lighting Luminaire Vibration," *Illuminating Engineering*. February 1968.

Van Dusen, H. A. and D. Wandler. 1965. "Street Lighting Pole Vibration Research," *Illuminating Engineering.* November 1965.

SECTION 11: FATIGUE DESIGN

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 11:

FATIGUE DESIGN

11.1—SCOPE

This Section contains provisions for the fatigue design of cantilevered and noncantilevered steel and aluminum structural supports for highway signs, luminaires, and traffic signals.

C11.1

This Section focuses on fatigue, which is defined herein as the damage that may result in fracture after a sufficient number of stress fluctuations. It is based on NCHRP Report 412, *Fatigue Resistant Design of Cantilevered Signal, Sign and Light Supports* (Kaczinski et al., 1998), NCHRP Report 469, *Fatigue-Resistant Design of Cantilever Signal, Sign, and Light Supports* (Dexter and Ricker, 2002), and NCHRP Report 494, *Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals* (Fouad et al., 2003).

11.2—DEFINITIONS

Constant-Amplitude Fatigue Limit (CAFL)—Nominal stress range below which a particular fatigue detail can withstand an infinite number of repetitions without fatigue failure.

Fatigue—Damage resulting in fracture caused by stress fluctuations.

In-Plane Bending—Bending in-plane for the main member (column). At the connection of an arm or arm's built-up box to a vertical column, the in-plane bending stress range in the column is a result of galloping or truck-induced gust loads on the arm and/or arm's attachments.

Limit State Wind Load Effect—A specifically defined load criteria.

Load-Bearing Attachment—Attachment to main member where there is a transverse load range in the attachment itself in addition to any primary stress range in the main member.

Nonload-Bearing Attachment—Attachment to main member where the only significant stress range is the primary stress in the main member.

Out-of-Plane Bending—Bending out-of-plane for the main member (column). At the connection of an arm or arm's built-up box to a vertical column, the out-of-plane bending stress range in the column is a result of natural wind-gust loads on the arm and the arm's attachments.

Pressure Range—Pressure due to a limit state wind load effect that produces a stress range.

Stress Range—The algebraic difference between extreme stresses used in fatigue design.

Yearly Mean Wind Velocity—Long-term average of the wind speed for a given area.

11.3—NOTATION

b	=	flat-to-flat width of a multisided section (m, ft)
C_d	=	appropriate drag coefficient from Section 3, "Loads," for given attachment or member
d	=	diameter of a circular section (m, ft)
D	=	inside diameter of exposed end of female section for slip-joint splice (mm, in.)
E	=	modulus of elasticity (MPa, ksi)
f_n	=	first natural frequency of the structure (cps)
f_{n1}	=	first modal frequency (cps)
$(F)_n$	=	fatigue strength (CAFL) (MPa, ksi)
g	=	acceleration of gravity (9810 mm/s^2, 386 in./s^2)
H	=	effective weld throat (mm, in.)

I = moment of inertia (mm^4, $in.^4$)
I_{avg} = average moment of inertia for a tapered pole (mm^4, $in.^4$)
I_{top} = moment of inertia at top of tapered pole (mm^4, $in.^4$)
I_{bottom} = moment of inertia at bottom of tapered pole (mm^4, $in.^4$)
I_F = importance factors applied to limit state wind load effects to adjust for the desired level of structural reliability
L = length of the pole (Article 11.7.2) (mm, in.)
L = slip-splice overlap length (example 1 of Figure 11-1) (mm, in.)
L = length of reinforcement at handhole (example 13 of Figure 11-1) (mm, in.)
L = length of longitudinal attachment (examples 12, 14, and 15 of Figure 11-1) (mm, in.)
P_G = galloping-induced vertical shear pressure range (Pa, psf)
P_{NW} = natural wind gust pressure range (Pa, psf)
P_{TG} = truck-induced gust pressure range (Pa, psf)
P_{VS} = vortex shedding-induced pressure range (Pa, psf)
r = radius of chord or column (mm, in.)
R = transition radius of longitudinal attachment (mm, in.)
S_n = Strouhal number
S_R = nominal stress range of the main member or branching member (MPa, ksi)
t = thickness (mm, in.)
t_b = wall thickness of branching member (mm, in.)
t_c = wall thickness of main member (column) (mm, in.)
t_p = plate thickness of attachment (mm, in.)
V_c = critical wind velocity for vortex shedding (m/s, mph)
V_{mean} = yearly mean wind velocity for a given area (m/s, mph)
V_T = truck speed for truck-induced wind gusts (m/s, mph)
W = weight of the luminaire (N, k)
w = weight of the pole per unit length (N/mm, k/in.)
β = damping ratio
α = angle of transition taper of longitudinal attachment (example 14 of Figure 11-1) (°)
α = ovalizing parameter for bending in the main member (note b of Table 11-2)
ΔF = constant amplitude fatigue limit stress range (MPa, ksi)
$\Delta\sigma$ = indication of stress range in member

11.4—APPLICABLE STRUCTURE TYPES

Design for fatigue shall be required for the following type structures:

a. overhead cantilevered sign structures,

b. overhead cantilevered traffic signal structures,

c. high-level, high-mast lighting structures,

d. overhead noncantilevered sign structures, and

e. overhead noncantilevered traffic signal structures.

C11.4

NCHRP Report 412 is the basis for the fatigue design provisions for cantilevered structures. NCHRP Report 494 is the basis for the fatigue design provisions for noncantilevered support structures. The fatigue design procedures outlined in this Section may be applicable to steel and aluminum structures in general. However, only specific types of structures are identified for fatigue design in this Article. Common lighting poles and roadside signs are not included because they are smaller structures and normally have not exhibited fatigue problems. An exception would be square lighting poles, as they have exhibited poor fatigue performance. Square cross-sections have been much more prone to fatigue problems than round cross-sections. Caution should be exercised regarding the use of square lighting poles even when a fatigue design is performed. The provisions of this Section are not applicable for the design of span-wire (strain) poles.

11.5—DESIGN CRITERIA

Cantilevered and noncantilevered support structures shall be designed for fatigue to resist each of the applicable equivalent static wind load effects specified in Article 11.7, and modified by the appropriate importance factors given in Article 11.6. Stresses due to these loads on all components, mechanical fasteners, and weld details shall be limited to satisfy the requirements of their respective detail categories within the constant-amplitude fatigue limits (CAFL) provided in Article 11.9.

C11.5

Accurate load spectra and life prediction techniques for defining fatigue loadings are generally not available. The assessment of stress fluctuations and the corresponding number of cycles for all wind-induced events (lifetime loading histogram) is practically impossible. With this uncertainty, the design of sign, luminaire, and traffic signal supports for a finite fatigue life becomes impractical. Therefore, an *infinite life* fatigue design approach is recommended and is considered sound practice. Fatigue stress limits are based on the CAFL. The CAFL values provided in Table 11-3 are approximately the same as those given in Table 10.3.1A of the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*.

An *infinite life* fatigue approach was developed in an experimental study that considered several critical welded details (Fisher et al. 1993). The *infinite life* fatigue approach can be used when the number of wind load cycles expected during the lifetime of the structures is greater than the number of cycles at the CAFL. This is particularly the case for structural supports where the wind load cycles in 25 years or greater lifetimes are expected to exceed 100 million cycles, whereas typical weld details reach the CAFL at 10 to 20 million cycles.

Fatigue-critical details are designed with nominal stress ranges that are below the appropriate CAFL. To assist designers, typical support structure details based on AASHTO and American Welding Society (AWS) fatigue design categories are provided in Table 11-2 and Figure 11-1. The above-referenced details were produced based on a review of state departments of transportation standard drawings and manufacturers' literature. This list should not be considered a complete set of all possible connection details, but rather it is intended to remove the uncertainty associated with applying the provisions of the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges* to the fatigue design of support structures. Choice of details improves the fatigue resistance of these structures, and it can eliminate or reduce increases in member size required for less fatigue-resistant details.

The notes for Table 11-2 specify the use of Stress Category K_2. This stress category corresponds to the category for cyclic punching shear stress in tubular members specified by the *AWS Structural Welding Code D1.1—Steel*. Fatigue design for the column's wall under this condition may require sizes of the built-up box connection or column wall thicknesses that are excessive for practical use. For this occurrence, an adequate fatigue-resistant connection other than the built-up box shown in Figure 11-1 should be considered.

Fatigue testing has shown the advantage of ring stiffeners that completely encircle a pole relative to a built-up box connection. For built-up box connections, it is recommended that the width of the box be the same as the diameter of the column (i.e., the sides of the box are tangent to the sides of the column).

Regarding full-penetration groove-welded tube-to-transverse plate connections, NCHRP Report 412 did not fully investigate the effects from the possible use of additional reinforcing fillet welds. Additional research and testing of these types of detail configurations are needed to support future updates of this Section.

Stress categories in Table 11-2 for weld terminations at the end of longitudinal stiffeners were based, in part, on assigned categories for attachments in the AASHTO Bridge Specifications. Fatigue testing of many fillet-welded tube-to-longitudinal stiffener connections indicates that the angle of intersection, the transitional radius to the pole wall, the length of the stiffener, and the ratio of the stiffener thickness to pole wall thickness, for example, all have effects on the fatigue life of the detail. Some tube-to-stiffener connections have a potential to develop high stress concentrations in the tube wall in the vicinity of the weld termination at the end of longitudinal stiffeners. Testing on poles having wall thickness less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) indicates that longitudinal stiffeners yielded little or no improvement of the fatigue performance of the connection (Koenigs et al., 2003). Until further research can give reliable estimates of the effects of stiffeners, all welds terminating at the end of longitudinal stiffeners shall be classified as Stress Category E′.

Equal leg welds in socket connections have been shown by fatigue testing to have a fatigue strength less than Stress Category E′. The fatigue strength of a socket-welded connection can be improved by using an unequal leg fillet weld.

11.6—FATIGUE IMPORTANCE FACTORS

An importance factor, I_F, that accounts for the risk of hazard to traffic and damage to property shall be applied to the limit state wind-load effects specified in Article 11.7. Importance factors for traffic signal, sign, and luminaire support structures exposed to the four wind load effects are presented in Table 11-1.

C11.6

Importance factors are introduced into the Specifications to adjust the level of structural reliability of cantilevered and noncantilevered support structures. Importance factors should be determined by the Owner. For combined structures, where traffic signals and luminaires are joined, the use of the more conservative importance factor is recommended.

The importance categories and importance factors (rounded to the nearest 0.05) are results from NCHRP Reports 469 and 494. Three categories of support structures are presented in Table 11-1. Structures classified as Category I present a high hazard in the event of failure and should be designed to resist rarely occurring wind loading and vibration phenomena. It is recommended that all structures without effective mitigation devices on roadways with a speed limit in excess of 60 km/hr (35 mph) and average daily traffic (ADT) exceeding 10 000 or average daily truck traffic (ADTT) exceeding 1000 should be classified as Category I structures. ADT and ADTT are for one direction regardless of the number of lanes.

Structures without mitigation devices may be classified as Category I if any of the following apply:

1. Cantilevered sign structures with a span in excess of 16 m (50 ft) or high-mast towers in excess of 30 m (100 ft),
2. Large sign structures, both cantilevered and noncantilevered, including variable message signs, and
3. Structures located in an area that is known to have wind conditions that are conducive to vibration.

Structures should be classified as Category III if they are located on roads with speed limits of 60 km/hr (35 mph) or less. Structures that are located such that a failure will not affect traffic may be classified as Category III.

All structures not explicitly meeting the Category I or Category III criteria should be classified as Category II.

Maintenance and inspection programs should be considered integral to the selection of the fatigue importance category.

There are many factors that affect the selection of the fatigue category and engineering judgment is required.

Table 11–1—Fatigue Importance Factors, I_F

Fatigue Category			Importance Factor, I_F			
			Galloping	Vortex Shedding	Natural Wind Gusts	Truck-Induced Gusts
Cantilevered	I	Sign	1.0	x*	1.0	1.0
		Traffic Signal	1.0	x*	1.0	1.0
		Lighting	x	1.0	1.0	x
	II	Sign	0.70	x*	0.85	0.90
		Traffic Signal	0.65	x*	0.80	0.85
		Lighting	x	0.65	0.75	x
	III	Sign	0.40	x*	0.70	0.80
		Traffic Signal	0.30	x*	0.55	0.70
		Lighting	x	0.30	0.50	x
Noncantilevered	I	Sign	x	x*	1.0	1.0
		Traffic Signal	x	x*	1.0	1.0
	II	Sign	x	x*	0.85	0.90
		Traffic Signal	x	x*	0.80	0.85
	III	Sign	x	x*	0.70	0.80
		Traffic Signal	x	x*	0.55	0.70

Notes:

x Structure is not susceptible to this type of loading.

* Overhead cantilevered and noncantilevered sign and traffic signal components are susceptible to vortex shedding prior to placement of the signs and traffic signal heads, i.e., during construction.

11.7—FATIGUE DESIGN LOADS

To avoid large-amplitude vibrations and to preclude the development of fatigue cracks in various connection details and at other critical locations, cantilevered and noncantilevered support structures shall be designed to resist each of the following applicable limit state equivalent static wind loads acting separately. These loads shall be used to calculate nominal stress ranges near fatigue-sensitive connection details described in Article 11.5 and deflections for service limits described in Article 11.8.

In lieu of using the equivalent static pressures provided in this Specification, a dynamic analysis of the structure may be performed using appropriate dynamic load functions derived from reliable data.

C11.7

Cantilevered and noncantilevered support structures are exposed to several wind phenomena that can produce cyclic loads. Vibrations associated with these cyclic forces can become significant. NCHRP Report 412 identified galloping, vortex shedding, natural wind gusts, and truck-induced gusts as wind-loading mechanisms that can induce large-amplitude vibrations and/or fatigue damage in cantilevered traffic signal, sign, and light support structures. NCHRP Report 494 identified natural wind gusts and truck-induced gusts as wind-loading mechanisms that can induce large-amplitude vibrations and/or fatigue damage in noncantilevered traffic signal and sign support structures. The amplitude of vibration and resulting stress ranges are increased by the low levels of stiffness and damping possessed by many of these structures. In some cases, the vibration is only a serviceability problem because motorists cannot clearly see the mast arm attachments or are concerned about passing under the structures. In other cases, where deflections may or may not be considered excessive, the magnitudes of stress ranges induced in these structures have resulted in the development of fatigue cracks at various connection details including the anchor bolts.

The wind-loading phenomena specified in this section possess the greatest potential for creating large-amplitude vibrations in cantilevered support structures. In particular, galloping and vortex shedding are aeroelastic instabilities that typically induce vibrations at the natural frequency of the structure (i.e., resonance). These conditions can lead to fatigue failures in a relatively short period of time.

Design pressures for four fatigue wind-loading mechanisms are presented as an equivalent static wind pressure range, or a shear stress range in the case of galloping. These pressure (or shear stress) ranges should be applied as prescribed by static analysis to determine stress ranges near fatigue-sensitive details. In lieu of designing for galloping or vortex-shedding limit state fatigue wind load effects, mitigation devices may be used as approved by the Owner. Mitigation devices are discussed in NCHRP Reports 412 and 469.

11.7.1—Galloping

Overhead cantilevered sign and traffic signal support structures shall be designed for galloping-induced cyclic loads by applying an equivalent static shear pressure vertically to the surface area, as viewed in normal elevation of all sign panels and/or traffic signal heads and backplates rigidly mounted to the cantilevered horizontal support. The vertical shear pressure range shall be equal to the following:

$$P_G = 1000 I_F \quad \text{(Pa)} \tag{11-1}$$

$$P_G = 21 I_F \quad \text{(psf)}$$

In lieu of designing to resist periodic galloping forces, cantilevered sign and traffic signal structures may be erected with effective vibration mitigation devices. Vibration mitigation devices should be approved by the Owner, and they should be based on historical or research verification of its vibration damping characteristics.

Alternatively, for traffic signal structures, the Owner may choose to install approved vibration mitigation devices if structures exhibit a galloping problem. The mitigation devices should be installed as quickly as possible after the galloping problem appears.

The Owner may choose to exclude galloping loads for the fatigue design of overhead cantilevered sign support structures with quadri-chord (i.e., four-chord) horizontal trusses.

C11.7.1

Galloping, or Den Hartog instability, results in large-amplitude, resonant oscillations in a plane normal to the direction of wind flow. It is usually limited to structures with nonsymmetrical cross-sections, such as sign and traffic signal structures with attachments to the horizontal cantilevered arm. Structures without attachments to the cantilevered horizontal support are not susceptible to galloping-induced wind load effects.

The results of wind tunnel (Kaczinski et al., 1998) and water tank (McDonald et al., 1995) testing, as well as the oscillations observed on cantilevered support structures in the field, are consistent with the characteristics of the galloping phenomena. These characteristics include the sudden onset of large-amplitude, across-wind vibrations that increase with increases in wind velocity. Galloping is typically not caused by wind applied to the support structure, but rather applied to the attachments to the horizontal cantilevered arm, such as signs and traffic signals.

The geometry and orientation of these attachments, as well as the wind direction, directly influence the susceptibility of cantilevered support structures to galloping. Traffic signals are more susceptible to galloping when configured with a backplate. In particular, traffic signal attachments configured with or without a backplate are more susceptible to galloping when subject to flow from the rear. Galloping of sign attachments is independent of aspect ratio and is more prevalent with wind flows from the front of the structure.

By conducting wind tunnel tests and analytical calibrations to field data and wind tunnel test results, an equivalent static vertical shear of 1000 Pa (21 psf) was determined for the galloping phenomenon. This vertical shear range should be applied to the entire frontal area of each of the sign and traffic signal attachments in a static analysis to determine stress ranges at critical connection details. For example, if a 2.5 × 3.0 m (8 × 10 ft) sign panel is mounted to a horizontal mast arm, a static force of $7500 \times I_F$, N ($1680 \times I_F$, lb) should be applied vertically at the area centroid of the sign panel. A study (Florea et al, 2007) has shown that the equivalent static force that an attachment experiences depends on the location along the arm where it is attached. Equivalent static pressures or vertical shear ranges applied to the frontal area of each sign or traffic signal attachment are greater towards the tip of the mast arm. The specification does not consider the effect of the attachment location when calculating the galloping force. Further testing is necessary to verify this and to suggest location-specific ranges.

A pole with multiple horizontal cantilevered arms may be designed for galloping loads applied separately to each individual arm, and need not consider galloping simultaneously occurring on multiple arms.

Overhead cantilevered sign support structures with quadri-chord horizontal trusses do not appear to be susceptible to galloping because of their inherent stiffness.

Two possible means exist to mitigate galloping-induced oscillations in cantilevered support structures. The dynamic properties of the structure or the aerodynamic properties of the attachments can be adequately altered to mitigate galloping. The installation of a device providing positive aerodynamic damping can be used to alter the structure's response from the aerodynamic effects on the attachments.

A method of providing positive aerodynamic damping to a traffic signal structure involves installing a sign blank mounted horizontally and directly above the traffic signal attachment closest to the tip of the mast arm. This method has been shown to be effective in mitigating galloping-induced vibrations on traffic signal support structures with horizontally mounted traffic signal attachments (McDonald et al., 1995). For vertically mounted traffic signal attachments, a sign blank mounted horizontally near the tip of the mast arm has mitigated large-amplitude galloping vibrations occurring in traffic signal support structures. This sign blank is placed adjacent to a traffic signal attachment, and a separation exists between the sign blank and the top of the mast arm. In both cases, the sign blanks are required to provide a sufficient surface area for mitigation to occur. However, the installation of sign blanks may influence the design of structures for truck-induced wind gusts by increasing the projected area on a horizontal plane. NCHRP Reports 412 and 469 provide additional discussion on this possible mitigation device and on galloping susceptibility and mitigation.

11.7.2—Vortex Shedding

High-level, high-mast lighting structures shall be designed to resist vortex shedding-induced loads for critical wind velocities less than approximately 20 m/s (45 mph).

The critical wind velocity, V_c (m/s, mph), at which vortex shedding lock-in can occur may be calculated as follows:

For circular sections:

$$V_c = \frac{f_n d}{S_n} \quad \text{(m/s)} \tag{11-2}$$

$$V_c = 0.68 \frac{f_n d}{S_n} \quad \text{(mph)}$$

For multisided sections:

$$V_c = \frac{f_n b}{S_n} \quad \text{(m/s)} \tag{11-3}$$

$$V_c = 0.68 \frac{f_n b}{S_n} \quad \text{(mph)}$$

where f_n is a natural frequency of the structure (cps); d and b are the diameter and flat-to-flat width of the horizontal mast arm or pole shaft for circular and multisided sections (m, ft), respectively; and S_n is the Strouhal number. The Strouhal number shall be taken as *0.18* for circular sections, *0.15* for multisided sections, and *0.11* for square or rectangular sections. For a tapered pole, d and b are the average diameter and width.

The equivalent static pressure range to be used for the design of vortex shedding-induced loads shall be:

$$P_{vs} = \frac{0.613 V_c^2 C_d I_F}{2\beta} \quad \text{(Pa)} \tag{11-4}$$

$$P_{vs} = \frac{0.00256 V_c^2 C_d I_F}{2\beta} \quad \text{(psf)}$$

where V_c is expressed in m/s (mph); C_d is the drag coefficient as specified in Section 3, "Loads," which is based on the critical wind velocity V_c; and β is the damping ratio, which may be estimated as 0.005.

The equivalent static pressure range P_{VS} shall be applied transversely to poles (i.e., horizontal direction) and horizontal mast arms (i.e., vertical direction).

In lieu of designing to resist periodic vortex-shedding forces, effective vibration mitigation devices may be used.

C11.7.2

The shedding of vortices on alternate sides of a member may result in oscillations in a plane normal to the direction of wind flow. Typical natural frequencies and member dimensions preclude the possibility of most cantilevered sign and traffic signal support structures from being susceptible to vortex shedding-induced vibrations.

NCHRP Report 469 shows that poles with tapers exceeding 0.0117 m/m (0.14 in./ft) can also experience vortex shedding in lighting structures. Observations and studies indicate that tapered poles can experience vortex shedding in second or third mode vibrations and that those vibrations can lead to fatigue problems. Procedures to consider higher mode vortex shedding on tapered poles are demonstrated in NCHRP Report 469.

Structural elements exposed to steady, uniform wind flows shed vortices in the wake behind the element in a pattern commonly referred to as a von Karmen vortex street. When the frequency of vortex shedding approaches one of the natural frequencies of the structure, usually the first mode (or higher modes as demonstrated in NCHRP Report 469), significant amplitudes of vibration can be caused by a condition termed lock-in. The critical velocity at which lock-in occurs is defined by the Strouhal relationship:

$$V_c = \frac{f_n d}{S_n} \tag{C11-1}$$

For the first mode of vibration, a lower bound wind speed can be established for traffic signal and sign structures. Although vortices are shed at low wind velocities for wind speeds less than 5 m/s (16 fps, 11 mph), the vortices do not impart sufficient energy to excite most structures. Typical natural frequencies and member diameters for sign and traffic signal support structures result in critical wind velocities well below the 5 m/s (16 fps, 11 mph) threshold for the occurrence of vortex shedding. Because of extremely low levels of damping, vortex shedding may significantly excite resonant vibration. At wind speeds greater than about 20 m/s (65 fps, 45 mph), enough natural turbulence is generated to disturb the formation of vortices. Because V_c is relatively low, the largest values of C_d for the support may be conservatively used.

Horizontal arms may be susceptible to vortex shedding before sign and signal heads are attached, i.e., during construction. Although possible, tests (Kaczinski et al., 1998; McDonald et al., 1995) have indicated that the occurrence of vortex shedding from attachments to cantilevered sign and traffic signal support structures is not critical. These attachments are more susceptible to galloping-induced vibrations.

Calculation of the first modal frequency for simple pole structures (i.e., without mast arms) can be computed using:

$$f_{n1} = \frac{1.75}{\pi}\sqrt{\frac{EIg}{wL^4}} \tag{C11-2}$$

(without luminaire mass)

$$f_{n1} = \frac{1.732}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{EIg}{WL^3 + 0.236wL^4}} \tag{C11-3}$$

(with luminaire mass)

where W is the weight of the luminaire (N, k), w is the weight of the pole per unit length (N/mm, k/in.), g is the acceleration of gravity (9810 mm/s^2, 386 in./s^2), L is the length of the pole (mm, in.), and I is the moment of inertia of the pole (mm^4, in.^{4}). For tapered poles, I_{avg} is substituted for I, where:

$$I_{avg} = \frac{I_{top} + I_{bottom}}{2} \tag{C11-4}$$

I_{top} is the moment of inertia at the tip of the pole and I_{bottom} is the moment of inertia at the bottom of the pole.

The first modal frequency for poles with mast arms, however, is best accomplished by a finite element-based modal analysis. The mass of the luminaire/mast arm attachments shall be included in the analysis to determine the first mode of vibration transverse to the wind direction. Poles that may not have the attachments installed immediately shall be designed for this worst-case condition. Because the natural frequency of a structure without an attached mass is typically higher than those with an attachment, the resulting critical wind speed and vortex shedding pressure range are also higher for this situation.

11.7.3—Natural Wind Gust

Cantilevered and noncantilevered overhead sign, overhead traffic signal, and high-level lighting supports shall be designed to resist an equivalent static natural wind gust pressure range of:

$$P_{NW} = 250 C_d I_F \quad \text{(Pa)} \tag{11-5}$$

$$P_{NW} = 5.2 C_d I_F \quad \text{(psf)}$$

where C_d is the appropriate drag coefficient based on the yearly mean wind velocity of 5 m/s (11.2 mph) specified in Section 3, "Loads," for the considered element to which the pressure range is to be applied. If Eq. C11-5 is used in place of Eq. 11-5, C_d may be based on the location-specific yearly mean wind velocity V_{mean}. The natural wind gust pressure range shall be applied in the horizontal direction to the exposed area of all support structure members, signs, traffic signals, and/or miscellaneous attachments. Designs for natural wind gusts shall consider the application of wind gusts for any direction of wind.

The design natural wind gust pressure range is based on a yearly mean wind speed of 5 m/s (11.2 mph). For locations with more detailed wind records, particularly sites with higher wind speeds, the natural wind gust pressure may be modified at the discretion of the Owner.

C11.7.3

Because of the inherent variability in the velocity and direction, natural wind gusts are the most basic wind phenomena that may induce vibrations in wind-loaded structures. The equivalent static natural wind gust pressure range specified for design was developed with data obtained from an analytical study of the response of cantilevered support structures subject to random gust loads (Kaczinski et al., 1998).

Because V_{mean} is relatively low, the largest values of C_d for the support may be conservatively used.

This parametric study was based on the 0.01 percent exceedance for a yearly mean wind velocity of 5 m/s (11.2 mph), which is a reasonable upper bound of yearly mean wind velocities for most locations in the country. There are locations, however, where the yearly mean wind velocity is larger than 5 m/s (11.2 mph). For installation sites with more detailed information regarding yearly mean wind speeds (particularly sites with higher wind speeds), the following equivalent static natural wind gust pressure range shall be used for design:

$$P_{NW} = 250 C_d \left(\frac{V_{mean}}{5 m/s} \right)^2 I_F \quad \text{(Pa)} \tag{C11-5}$$

$$P_{NW} = 5.2 C_d \left(\frac{V_{mean}}{11.2 mph} \right)^2 I_F \quad \text{(psf)}$$

The largest natural wind gust loading for an arm or pole with a single arm is from a wind gust direction perpendicular to the arm. For a pole with multiple arms, such as two perpendicular arms, the critical direction for the natural wind gust is usually not normal to either arm. The design natural wind gust pressure range shall be applied to the exposed surface areas seen in an elevation view orientated perpendicular to the assumed wind gust direction.

11.7.4—Truck-Induced Gust

Cantilevered and noncantilevered overhead sign and traffic signal support structures shall be designed to resist an equivalent static truck gust pressure range of

$$P_{TG} = 900 C_d I_F \quad \text{(Pa)} \tag{11-6}$$

$$P_{TG} = 18.8 C_d I_F \quad \text{(psf)}$$

where C_d is the drag coefficient based on the truck speed of 30 m/s (65 mph) from Section 3, "Loads," for the considered element to which the pressure range is to be applied. If Eq. C11-6 is used in place of Eq. 11-6, C_d should be based on the considered truck speed V_T. The pressure range shall be applied in the vertical direction to the horizontal support as well as the area of all signs, attachments, walkways, and/or lighting fixtures projected on a horizontal plane. This pressure range shall be applied along any 3.7-m (12-ft) length to create the maximum stress range, excluding any portion of the structure not located directly above a traffic lane. The equivalent static truck pressure range may be reduced for locations where vehicle speeds are less than 30 m/s (65 mph).

The magnitude of applied pressure range may be varied depending on the height of the horizontal support and the attachments above the traffic lane. Full pressure shall be applied for heights up to and including 6 m (20 ft), and then the pressure may be linearly reduced for heights above 6 m (20 ft) to a value of zero at 10 m (33 ft).

The truck-induced gust loading shall be excluded unless required by the Owner for the fatigue design of overhead traffic signal support structures.

C11.7.4

The passage of trucks beneath support structures may induce gust loads on the attachments mounted to the horizontal support of these structures. Although loads are applied in both horizontal and vertical directions, horizontal support vibrations caused by forces in the vertical direction are most critical. Therefore, truck gust pressures are applied only to the exposed horizontal surface of the attachment and horizontal support.

A pole with multiple horizontal cantilever arms may be designed for truck gust loads applied separately to each individual arm and need not consider truck gust loads applied simultaneously to multiple arms.

Recent vibration problems on sign structures with large projected areas in the horizontal plane, such as variable message sign (VMS) enclosures, have focused attention on vertical gust pressures created by the passage of trucks beneath the sign.

The design pressure calculated from Eq. 11-6 is based on a truck speed of 30 m/s (65 mph). For structures installed at locations where the posted speed limit is much less than 30 m/s (65 mph), the design pressure may be recalculated based on this lower truck speed. The following equation may be used:

$$P_{TG} = 900 C_d \left(\frac{V_T}{\frac{30m}{s}} \right)^2 I_F \quad \text{(Pa)} \tag{C11-6}$$

$$P_{TG} = 18.8 C_d \left(\frac{V_T}{65mph} \right)^2 I_F \quad \text{(psf)}$$

where V_T is the truck speed in m/s (mph).

The given truck-induced gust loading shall be excluded unless required by the Owner for the fatigue design of overhead traffic signal structures. Many traffic signal structures are installed on roadways with negligible truck traffic. In addition, the typical response of traffic signal structures from truck-induced gusts is significantly overestimated by the design pressures prescribed in this article (NCHRP Report 469). This has been confirmed in a recent study (Albert et al, 2007) involving full-scale field tests where strains were monitored on cantilevered traffic signal structures. Over 400 truck events were recorded covering a variety of truck types and vehicle speeds; only 18 trucks produced even a detectable effect on the cantilevered traffic signal structures and the strains were very small relative to those associated with the design pressures in this Article.

11.8—DEFLECTION

Galloping and truck- gust-induced vertical deflections of cantilevered single-arm sign supports and traffic signal arms and noncantilevered supports should not be excessive so as to result in a serviceability problem, because motorists cannot clearly see the attachments or are concerned about passing under the structures.

C11.8

Because of the low levels of stiffness and damping inherent in cantilevered single mast arm sign and traffic signal support structures, even structures that are adequately designed to resist fatigue damage may experience excessive vertical deflections at the free end of the horizontal mast arm. The primary objective of this provision is to minimize the number of motorist complaints.

NCHRP Report 412 recommends that the total deflection at the free end of single-arm sign supports and all traffic signal arms be limited to 200 mm (8 in.) vertically, when the equivalent static design wind effect from galloping and truck-induced gusts are applied to the structure. NCHRP Report 494 recommends applying the 200-mm (8-in.) vertical limit to noncantilevered support structures. Double-member or truss-type cantilevered horizontal sign supports were not required to have vertical deflections checked because of their inherent stiffness. There are no provisions for a displacement limitation in the horizontal direction.

11.9—FATIGUE RESISTANCE

The allowable CAFLs are provided in Table 11-3. A summary of the typical fatigue-sensitive connection details are presented in Table 11-2 and illustrated in Figure 11-1. Wind loads of Article 11.7 shall be considered in computing the fatigue stress range.

Unless noted in Table 11-2, the member cross-section adjacent to the weld toe shall be used to compute the nominal stress range.

C11.9

The CAFLs were established based on fatigue testing and the resistances were computed based on elastic section analysis, i.e., nominal values in the cross-section. Therefore, it is assumed that these resistances include effects of residual stresses due to fabrication, out-of-plane distortions, etc. At this time, only stress range due to wind is used; therefore, dead load effects may be neglected.

Residual stresses and anchor bolt pretension are generally not considered in the computations.

Table 11-2—Fatigue Details of Cantilevered and Noncantilevered Support Structures

Construction	Detail	Stress Category	Application	Example
Plain Members	1. With rolled or cleaned surfaces. Flame-cut edges with ANSI/AASHTO/AWS D5.1 (Article 3.2.2) smoothness of 1000 μ-in. or less.	*A*	—	—
	2. Slip-joint splice where *L* is greater than or equal to 1.5 diameters.	*B*	High-level lighting poles.	1
Mechanically Fastened Connections	3. Net section of fully tightened, high-strength (ASTM A 325, A 490) bolted connections.	*B*	Bolted joints.	2
	4. Net section of other mechanically fastened connections: a. Steel: b. Aluminum:	 *D* *E*	—	3
	5. Anchor bolts or other fasteners in tension; stress range based on the tensile stress area. Misalignments of less than 1:40 with firm contact existing between anchor bolt nuts, washers, and base plate.	*D*	Anchor bolts. Bolted mast-arm-to-column connections.	8, 16
	6. Connection of members or attachment of miscellaneous signs, traffic signals, etc. with clamps or U-bolts.	*D*	—	—
Holes and Cutouts	7. Net section of holes and cutouts.	*D*	Wire outlet holes. Drainage holes. Unreinforced handholes.	5

Continued on next page

Construction	Detail	Stress Category	Application	Example
Groove Welded Connections	8. Tubes with continuous full- or partial-penetration groove welds parallel to the direction of the applied stress.	*B′*	Longitudinal seam welds.	6
	9. Full-penetration groove-welded splices with welds ground to provide a smooth transition between members (with or without backing ring removed).	*D*	Column or mast arm butt-splices.	4
	10. Full-penetration groove-welded splices with weld reinforcement not removed (with or without backing ring removed).	*E*	Column or mast arm butt-splices.	4
	11. Full-penetration groove-welded tube-to-transverse plate connections with the backing ring attached to the plate with a full-penetration weld, or with a continuous fillet weld around interior face of backing ring. The thickness of the backing ring shall not exceed 10 mm (0.375 in.) when a fillet weld attachment to plate is used. Full-penetration groove-welded tube-to-transverse plate connections welded from both sides with backgouging (without backing ring).	*E*	Column-to-base-plate connections. Mast-arm-to-flange-plate connections.	5
	12. Full-penetration groove-welded tube-to-transverse plate connections with the backing ring not attached to the plate with a continuous full-penetration weld, or with a continuous interior fillet weld.	*E′*	Column-to-base-plate connections. Mast-arm-to-flange-plate connections.	5
Fillet-Welded Connections	13. Fillet-welded lap splices.	*E*	Column or mast arm lap splices.	3
	14. Members with axial and bending loads with fillet-welded end connections without notches perpendicular to the applied stress. Welds distributed around the axis of the member so as to balance weld stresses.	*E*	Angle-to-gusset connections with welds terminated short of plate edge. Slotted tube-to-gusset connections with coped holes (see note e).	2, 6
	15. Members with axial and bending loads with fillet-welded end connections with notches perpendicular to the applied stress. Welds distributed around the axis of the member so as to balance weld stresses.	*E′*	Angle-to-gusset connections. Slotted tube-to-gusset connections without coped holes.	2, 6
	16. Fillet-welded tube-to-transverse plate connections (see note j).	*E′*	Column-to-base-plate or mast-arm-to-flange-plate socket connections.	7, 8, 16
	17. Fillet-welded connections with one-sided welds normal to the direction of the applied stress.	*E′*	Built-up box mast-arm-to-column connections.	8, 16
	18. Fillet-welded mast-arm-to-column pass-through connections.	*E′* (See note f)	Mast-arm-to-column pass-through connections.	9

Continued on next page

Construction	Detail	Stress Category	Application	Example
	19. Fillet-welded T-, Y-, and K-tube-to-tube, angle-to-tube, or plate-to-tube connections.	(See notes a and b)	Chord-to-vertical or chord-to-diagonal truss connections (see note a). Mast-arm directly welded to column (see note b). Built-up box connection (see note b).	8, 10, 11
	25. Fillet-welded ring-stiffened box-to-tube connection.	(See note g)	Ring-stiffened built-up box connections.	16
Attachments	20. Longitudinal attachments with partial- or full-penetration groove welds, or fillet welds, in which the main member is subjected to longitudinal loading: L < 51 mm (2 in.): 51 mm (2 in.) ≤ L ≤ 12t and 102 mm (4 in.): L > 12t or 102 mm (4 in.) when t ≤ 25 mm (1 in.):	 C D E	Reinforcement at handholes.	13
	21. Longitudinal attachments with partial- or full-penetration groove welds, or fillet welds in which the main member is subjected to longitudinal loading.	E'	Weld terminations at ends of longitudinal stiffeners (see notes h and i).	12, 14
	22. Detail 22 has been intentionally removed.			
	23. Transverse load-bearing fillet-welded attachments where t ≤ 13 mm (0.5 in.) and the main member is subjected to minimal axial and/or flexural loads. (When t > 13 mm [0.5 in.], see note d.)	C	Longitudinal stiffeners welded to base plates.	12, 14
	24. Transverse load-bearing longitudinal attachments with partial- or full-penetration groove welds or fillet welds, in which the nontubular main member is subjected to longitudinal loading and the weld termination embodies a transition radius that is ground smooth: $R > 51\,\text{mm}\,(2\,\text{in.})$ $R \leq 51\,\text{mm}\,(2\,\text{in.})$	 D E (See note c)	Gusset-plate-to-chord attachments.	15

Notes:

[a] Stress Category ET with respect to stress in branching member provided that $r/t \leq 24$ for the chord member. When $r/t > 24$, then the fatigue strength equals:

$$\left(F\right)_n = \left(\Delta F\right)_n^{ET} \times \left(\frac{24}{\frac{r}{t}}\right)^{0.7}$$

where:

$\left(\Delta F\right)_n^{ET}$

is the CAFL for Category ET.
Stress Category E with respect to stress in chord.

[b] Stress Category ET with respect to stress in branching member.
Stress Category K_2 with respect to stress in main member (column) provided that: $r/t_c \leq 24$ for the main member.

When $r/t_c > 24$, then the fatigue strength equals:

$$(F)_n = (\Delta F)_n^{K2} \times \left(\frac{24}{\frac{r}{t_c}} \right)^{0.7}$$

where:

$$(\Delta F)_n^{K2}$$

is the CAFL for Category K_2.

The nominal stress range in the main member equals $(S_R)_{\,main\ member} = (S_R)_{\,branching\ member}\,(t_b/t_c)\,\alpha$
where t_b is the wall thickness of the branching member, t_c is the wall thickness of the main member (column), and α is the ovalizing parameter for the main member equal to 0.67 for in-plane bending and equal to 1.5 for out-of-plane bending in the main member. $(S_R)_{\,branching\ member}$ is the calculated nominal stress range in the branching member induced by fatigue design loads. (See commentary of Article 11.5.)

The main member shall also be designed for Stress Category E using the elastic section of the main member and moment just below the connection of the branching member.

c First check with respect to the longitudinal stress range in the main member per the requirements for longitudinal attachments. The attachment must then be separately checked with respect to the transverse stress range in the attachment per the requirements for transverse load-bearing longitudinal attachments.

d When $t > 13\ mm$ (0.5 in.), the fatigue strength shall be the lesser of Category C or the following:

$$(\Delta F) = (\Delta F)_n^c \times \left(\frac{0.094 + 1.23\frac{H}{t_p}}{t_p^{\frac{1}{6}}} \right)(\text{MPa}) \qquad (\Delta F) = (\Delta F)_n^c \times \left(\frac{0.0055 + 0.72\frac{H}{t_p}}{t_p^{\frac{1}{6}}} \right)(\text{ksi})$$

where $(\Delta F)_n^c$

is the CAFL for Category C, H is the effective weld throat (mm, in.), and t_p is the attachment plate thickness (mm, in.).

e The diameter of coped holes shall be the greater of 25 mm (1 in.), twice the gusset plate thickness, or twice the tube thickness.

f In addition to checking the branching member (mast arm), the main member (column) shall be designed for Stress Category E using the elastic section of the main member and moment just below the connection of the branching member (mast arm).

g Stress Category E′ with respect to stress in branching member (ring-stiffened built-up box connection). The main member shall be designed for Stress Category E using the elastic section of the main member and moment just below the connection of the branching member.

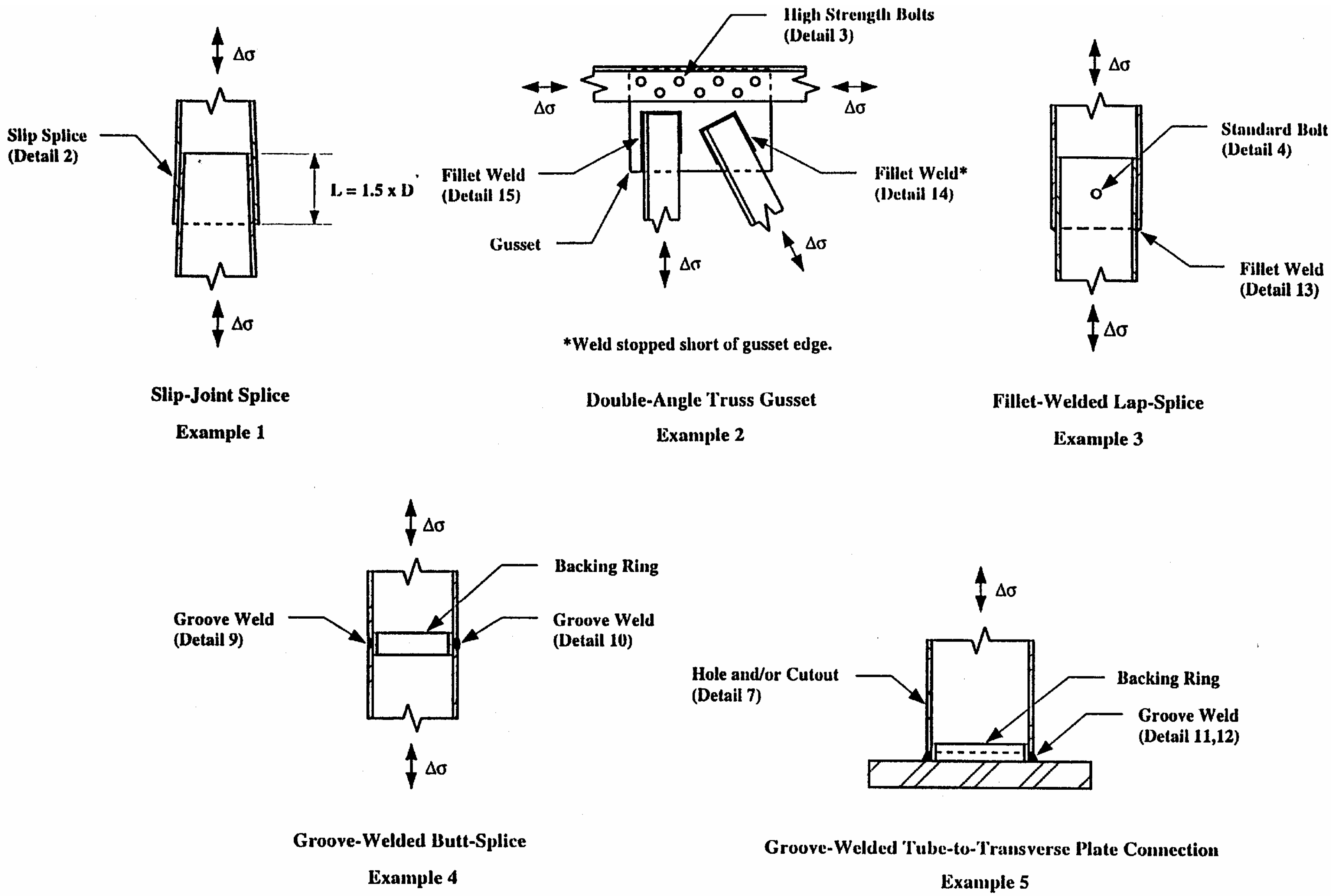
h Only longitudinal stiffeners with lengths greater than 102 mm (4 in.) are applicable for Detail 21. On column-to-base-plate or mast-arm-to-flange plate socket connections having a wall thickness greater than 6 mm (0.25 in.) that have exhibited satisfactory field performance, the use of stiffeners having a transition radius or taper with the weld termination ground smooth may be designed at a higher stress category with the approval of the Owner. Under this exception, the Owner shall establish the stress category to which the detail shall be designed. See commentary for Article 11.5.

i Nondestructive weld inspection should be used in the vicinity of the weld termination of longitudinal stiffeners. Grinding of weld terminations to a smooth transition with the tube face is not allowed in areas with fillet welds or partial-penetration welds connecting the stiffener to the tube. Full-penetration welds shall be used in areas where grinding may occur. See commentary for Article 11.5.

j Fillet welds for socket connections (Detail 16) shall be unequal leg welds, with the long leg of the fillet weld along the column or mast arm. The termination of the longer weld leg should contact the shaft's surface at approximately a 30º angle.

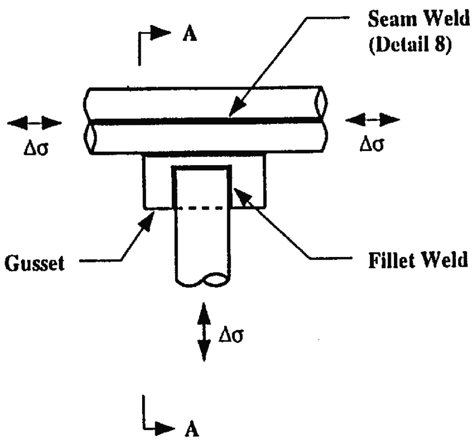
Table 11-3—Constant-Amplitude Fatigue Limits

Detail Category	Steel		Aluminum	
	MPa	ksi	MPa	ksi
A	165	24	70	10.2
B	110	16	41	6.0
B′	83	12	32	4.6
C	69	10	28	4.0
D	48	7	17	2.5
E	31	4.5	13	1.9
E′	18	2.6	7	1.0
ET	8	1.2	3	0.44
K_2	7	1.0	2.7	0.38



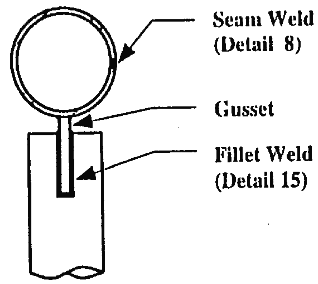
Continued on next page

Figure 11-1—Illustrative Examples



Slotted Tube-to-Gusset Connection

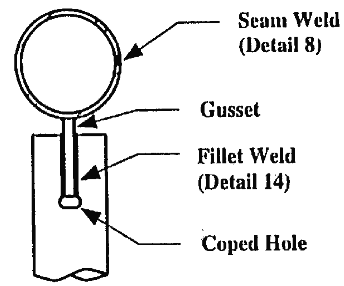
Example 6



Section A-A

Slotted Tube-to-Gusset Connection

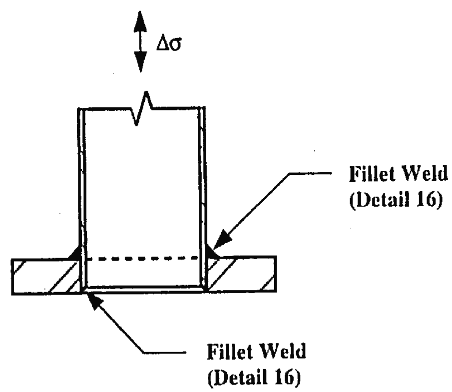
Example 6



Section A-A

Slotted Tube-to-Gusset Connection

Example 6

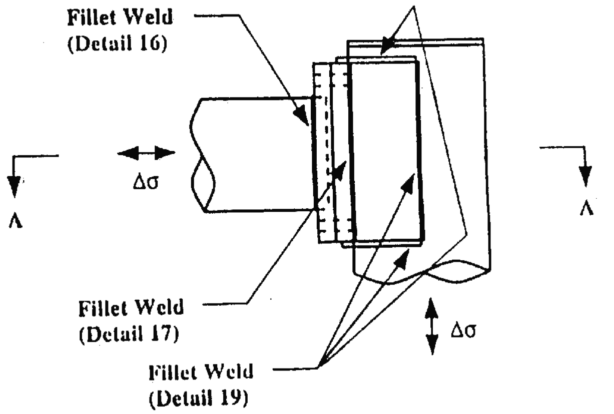


Fillet-Welded Socket Connection

Example 7

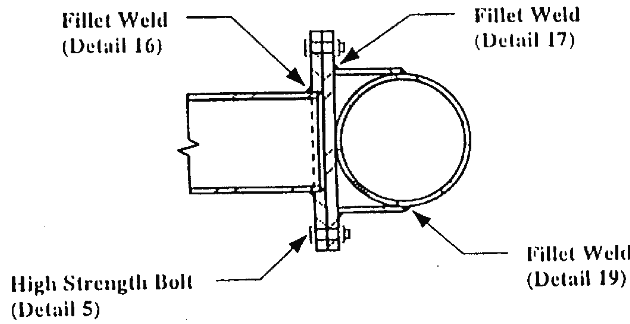
Continued on next page

Figure 11-1—Illustrative Examples—*Continued*



Fillet-Welded Mast-Arm-to-Column Connection
(Built-Up Box)

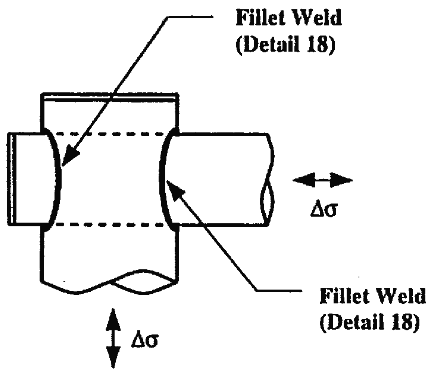
Example 8



Section A-A

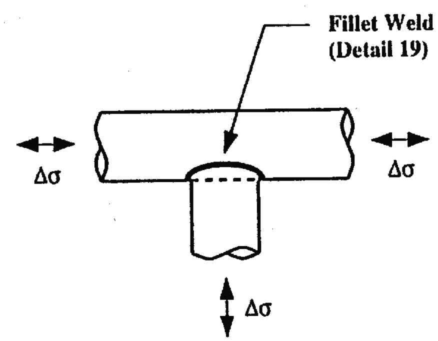
Fillet-Welded Mast-Arm-to-Column Connection
(Built-Up Box)

Example 8



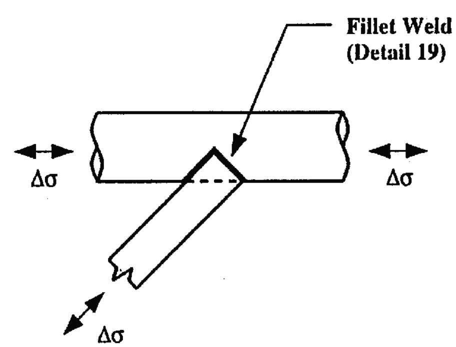
Fillet-Welded Tube-to-Tube Column Pass-Through Connection

Example 9



Fillet-Welded Tube-to-Tube Connection

Example 10

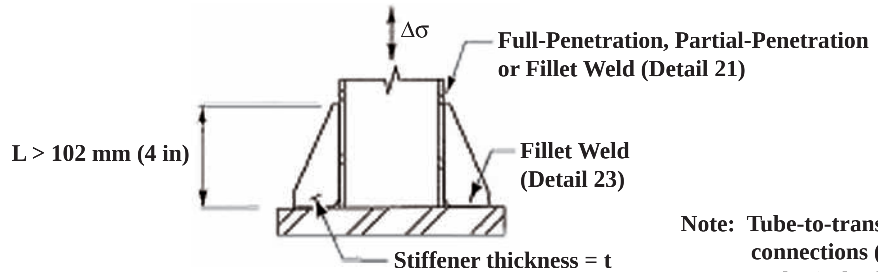


Fillet-Welded Angle-to-Tube Connection

Example 11

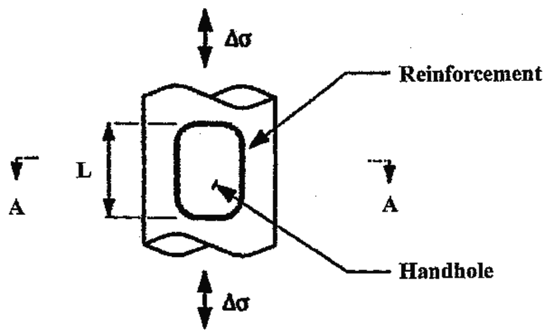
Continued on next page

Figure 11-1—Illustrative Examples—*Continued*



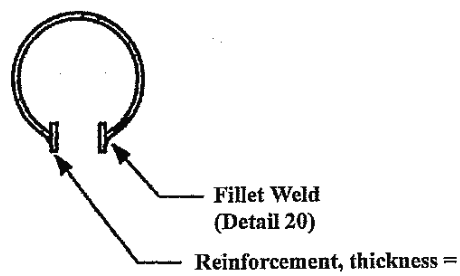
Note: Tube-to-transverse plate connections (Details 11, 12, and 16) checked using combined moment of inertia of tube and stiffeners

Longitudinal Attachment
Example 12



Reinforced Handhole

Example 13



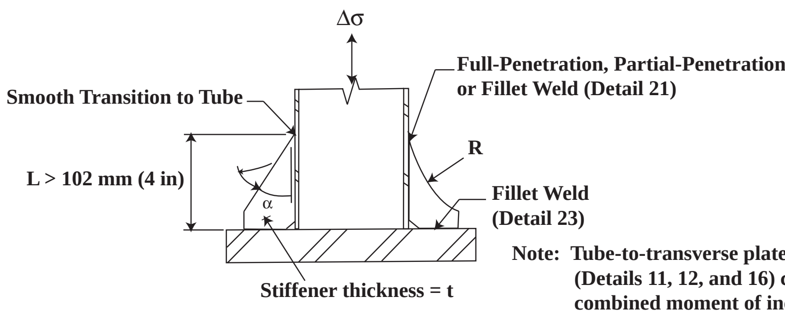
Section A-A

Reinforced Handhole

Example 13

Continued on next page

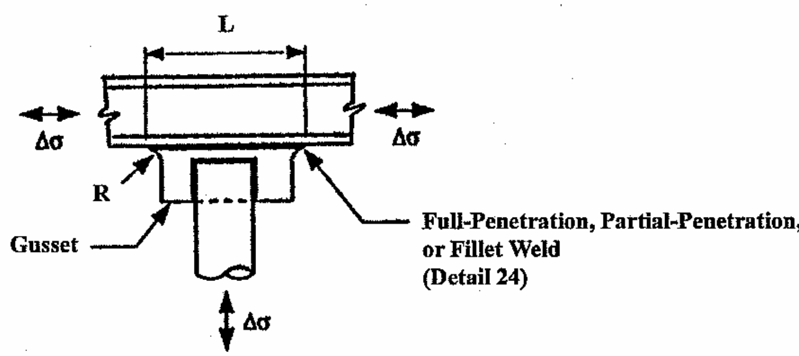
Figure 11-1—Illustrative Examples—*Continued*



Note: Tube-to-transverse plate connections (Details 11, 12, and 16) checked using combined moment of inertia of tube and stiffeners

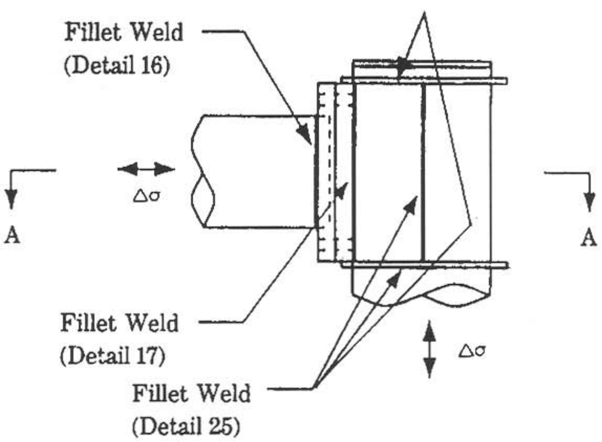
Longitudinal Attachment

Example 14



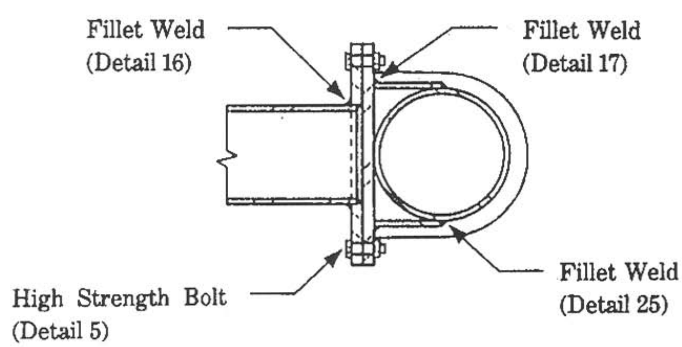
Transverse Load-Bearing Longitudinal Attachment

Example 15



Fillet–Welded Mast–Arm–to–Column Connection (Ring–Stiffened Built–Up Box)

Example 16



Section A–A

Fillet–Welded Mast–Arm–to–Column Connection (Ring–Stiffened Built–Up Box)

Example 16

Figure 11-1—Illustrative Examples—*Continued*

11.10—REFERENCES

AASHTO. 2002. *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*, 17th Edition, HB-17. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

Albert M. N., L. Manuel, K. H. Frank, and S. L. Wood. 2007. *Field Testing of Cantilevered Traffic Signal Structures under Truck-Induced Gust Loads*, Report No. FHWA/TX-07/4586-2. Center for Transportation Research, Texas Department of Transportation, Austin, Texas.

Amir, G., and A. Whittaker. 2000. "Fatigue-Life Evaluation of Steel Post Structures II: Experimentation," *Journal of Structural Engineering*. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY. Vol. 126, No. 3, Vol. 2 (March 2000), pp. 331–340.

Cook, R. A., D. Bloomquist, A. M. Agosta, and K. F. Taylor. 1996. *Wind Load Data for Variable Message Signs*, Report No. FL/DOT/RMC/0728-9488. University of Florida, Gainesville, FL. Report prepared for Florida Department of Transportation.

Creamer, B. M., K. G. Frank, and R. E. Klingner. 1979. *Fatigue Loading of Cantilever Sign Structures from Truck Wind Gusts*, Report No. FHWA/TX-79/10+209-1F. Center for Highway Research, Texas State Department of Highways and Public Transportation, Austin, TX.

Dexter, R. J., and K. W. Johns. 1998. *Fatigue-Related Wind Loads on Highway Support Structures: Advanced Technology for Large Structural Systems*, Report No. 98-03. Lehigh University, Bethlehem, PA.

Dexter, R., and M. Ricker. 2002. *Fatigue-Resistant Design of Cantilever Signal, Sign, and Light Supports*, NCHRP Report 469. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington DC.

Fisher, J. W., A. Nussbaumer, P. B. Keating, and B. T. Yen. 1993. *Resistance of Welded Details Under Variable Amplitude Long-Life Fatigue Loading*, NCHRP Report 354. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

Florea M. J., L. Manuel, K. H. Frank, and S. L. Wood. 2007. *Field Tests and Analytical Studies of the Dynamic Behavior and the Onset of Galloping in Traffic Signal Structures*, Report No. FHWA/TX-07/4586-1. Center for Transportation Research, Texas Department of Transportation, Austin, Texas.

Fouad, F., et al. 2003. *Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaries, and Traffic Signals*, NCHRP Report 494. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

Kaczinski, M. R., R. J. Dexter, and J. P. Van Dien. 1998. *Fatigue Resistant Design of Cantilevered Signal, Sign and Light Supports*, NCHRP Report 412. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

Koenigs, M. T., T. A. Botros, D. Freytag, and K. H. Frank. 2003. *Fatigue Strength of Signal Mast Arm Connections*, Report No. FHWA/TX-04/4178-2. Center for Transportation Research, Texas Department of Transportation, Austin, TX.

McDonald, J. R., et al. 1995. *Wind Load Effects on Signals, Luminaires and Traffic Signal Structures*, Report No. 1303-1F. Wind Engineering Research Center, Texas Tech University, Lubbock, TX.

SECTION 12: BREAKAWAY SUPPORTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 12:

BREAKAWAY SUPPORTS

12.1—SCOPE

Breakaway supports shall be provided based on the guidelines for use and location, as specified in Section 2, "General Features of Design." Breakaway supports shall be designed to yield, fracture, or separate when struck by a vehicle, thereby minimizing injury to the occupants of the vehicle and damage to the vehicle.

This Section addresses the structural, breakaway, and durability requirements for structures required to yield, fracture, or separate when struck by an errant vehicle. Structure types addressed include roadside sign, luminaire, call box, and pole top mounted traffic signal supports.

Breakaway devices shall meet the requirements herein and of NCHRP Report 350 *(Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features)*. Additional guidelines for breakaway devices may be found in the *Roadside Design Guide*.

C12.1

The term "breakaway support" refers to all types of sign, luminaire, call box, and pole top mounted traffic signal supports that are safely displaced under vehicle impact. Breakaway requirements of mailboxes and utility poles may be found in the *Roadside Design Guide*.

12.2—DEFINITIONS

Breakaway—A design feature that allows a sign, luminaire, call box, or pole top mounted traffic signal support to yield, fracture, or separate near ground level on impact.

Call Box—Telephone device placed on a short post to allow emergency calls by stranded motorists.

Manufacturer—Company that makes a finished component.

Frangible—A component readily or easily broken on impact.

Fuse Plate—A plate that provides structural reinforcement to a support post hinge to resist wind loads, but it will release or fracture on impact of a vehicle with the post.

Hinge—The weakened section of a support post designed to allow the post to rotate when impacted by a vehicle.

Large Roadside Sign—Roadside sign with sign area greater than 5 m^2 (54 ft^2).

Occupant Impact Velocity—Velocity, relative to the vehicle in motion, at which a hypothetical *point mass* occupant impacts a surface of a hypothetical occupant compartment.

Ridedown Acceleration—Acceleration experienced by a hypothetical occupant compartment.

Service Level—Crash test response criteria, as defined in NCHRP Report 230 (*Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Appurtenances*).

Slip Base—A structural component at or near the bottom of a post or pole, which will allow release of the post from its base on impact while resisting wind loads.

Small Roadside Sign—Roadside sign with sign area less or equal to 5 m^2 (54 ft^2).

Test Level—Crash test response criteria, as defined in NCHRP Report 350.

Test Vehicle—A specific size of small- or full-sized vehicle selected to represent a range of actual vehicle sizes; used by testing agencies as standard test vehicles when testing breakaway components.

12.3—DESIGN OF BREAKAWAY SUPPORTS

Breakaway supports shall be designed to meet both the structural and the dynamic performance requirements of Articles 12.4 and 12.5.

Certification of both breakaway and structural adequacy shall be provided by the Manufacturer, if requested by the Owner. Design calculations or test data of production samples to support certification shall be provided, if requested by the Owner. The data shall indicate a constant ability to produce a device that will meet both breakaway and structural requirements.

C12.3

The Manufacturer is responsible for breakaway testing and for submitting test reports to FHWA for review and approval. Manufacturers of luminaire poles with associated breakaway base components will commonly provide copies of the FHWA testing approval to the Owners; however, this approval does not include any consideration of the structural adequacy of the component. Structural adequacy must be demonstrated to the Owner by the Manufacturer. In general, any breakaway support component should provide the same or greater structural strength than the support post or pole using the breakaway device.

12.4—STRUCTURAL PERFORMANCE

Breakaway supports shall be designed to carry the loads, as provided in Section 3, "Loads," using the appropriate allowable stresses for the material used, as stipulated in these Specifications.

Where the structural adequacy of the breakaway support or components associated with the breakaway feature is in question, load tests shall be performed. The load tests shall be performed and evaluated based on the following criteria:

- Breakaway supports shall be tested to determine their ultimate strengths. The loading arrangement and structure configuration shall be selected to maximize the deflection and stresses in the critical regions of the structure or breakaway component. More than one test load arrangement shall be used should a single arrangement not demonstrate the ultimate strength of the breakaway support. The breakaway support shall be tested in a manner that closely models field support conditions.
- The test load shall not be less than 1.5 times the loading for Group II or Group III load combinations, whichever governs.
- Three samples for each test load arrangement shall be tested to determine the ultimate load that the breakaway support assembly is capable of supporting in the weakest direction.

C12.4

Typically, static load tests are conducted to verify the structural capacity of the breakaway support. The structure is required to withstand the design loads with an appropriate safety factor. Further, because of the nature of the breakaway devices, additional tests such as fatigue and corrosion may be required by the Owner. In such cases, the Owner and Manufacturer should agree on the specific test requirements.

In general, breakaway devices should be tested to determine if they provide bending strengths compatible with the posts or poles they support. The structural support, including the breakaway device, may be tested for bending, shear, torsion, tension, or compression, to demonstrate the load-carrying capacity of the system. For testing, a length of pole or post suitable for application of the test load may be attached to the breakaway device. The pole or post test length should model the actual structure as to thicknesses, attachment bolts, and so forth; and be of a length to the point of application of the test load at least equal to five times the maximum major bending dimension of the pole or post. The upper hinge mechanisms on certain large breakaway sign supports should also be subjected to the structural performance considerations.

The load factor of 1.5 is 3.5 percent higher than the minimum safety factor for bending of 1.45 for Group II and Group III load combinations that is used for round tubular steel shapes. The slightly higher value of 1.5 could account for some material variability. For certain types of breakaway devices with high test variability, a higher safety factor should be used.

- If no individual ultimate load for the three samples differs by more than ten percent from the mean, divide the mean value by 1.5 to determine the allowable load.
- If one of the ultimate loads differs from the mean by more than ten percent, three additional samples shall be tested. Divide the average of the lowest three ultimate loads out of the six tests by 1.5 to determine the allowable load.
- The allowable load shall not be increased by 33 percent and shall be greater than or equal to the required loads for Group II and Group III load combinations, as provided in Section 3, "Loads."

12.5—BREAKAWAY DYNAMIC PERFORMANCE

Breakaway supports shall meet the impact test evaluation criteria of Article 12.5.1, Article 12.5.2, or both. Additional provisions of Article 12.5.3 shall be considered.

12.5.1—Impact Test Evaluation Criteria

Criteria for testing, documentation, and evaluation of breakaway supports shall be performed in accordance with the guidelines of NCHRP Report 350. Satisfactory dynamic performance for structural supports with breakaway devices shall include the following criteria:

- The standard vehicle shall be the 820C vehicle, which has a mass of 820 kg (1800 lb), or its equivalent.
- Structural supports shall meet the impact conditions of test level 3 in NCHRP Report 350 for high-speed arterial highways. Test level 2 may be deemed acceptable for local and collector roads, provided approval is obtained from the Owner. The specified impact conditions are noted in Table 12-1.

C12.5.1

The major changes from NCHRP Report 230 to NCHRP Report 350 include:

- Changes to the test vehicles,
- Changes to the number and impact condition of the test matrices,
- Adoption of *test levels* as opposed to *service levels*,
- Changes to evaluation criteria, and
- Adoption of International System of Units (SI).

No major changes in design will occur when upgrading breakaway supports to reflect the requirements of NCHRP Report 350.

Based on NCHRP Report 350, the optional 700C vehicle, which has a mass of 700 kg (1550 lb), may be used for stricter performance criteria for breakaway supports than the 820C vehicle. Most lighter weight cars currently available exceed the mass of the 820C vehicle; therefore, the stricter performance criteria of the 700C vehicle is not required.

Table 12-1—Impact Conditions (Ross et al., 1993)

Test Level	Feature	Test Designation of NCHRP Report 350	Vehicle	Nominal Speed km/h (mph)	Nominal Angle (°)
2	Support Structures	2-60	820C	35 (21.7)	0–20
		S2-60	700C	35 (21.7)	0–20
		2-61	820C	70 (43.5)	0–20
		S2-61	700C	70 (43.5)	0–20
3 Basic Level	Support Structures	3-60	820C	35 (21.7)	0–20
		S3-60	700C	35 (21.7)	0–20
		3-61	820C	100 (62.1)	0–20
		S3-61	700C	100 (62.1)	0–20

- The breakaway component of the support shall readily activate in a predictable manner by breaking away, fracturing, or yielding, when struck head-on by the test vehicle.
- Detached elements, fragments, or other debris from the structural support shall not penetrate or show potential for penetrating the occupant compartment, or present an undue hazard to other traffic, pedestrians, or personnel in a work zone. Deformation of, or intrusions into, the occupant compartment that could cause serious injuries shall not be permitted.
- The vehicle shall remain upright during and after collision, although moderate rolling, pitching, and yawing are acceptable.

Violent rolling, pitching, or spinouts of the vehicle reveal unstable and unpredictable dynamic interaction behavior that is unacceptable.

- The longitudinal component of occupant velocity at impact with the interior surface of the passenger compartment, due to a vehicle striking a breakaway support, shall not exceed 5 m/s (16.4 fps), and preferably should not exceed 3 m/s (9.84 fps), at vehicle impact speeds of 35 to 100 km/h (21.7 to 62.1 mph) for test level 3 and from 35 to 70 km/h (21.7 to 43.5 mph) for test level 2.

Two measures are used to evaluate the occupant risk: (1) the velocity at which a hypothetical occupant impacts a hypothetical interior surface, and (2) ridedown acceleration experienced by the occupant subsequent to contact with the interior surface.

The preferred limit for occupant velocity at impact with the interior surface of 3 m/s (9.84 fps) and the maximum limiting value of 5 m/s (16.4 fps) are approximately the same as those in the 1994 edition of the Specifications.

- The longitudinal and lateral component of occupant ridedown acceleration shall be limited to a maximum of 20*g*, with 15*g* preferred.
- After collision, the vehicle's trajectory should not excessively intrude into adjacent traffic lanes.
- Vehicle trajectory behind the support structure is acceptable.

- For breakaway or frangible supports that may house electrical components or breakaway wiring devices, dynamic performance shall be established with a mockup of the components or devices in place.

If there is a potential for a breakaway support to be used in conjunction with electrical components or breakaway wiring devices, the dynamic performance should be tested with a realistic mockup of these components or devices in place, as the potential exists for this to affect the results. Supports that have already been previously tested and approved without these components or devices should not need to be retested. Rather, it is the intent that supports on which dynamic performance is to be established should be tested in this fashion.

12.5.2—Analytical Evaluation of Impact Tests

Analytical evaluation of impact tests may be allowed in lieu of physical testing provided that an analytical model has been proven to accurately and conservatively predict the dynamic performance of the structural breakaway support, and deformation of, or intrusion into the passenger compartment is not likely. Verification of the analytical model shall be supported by an adequate number of full-scale impact tests.

12.5.3—Additional Requirements

The following provisions are to ensure predictable and safe displacement of the breakaway support.

Substantial remains of breakaway supports shall not project more than 100 mm (4 in.) above a line between the straddling wheels of a vehicle on 1500-mm (60-in.) centers. The line connects any point on the ground surface on one side of the support to a point on the ground surface on the other side, and it is aligned radially or perpendicular to the centerline of the roadway.

C12.5.3

Breakaway support mechanisms are designed to function properly when loaded primarily in shear. Most mechanisms are designed to be impacted at bumper height, typically 450 to 500 mm (18 to 20 in.) above the ground. If impacted at a significantly higher point, the bending moment in the breakaway base may be sufficient to bind the mechanism, resulting in nonactivation of the breakaway device. For this reason, it is critical that breakaway supports not be located near ditches or on steep slopes or at similar locations where a vehicle is likely to be partially airborne at the time of impact. The type of soil may also affect the activation mechanisms of some breakaway supports. Additional guidance on typical breakaway supports may be found in the *Roadside Design Guide*.

Breakaway supports, including those placed on roadside slopes, must not allow impacting vehicles to snag on either the foundation or any substantial remains of the support. Surrounding terrain may be required to be graded to permit vehicles to pass over any nonbreakaway portion of the installation that remains in the ground or rigidly attached to the foundation. The specified limit on the maximum stub height lessens the possibility of snagging the undercarriage of a vehicle after a support has broken away from its base, and minimizes vehicle instability if a wheel hits the stub. The necessity of this requirement is based on field observations. Application of the clearance requirement is illustrated in Figure C12-1.

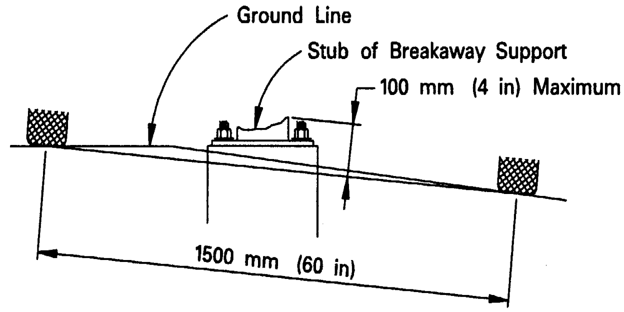


Figure C12-1—Stub Height Requirements

The maximum mass of combined luminaire support and fixtures attached to breakaway supports shall be limited to 450 kg (992 lb). Any increases in these limits are to be based on full-scale crash testing and an investigation of the range of vehicle roof crush characteristics that go beyond the recommended testing procedures of NCHRP Report 350.

Efforts shall be made in all breakaway supports housing electrical components to effectively reduce fire and electrical hazards posed after structure impact by an errant vehicle. On knockdown, the support/structure shall electrically disconnect as close to the concrete foundation (pole base) as possible.

This Article has been added to ensure that electrical risks are considered in the design of breakaway structures.

For multipost breakaway roadside sign supports, the following shall be required to meet satisfactory breakaway performance:

- The hinge shall be at least 2.1 m (7 ft) above the ground so that no portion of the sign or upper section of the support is likely to penetrate the windshield of an impacting car or medium size truck.
- A single post, spaced with a clear distance of 2.1 m (7 ft) or more from another post, shall have a mass no greater than 65 kg/m (44 lb/ft). The total mass below the hinge, but above the shear plate of the breakaway base, shall not exceed 270 kg (600 lb). For two posts spaced with less than 2.1-m (7-ft) clearance, each post shall have a mass less than 25 kg/m (17 lb/ft).
- No supplementary signs shall be attached below the hinges if such placement is likely to interfere with the breakaway action of the support post or if the supplemental sign is likely to penetrate the windshield of an impacting vehicle.

All breakaway supports in multiple support sign structures are considered as acting together to cause the occupant velocity at impact, unless the following items are met:

- Each support is designed to independently release from the sign panel,
- The sign panel has sufficient torsional strength to ensure this release, and
- The clear distance between supports is greater than 2.1 m (7 ft).

For multipost breakaway roadside sign supports, there shall be sufficient strength in the connections between the post and the sign to allow the hinge system to function on impact.

For multipost breakaway roadside sign supports, the posts shall have enough rigidity to properly activate the breakaway device.

Small posts used with slip bases or breakaway couplings have a tendency to bend or deform under impact, causing the mechanisms to bind or otherwise fail to activate as designed.

The slip base breakaway device shall be oriented in the direction that ensures acceptable dynamic performance.

Periodic maintenance should be continued after the installation of slip base or fuse plate designs to maintain the specified torque requirements for the bolts. Perforated fuse plates, if used at the hinge, are not torque-sensitive. Orientation of slip base and fuse plate designs cannot be optimal for all potential vehicle impact trajectories; but it shall be as best suited for the site, usually for trajectories parallel to the adjacent traffic lane.

12.6—DURABILITY REQUIREMENTS

Breakaway devices shall meet the durability requirements for the material that is used, as defined in the steel, aluminum, wood, and fiber-reinforced plastic design sections, as applicable.

C12.6

Structural bolts used in assembling breakaway devices should be galvanized or stainless steel. Bolts with electroplated zinc coatings should not be used because of their thin coating thickness.

Periodic inspection and maintenance is required after the installation of the breakaway device to monitor the corrosion level at the breakaway connection.

12.7—BREAKAWAY MECHANISMS

Breakaway support mechanisms are designed to yield, fracture, or separate when struck by a vehicle. The release mechanism may be a slip plane, plastic hinge, fracture element, or a combination thereof.

C12.7

Detailed discussions and illustrations of various breakaway devices are given in the *Roadside Design Guide*. The most commonly used slip base and hinge devices for signs can be found in *A Guide to Small Sign Support Hardware*.

12.8—REFERENCES

AASHTO. 2002. *Roadside Design Guide*, Third Edition with Chapter 6 update, RSDG-3-M. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

AASHTO-AGC-ARTBA Joint Committee. 1998. *Guide to Small Sign Support Hardware*, Task Force 13 Report, Subcommittee on New Highway Materials, GSSSH-1. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Association of General Contractor, and American Road and Transportation Builders Association joint committee, Washington, DC.

Bronstad, M. E., and J. D. Michie. 1974. *Recommended Procedures for Vehicle Crash Testing of Highway Appurtenances*, NCHRP Report 153. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

Michie, J. D. 1981. *Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Appurtenances*, NCHRP Report 230. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

Ross, H. E. 1995. "Evolution of Roadside Safety." In *Transportation Research Circular 435: Roadside Safety Issues.* Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

Ross, H. E. 1995. "Update to NCHRP Report 230." In *Transportation Research Circular 451: International Crash Test Standards for Roadside Safety Features.* Washington, D.C.: Transportation Research Board, National Research Council.

Ross, H. E., D. L. Sicking, R. A. Zimmer, and J. D. Michie. 1993. *Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features*, NCHRP Report 350. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

TRB. 1978. *Transportation Research Circular 191: Recommended Procedures for Vehicle Crash Testing of Highway Appurtenances.* Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

SECTION 13: FOUNDATION DESIGN

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 13:

FOUNDATION DESIGN

13.1—SCOPE

Provisions of this Section specify design requirements for drilled shafts, spread footings, piles, and screw-in helixes for foundations of structural supports for signs, luminaires, and traffic signals.

Design of foundations shall be based on the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges* for design requirements not addressed in this Section. Foundations shall be designed to resist the loads given in Section 3, "Loads," and induced reactions, in accordance with the general principles of this Section. Foundation settlement, rotation, and overall stability (i.e., sliding and overturning) should be controlled to alleviate the possibility of failure of the structure or its having an unsightly appearance. Selection of foundation type shall be based on considerations such as the magnitude and direction of loading, depth to suitable bearing materials, frost depth, and ease and cost of construction.

C13.1

The material contained in this Section is general in nature and no attempt has been made to specify definite design criteria for foundations. Several references contain information and procedure for the design of footings with sustained thrust and moment.

13.2—DEFINITIONS

Drilled Shaft—Also referred to as drilled pier, cast-in-drilled-hole pile, drilled caisson, or large bored pile; a foundation, constructed by placing concrete in a drilled hole with or without steel reinforcement.

Pile—A long, relatively slender foundation, installed by driving, drilling, auguring, or jetting.

Screw-in Helix—Galvanized steel foundation installed by rotary equipment.

Spread footing—A generally rectangular or square prism of concrete that distributes the load of the vertical support to the subgrade.

13.3—NOTATION

c	=	shear strength of cohesive soil (cohesion) (N/m^2, k/ft^2)
D	=	width or diameter of foundation (m, ft)
F	=	lateral soil reaction at toe of drilled shaft in cohesionless soil (N, k)
H	=	M_F / V_F (m, ft)
K_p	=	passive earth pressure coefficient
L	=	embedded length of foundation (Article 13.6.1.1) (m, ft)
M	=	applied moment at groundline from loads computed according to Section 3, "Loads" (N-m, k-ft)
M_F	=	applied moment at groundline including an appropriate safety factor (N-m, k-ft)
M_{Fmax}	=	maximum applied moment to the shaft including an appropriate safety factor (N-m, k-ft)
q	=	coefficient (m, ft)
V	=	applied shear load at groundline computed according to Section 3, "Loads" (N, k)
V_F	=	applied shear load at groundline including an appropriate safety factor (N, k)
φ	=	angle of internal friction (°)
γ	=	effective unit weight of soil (N/m^3, k/ft^3)

13.4—DETERMINATION OF SOIL PROPERTIES

A geotechnical study that may include subsurface explorations shall be performed for each substructure element to provide the necessary information for the design and construction of foundations. The extent of exploration shall be based on subsurface conditions, structure type, and project requirements.

Laboratory tests and in-situ tests shall be carried out conforming to the relevant AASHTO or ASTM standards, or Owner-supplied standards, to obtain soil parameters that are necessary for the analysis or design of foundations.

As a minimum, the geotechnical study or subsurface exploration and testing should provide information on the allowable bearing pressure, groundwater elevation, unit weight of soils, angle of internal friction, cohesion strength, and/or other geotechnical features that could affect the design of the foundation for a particular site.

Subsurface explorations may be waived if the following conditions are met:

- The structure type will pose an insignificant hazard if the foundation fails, and
- A reasonable estimate is made for the subsurface condition.

C13.4

Regardless of the type of foundation used, comprehensive soil information is valuable information for foundation designs. In-place strength tests, particularly standard penetration tests, are very beneficial and usually satisfactory for determining the soil strength data required for design.

13.5—FOUNDATION BEARING CAPACITY

The bearing capacity of the foundation may be estimated using analytical procedures given in the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges* or other generally accepted theories, based on soil and rock parameters measured by in-situ and/or laboratory tests.

13.5.1—Allowable Bearing Capacity

The allowable values of soil-bearing pressure that may be used in designing the foundation will depend on the type of foundation used and the supporting soil. The allowable values of soil pressure may be increased by the percentage of allowable stress as enumerated in Section 3, "Loads," provided that the initial allowable soil-bearing pressure given has an adequate factor of safety, as provided in the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*.

13.6—DRILLED SHAFTS

Drilled shafts shall be cast-in-place concrete and may include deformed steel reinforcement, structural steel sections, and/or permanent steel casing as required by design.

C13.6

Drilled shafts may be considered to resist high lateral or uplift loads when suitable soil conditions are present.

Drilled shafts shall be designed to support the design loads with adequate bearing, lateral resistance, and structural capacity, and with tolerable settlements and lateral displacements. Drilled shafts shall provide adequate resistance for applied torsional loads.

Common construction methods entail drilling a hole to the required foundation depth, and then filling it with reinforced or unreinforced concrete. The vertical support structure (e.g., pole) is usually anchored to the concrete shaft through anchor bolts.

It is also possible to directly embed a portion of a pole by making a cylindrical hole in the ground approximately 300 mm (12 in.) larger than the pole diameter and backfilling with well-graded crushed stone or unreinforced concrete. This is a commonly used foundation for prestressed concrete and fiber-reinforced composite poles.

13.6.1—Geotechnical Design

13.6.1.1—Embedment

Shaft embedment shall be sufficient so as to provide suitable vertical and lateral load capacities and acceptable displacements. In lieu of more detailed procedures, Broms' approximate procedures for the estimation of embedment as outlined in the commentary may be used.

C13.6.1.1

Recommendations for design of drilled piers are given in these publications: *Design and Construction of Drilled Piers*, *Drilled Shafts: Construction Procedures and Design Methods,* and *Handbook on Design of Piles and Drilled Shafts Under Lateral Load*.

Preliminary design methods include Broms (1964, 1965), Hanson (1961), and Singh et al. (1971). Detailed design methods are provided in studies by GAI Consultants (1982), Poulos and Davis (1980), Borden and Gabr (1987), and Reese (1984). Broms' procedures for embedment length in cohesive and cohesionless soils are summarized herein regarding the ultimate lateral soil resistance of the soils. Certain structures may warrant additional considerations regarding limitations to the lateral displacement at the top of the shaft. Some structures or soil conditions may require a more detailed final design procedure than Broms' procedures.

Broms studied laterally loaded piles in cohesive and cohesionless soils. Simplifying assumptions concerning the distribution of the soil reactions along the pile and statics were used to estimate the lateral resistance of the pile.

Because the Broms' design method is based on ultimate strength, an appropriate safety factor shall be included in the shear load V_F and the moment M_F.

$$V_F = V\ \text{(Safety factor)} \tag{C13-1}$$

$$M_F = M\ \text{(Safety factor)} \tag{C13-2}$$

The safety factor shall account for the possible undercapacity of the soil strength and overload factor for the loadings. In his paper *Design of Laterally Loaded Piles*, Broms suggested using an undercapacity factor of 0.7 and an overload factor of 2 to 3. The value for the safety factor is the selected overload factor divided by the undercapacity factor. Other safety factor values may be used as approved by the Owner. The reliability of the soil information should be considered in determining the safety factor.

Broms' assumptions for the distribution of a cohesive soil's reactions at ultimate load are shown in Figure C13-1. Broms' solution for cohesive soils may be presented by the following equation from which the required embedment length L can be found:

$$L = 1.5D + q\left[1 + \sqrt{2 + \frac{(4H + 6D)}{q}}\right] \quad \text{(C13-3)}$$

where:

$$H = \frac{M_F}{V_F} \quad \text{(C13-4)}$$

and:

$$q = \frac{V_F}{9cD} \quad \text{(C13-5)}$$

For the required embedment length L, the maximum moment in the shaft can be calculated as

$$M_{F\max} = V_F\left(H + 1.5D + 0.5q\right) \quad \text{(C13-6)}$$

and is located at $(1.5D + q)$ below groundline.

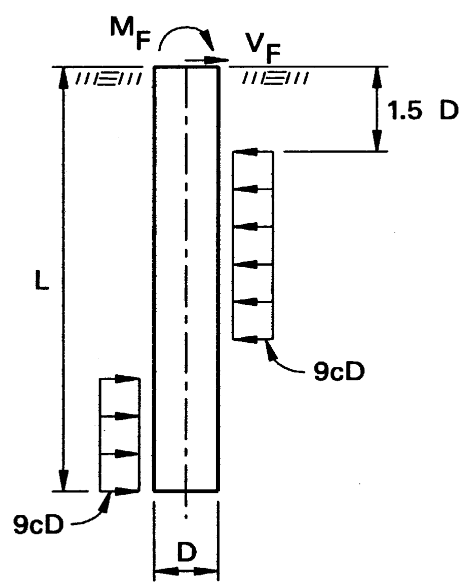


Figure C13-1—Foundation in Cohesive Soil

Broms' assumptions for the distribution of a cohesionless soil's reactions at ultimate load are shown in Figure C13-2. For cohesionless soils, Broms' procedure may be given by the following equations, from which the required embedment length L can be found by using trial and error:

$$L^3 - \frac{2V_F L}{K_p \gamma D} - \frac{2M_F}{K_p \gamma D} = 0 \tag{C13-7}$$

where:

$$K_p = \tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\varphi}{2}\right) \tag{C13-8}$$

For the required embedment length L, the maximum moment in the shaft can be calculated as:

$$M_{F\max} = V_F\left(H + 0.54\sqrt{\frac{V_F}{\gamma DK_p}}\right) \tag{C13-9}$$

and is located at:

$$\left(0.82\sqrt{\frac{V_F}{\gamma DK_p}}\right)$$

below groundline.

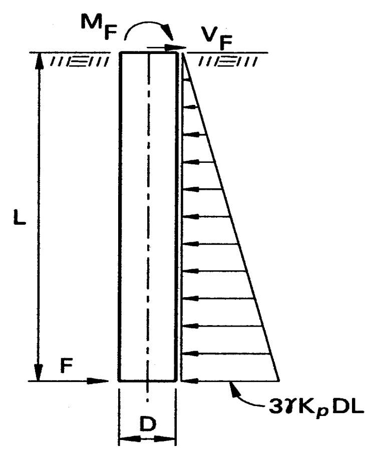


Figure C13-2—Foundation in Cohesionless Soil

13.6.1.2—Capacity

The axial capacity, lateral capacity, and movements of the drilled shaft in various types of soils may be estimated according to methods prescribed in the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges.*

13.6.2—Structural Design

The structural design of drilled shafts shall be in accordance with the provisions for the design of reinforced concrete given in the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*.

13.6.2.1—Details

Drilled shaft diameters should be sized in 150-mm (6-in.) increments. A minimum concrete cover of 75 mm (3 in.) over steel reinforcement shall be required. The reinforcing cage shall be adequately supported and secured against displacement before concrete is placed.

C13.6.2.1

The minimum concrete cover is required for protection of reinforcement against corrosion. It is measured from the concrete surface to the outermost surface of the ties or spirals of the reinforcing cage. The cage must be adequately supported by bar chairs or other means to prevent its displacement by workers or concrete placement. Larger covers may need to be specified by the Designer in certain cases to ensure that the minimum cover required for protection is provided.

13.7—SPREAD FOOTINGS

Spread footing-type foundations may be used to distribute the design loads to the supporting soil strata. A vertical shaft or stem may be constructed with the footing of such a size to accommodate the anchor bolts and base plates required for the pole structure.

Spread footings shall be designed to support the design loads with adequate bearing and structural capacity and with tolerable settlements. The footing shall provide resistance to sliding and overturning.

13.7.1—Geotechnical Design

The bearing capacity and settlement of the spread footing in various types of soils may be estimated according to methods prescribed in the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*. Uplift due to the eccentricity of the loading shall be restricted to one corner of the footing, and the tension area shall not exceed 25 percent of the total bearing area of the footing.

C13.7.1

A portion of a spread footing may be subjected to uplift due to the eccentricity of applied loads. For a footing loaded eccentrically about only one axis, uplift occurs when the resultant pressure on the base of the footing is located at a distance from the footing's centroid that exceeds $^1/_6$ of the footing plan dimension.

In general, it is good practice to avoid such cases of large eccentricity where uplift occurs. In some limited applications under high wind loads, however, it may be reasonable to allow some uplift for more economical designs. The provisions of this Section provide limitations on the area of uplift. Restricting uplift to one corner implies biaxial bending; for uniaxial bending, uplift is not permitted.

13.7.2—Structural Design

The structural design of spread footings shall be in accordance with the provisions for the design of reinforced concrete given in the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*.

For spread footings on piles, computations for moments and shears may be based on the assumption that the reaction from any pile is concentrated at each pile's center.

13.8—PILES

Piling should be considered when adequate soil conditions cannot be found within a reasonable depth. Piling may also be used where the potential for large unacceptable settlements exists.

13.8.1—Geotechnical Design

The axial capacity, lateral capacity, and settlement of piles in various types of soils may be estimated according to methods prescribed in the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*.

13.8.2—Structural Design

The structural design of piling of different materials shall be in accordance with the provisions given in the *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*.

13.9—SCREW-IN HELIX

Screw-in helix foundations shall consist of a galvanized round pipe or tube with a formed helix plate at the embedded end and a connection plate at the top end. The foundation's lateral load capacity is a function of its length and diameter, and the properties of the soil.

C13.9

Screw-in helix foundations are typically used for street lighting poles, pole top mounted traffic signal supports, and other small structures. These foundations can be installed by conventional rotary equipment in a very short amount of time, and they have the capability of being retrieved from the soil and reused at other locations.

13.10—EMBEDMENT OF LIGHTLY LOADED SMALL POLES AND POSTS

Small poles or posts for lighting and roadside signs may be embedded directly in the earth. An approximate procedure for calculating the required embedment depth, as outlined in the commentary, may be used.

C13.10

An approximate procedure, based on simplifying assumptions, is given in Figures C13-3 and C13-4 for calculating the embedment depth of pole-type structures. S_1 is the allowable soil pressure. A detailed review of the procedure is presented in a paper by Ivey (1966). Appropriate safety factors should be applied to determine the allowable soil pressure. With the inclusion of appropriate safety factors in the determination of S_1, S_1 may be increased by the percentage of allowable stress enumerated in Section 3, "Loads."

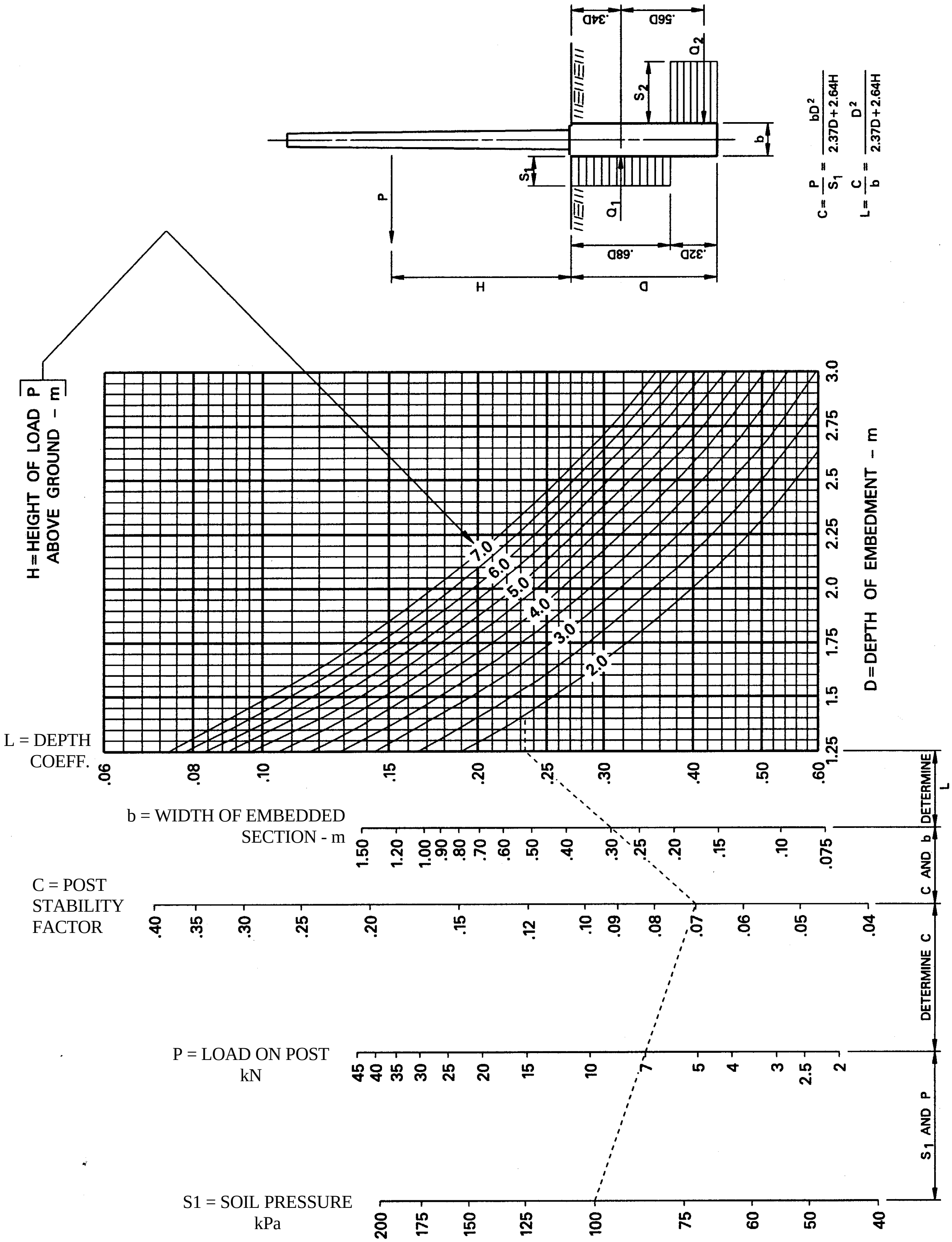


Figure C13-3—Embedment of Posts with Overturning Loads (SI Units)

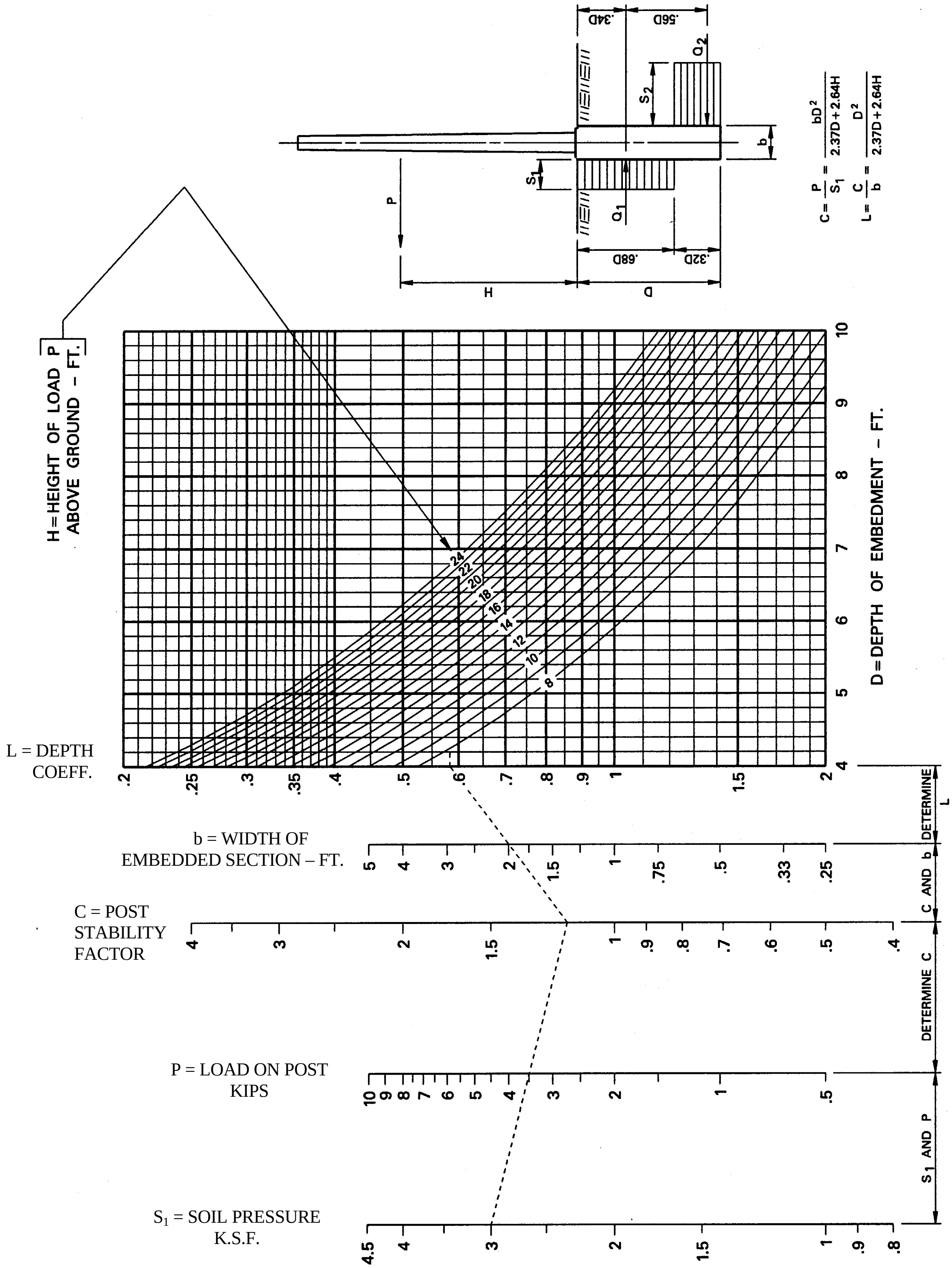


Figure C13-4—Embedment of Posts with Overturning Loads (U.S. Units)

13.11—REFERENCES

AASHTO. 2002. *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*, 17th Edition, HB-17. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

ACI. 1995. "Design and Construction of Drilled Piers," ACI 336.3R-93. In *Manual of Concrete Practice*. American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI.

ACI. 1995. "Suggested Analysis and Design Procedures for Combined Footings and Mats," ACI 336.2R-88 (Reapproved 1993). In *Manual of Concrete Practice*. American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI.

Borden, R. H., and M. A. Gabr. 1987. *Analysis of Compact Pole-Type Footing-LT Base: Computer Program for Laterally Loaded Pier Analysis Including Base and Slope Effect*. Raleigh, N.C.: North Carolina Department of Transportation,

Bowles, J. E. *Foundation Analysis and Design*, 2d ed. New York, N.Y.: McGraw–Hill, 1977.

Broms, B. B. 1964. "Lateral Resistance of Piles in Cohesionless Soils," *Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division*. American Society of Civil Engineers, Washington, DC, Vol. 90, No. SM3 (May 1964).

Broms, B. B. 1964. "Lateral Resistance of Piles in Cohesive Soils," *Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division*. American Society of Civil Engineers, Washington, DC, Vol. 90, No. SM2 (March 1964).

Broms, B. B. 1965. "Design of Laterally Loaded Piles," *Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division*. American Society of Civil Engineers, Washington, DC, Vol. 91, No. SM3 (May 1965).

DiGioia, A. M., L. Rojas-Gonzalez, and F. B. Newman. 1989. "Statistical Analysis of Drilled Shaft and Embedded Pole Models." In *Foundation Engineering: Current Principles and Practices*, Fred H. Kulhawy, ed. American Society of Civil Engineers, Washington, DC.

GAI Consultants, Inc. 1982. *Laterally Loaded Drilled Pier Research, Volume 1: Design Methodology*. Electric Power Research Institute, Palo Alto, CA.

Hansen, J. B. 1961. "The Ultimate Resistance of Rigid Piles Against Transversal Forces," *The Danish Geotechnical Institute Bulletin*. Copenhagen, Vol. 12.

Ivey, D. L., and L. Hawkins. 1966. "Signboard Footings to Resist Wind Loads," *Civil Engineering*. American Society of Civil Engineers, Washington, DC.

Liu, C., and J. Evett. 1981. *Soils and Foundations*, Sixth Edition. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.

Poulos, H. G., and E. H. Davis. 1980. *Pile Foundation Analysis and Design*. John Wiley and Sons, New York, NY.

Reese, L. C. 1984. *Handbook on Design of Piles and Drilled Shafts under Lateral Load*, Report No. FHWA-IP-84-11. Federal Highway Administration, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC.

Reese, L. C., and M. W. O'Neill. 1988. *Drilled Shafts: Construction Procedures and Design Methods*, Report No. FHWA-HI-88-042. Federal Highway Administration, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC.

Singh, A., R. E. W. Hu, and R. D. Consineau. 1971. "Lateral Load Capacity of Piles in Sand and Normally Consolidated Clay," *Civil Engineering*. American Society of Civil Engineers, Washington, DC, August 1971.

Teng and Associates. 1969. *Tapered Steel Poles Caisson Foundation Design*, Publication No. ADUSS 88-4328-01. US Steel, Pittsburgh, PA.

Terzaghi, K. 1955. "Evaluation of Coefficients of Subgrade Reaction," *Geotechnique*. Thomas Telford Publishing, London, UK, Vol. 5, No. 4.

APPENDIX A: ANALYSIS OF SPAN-WIRE STRUCTURES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

APPENDIX A:

ANALYSIS OF SPAN-WIRE STRUCTURES

A1—SCOPE

Span-wire structures are typically used to support traffic signals and signs by spanning a steel cable between two vertical supports, as shown in Figure A-1. The analysis of span-wire structures may be performed using a variety of methods from simple two-dimensional static approximations to highly refined three-dimensional nonlinear analysis. This Appendix describes two methods of analysis suitable for the design of span-wire structures supporting signs and traffic signals. Both approximate methods are based on the static equilibrium of three-dimensional wires and the assumption that the ends of the wire are at equal elevations. The simplified method is based on the assumption of rigid vertical supports, ignoring the lateral deflections of the vertical supports. The detailed method is an expansion of the simplified method and includes the effect of the lateral deflections of the vertical supports. Ignoring the lateral deflections of vertical supports from wind and ice loadings is conservative compared with using the detailed method of analysis. For vertical supports having significant lateral deflections, the difference in the calculated wire tension can be very large for the two analysis methods.

A2—DEFINITIONS

Sag—The greatest vertical distance from a horizontal line between the connections at the vertical supports to a point located on the wire.

Span—The horizontal distance between vertical supports. For hanging box configurations, the span is the horizontal distance between the points of connection of the span wire with the supporting wires.

Span-Wire Structure—Structure in which the horizontal supports are tensioned wires attached to vertical rigid or semirigid supports.

A3—NOTATION

A_x	=	horizontal longitudinal reaction parallel to the span at point A (N, lb)
A_y	=	vertical reaction at point A (N, lb)
A_z	=	horizontal transverse reaction perpendicular to span at point A (N, lb)
B_x	=	horizontal longitudinal reaction parallel to the span at point B (N, lb)
B_y	=	vertical reaction at point B (N, lb)
B_z	=	horizontal transverse reaction perpendicular to span at point B (N, lb)
d_{DL}	=	lateral deflection of the vertical support in the x-direction due to dead load only (m, ft)
d_{DLA}	=	lateral deflection of the vertical support at end A in the x-direction due to dead load only (m, ft)
d_{DLB}	=	lateral deflection of the vertical support at end B in the x-direction due to dead load only (m, ft)
d_j	=	lateral deflection of the vertical support in the x-direction due to wind and gravity loads (m, ft)
d_{jA}	=	lateral deflection of the vertical support at end A in the x-direction due to wind and gravity loads (m, ft)
d_{jB}	=	lateral deflection of the vertical support at end B in the x-direction due to wind and gravity loads (m, ft)
F_{xi}	=	x-axis force component of wire tension at segment i (N, lb)
F_{yi}	=	y-axis force component of wire tension at segment i (N, lb)
F_{zi}	=	z-axis force component of wire tension at segment i (N, lb)
$G_1 \ldots G_{n-1}$	=	gravity loads, which include the dead and ice loads (N, lb)
i	=	segment number
L_j	=	adjusted length of span wire to account for the deflection of the vertical supports (m, ft)
L_o	=	total design length of the span wire between vertical supports based on an assumed sag under dead loads (m, ft)
ℓ_i	=	wire length of a segment i (m, ft)

n	=	number of segments in the span for span-wire structures
S	=	span or horizontal distance between vertical supports (m, ft)
T	=	tension in the span wire (N, lb)
T_A	=	tension in the wire at end A (N, lb)
T_B	=	tension in the wire at end B (N, lb)
$W_1 ... W_{n-1}$	=	wind loads (N, lb)
x_i	=	vector length component of wire segment in the direction of the span that is assumed constant for all group loadings (m, ft)

A4—CONFIGURATIONS

Span-wire structures, illustrated in Figure A-1, are grouped into four main categories: (1) single-span configurations, (2) box configurations, (3) hanging box configurations, and (4) tethered wire configurations. Single-span configurations are composed of one span wire attached to two vertical supports. Box configurations are usually composed of four single span configurations in a rectangular plan, using four poles. Variations on this configuration include L-shaped plans and C-shaped plans. Hanging box configurations are box configurations in which the vertices of the box are supported by wires attached to vertical supports. The tethered configurations are those in which additional wires, located below the span wire, are provided to stabilize the signs and signals under wind loads.

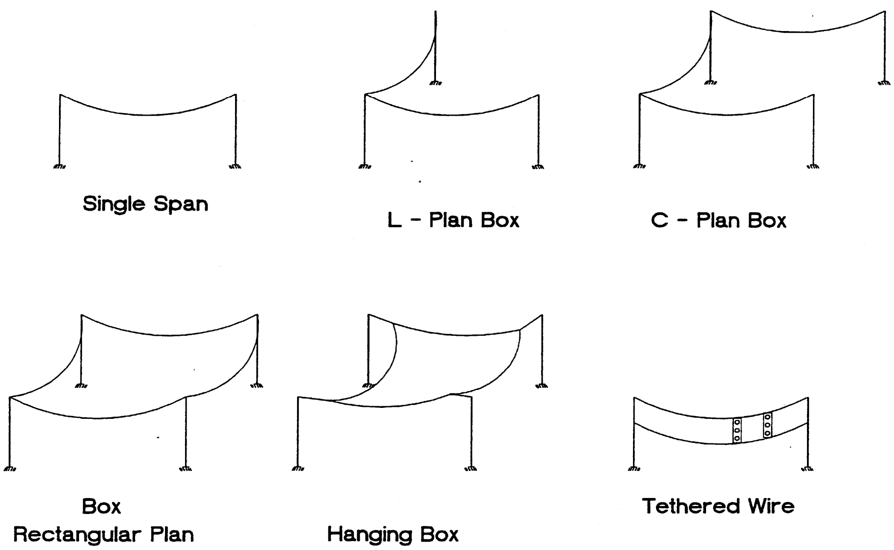


Figure A-1—Typical Span-Wire Configurations

A5—SAG

Sag is the greatest vertical distance from a horizontal line between the connections at the vertical supports to a point located on the wire. Sag is generally determined for dead loads only. The sag should be selected by the Designer. A common assumption for sag is five percent of the span. Actual sag less than the design sag can produce significantly higher wire tension than the design tension. Constructed sag greater than the design sag may conflict with the required minimum vertical clearances. For span-wire structures, the vertical clearance is dependent on the distance from the road to the lowest point of the signs or signals in a span-wire structure, the initial sag of the span wire, the height of pole, and the location of span-wire attachment.

A6—LOADING

Span wires should be analyzed for the loads induced by signs, traffic signals, accessories, and the supporting wire. Loads acting on span-wire structures shall be computed according to Section 3, "Loads," for Group I, Group II, and Group III load combinations. For the tension computations in the span wires, only wind loads acting perpendicular to the span normally need to be considered, in addition to dead loads and ice loads. Special consideration may be given to free-swinging traffic signals; and when agreed between Owner and Designer, reduced forces for free-swinging traffic signals may be used. The effect of wind acting on the vertical support need not be considered in the determination of the tension forces of the span wire. When tethered wires are provided, the interaction between the tethered wire and the span wire should be considered.

A7—SIMPLIFIED METHOD

This simplified method for the analysis of span-wire structures is based on static equilibrium of three-dimensional wires. This method is based on the assumption of rigid vertical supports, ignoring the lateral deflections of the vertical supports. The simplified method for calculating tension in span wires is explained in Articles A7.1 and A7.2.

A7.1—Group I Load Combination (Dead Load Only)

A conceptual loading for a span-wire structure under Group I load combination is provided in Figure A-2. The analysis is as follows:

a. Apply the distributed self-weight of the wire as a series of concentrated loads. A minimum of five equal concentrated loads is recommended to model the wire.

b. Apply the self-weight of the sign(s) and signal(s) as concentrated loads at their respective centers of gravity.

c. Select the sag. For two-dimensional loading, such as dead loads, sag is the distance from the horizontal reference line to a point on the wire where the shear load changes sign in a shear force diagram.

d. Determine the vertical reaction, A_y, and the horizontal longitudinal reaction, A_x, at the vertical support, by applying the equilibrium equations. A_y can be determined by taking moments about point B in Figure A-2; A_x can be determined by taking moments at the point where the sag of the wire is known for the free body between this point and point A. Once A_y is determined, B_y can be determined by the equilibrium equation in the vertical direction. The horizontal longitudinal reactions A_x and B_x are equal in magnitude.

Determine the total length L_o of the wire by the following equation:

$$L_o = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \ell_i = \ell_1 + \ell_2 + \ldots + \ell_n = \sqrt{A_x^2 + F_{y1}^2}\,\frac{x_1}{A_x} + \sqrt{A_x^2 + F_{y2}^2}\,\frac{x_2}{A_x} + \ldots + \sqrt{A_x^2 + F_{yn}^2}\,\frac{x_n}{A_x} \tag{A-1}$$

where ℓ_i = wire length of ith segment.

$$F_{yi} = A_y - \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} G_i \tag{A-2}$$

F_{yi} in Eq. A-2 can be further expanded into the following:

$$\begin{aligned}
F_{y1} &= A_y \\
F_{y2} &= A_y - G_1 \\
F_{y3} &= A_y - (G_1 + G_2) \\
&\vdots \\
F_{yi} &= A_y - (G_1 + G_2 + G_3 + \ldots + G_{i-1}) \\
&\vdots \\
F_{yn} &= A_y - (G_1 + G_2 + G_3 + \ldots + G_{n-1})
\end{aligned}$$

The term F_{yi} may be either positive or negative depending on the magnitude of the applied gravity loads G_i and the end reaction A_y. The positive and negative signs relate to the shear force diagram; the direction of the force component F_{yi} is always opposite of the direction of the applied loads.

e. Determine the maximum tension T in the wire due to Group I load combination by the following equation:

$$T = \max\left(T_A, T_B\right) \tag{A-3}$$

where T_A, the tension in the wire at end A, is given by:

$$T_A = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2} \tag{A-4}$$

and T_B, the tension in the wire at end B, is given by:

$$T_B = \sqrt{B_x^2 + B_y^2} \tag{A-5}$$

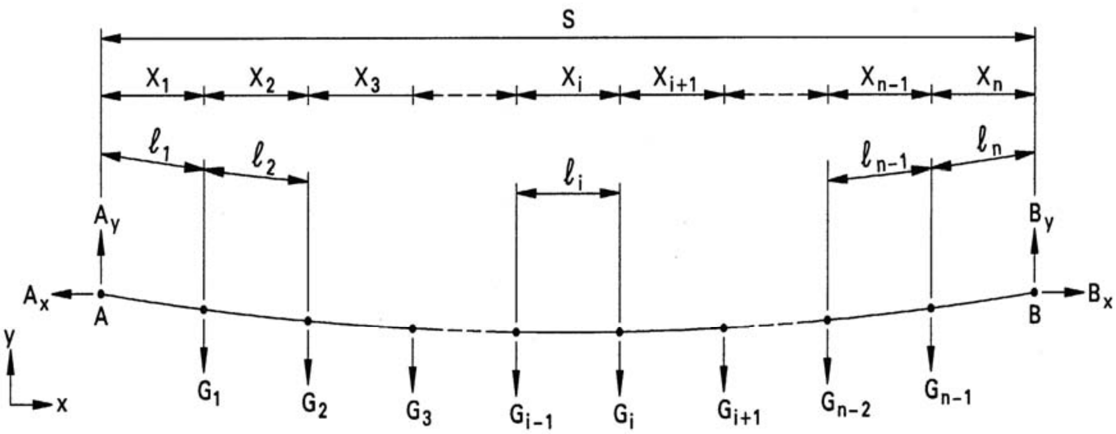


Figure A-2—Gravity Loads (Dead Loads Only)

A7.2—Group II and Group III Load Combinations (Dead, Ice, and Wind Loads)

A conceptual loading for a span-wire structure under wind load is shown in Figure A-3. A conceptual loading for a span-wire structure under Group II and Group III load combinations is shown in Figure A-4. Steps a) and b) below, and the redetermination of F_{yi} values are only required for Group III load combination (i.e., dead, ice, and wind loads). For Group II load combination (i.e., dead and wind loads), the F_{yi} values previously determined for Group I load combination are used. The analysis for these load combinations is as follows:

a. Apply the distributed gravity loads (i.e., dead and ice loads) on the wire as a series of concentrated loads. Using a minimum of five equal concentrated loads is recommended. These are vertical loads applied along the *y* axis.

b. Apply the gravity loads (i.e., dead and ice loads) on sign(s) and signal(s), as concentrated loads at their respective centers of gravity. Determine A_y and B_y.

c. Apply horizontal wind loads as a series of concentrated loads at the same location of the gravity-concentrated loads. Using a minimum of five equal concentrated loads is recommended to represent the wire.

d. Determine A_z by taking moments about point B in Figure A-3.

e. Because the tension forces throughout the wire can be represented by a series of vectors with the horizontal vector component in the direction of the span (A_x) of equal magnitude for each vector, the length of each vector may be expressed by the following equation:

$$\ell_i = \sqrt{F_{xi}^2 + F_{yi}^2 + F_{yi}^2}\,\frac{x_i}{F_{xi}} \tag{A-6}$$

where:

ℓ_i = the wire length of *i*th segment

$$F_{x1} = F_{x2} = F_{x3} = \ldots = F_{xi} = \ldots = F_{xn} = A_x$$

$$F_{yi} = A_y - \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} G_i \tag{A-7}$$

$$F_{zi} = A_z - \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} W_i \tag{A-8}$$

F_{yi} in Eq. A-7 can be further expanded into the following:

$$F_{y1} = A_y$$
$$F_{y2} = A_y - G_1$$
$$F_{y3} = A_y - (G_1 + G_2)$$
.
.
.
$$F_{yi} = A_y - (G_1 + G_2 + G_3 + \ldots + G_{i-1})$$
.
.
.
$$F_{yn} = A_y - (G_1 + G_2 + G_3 + \ldots + G_{n-1})$$

F_{zi} in Eq. A-8 can be further expanded into the following:

$$F_{z1} = A_z$$
$$F_{z2} = A_z - W_1$$
$$F_{z3} = A_z - (W_1 + W_2)$$
.
.
.
$$F_{zi} = A_z - (W_1 + W_2 + W_3 + \ldots + W_{i-1})$$
.
.
.
$$F_{zn} = A_z - (W_1 + W_2 + W_3 + \ldots + W_{n-1})$$

The term F_{yi} may be either positive or negative depending on the magnitude of the gravity loads G_i and the end reaction A_y. Similarly, the term F_{zi} may be either positive or negative depending on the magnitude of the wind loads W_i and the end reaction A_z. The positive and negative signs relate to the shear force diagram for each loading; while the direction of the force components, F_{yi} and F_{zi}, are always opposite of the direction of the applied loads.

f. Determine A_x by equating the total length of the wire L_o with the sum of all segment lengths, as follows:

$$L_o = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \ell_1 = \sqrt{A_x^2 + F_{y1}^2 + F_{z1}^2}\,\frac{x_1}{A_x} + \sqrt{A_x^2 + F_{y2}^2 + F_{z2}^2}\,\frac{x_2}{A_x} + \ldots + \sqrt{A_x^2 + F_{yn}^2 + F_{zn}^2}\,\frac{x_n}{A_x} \tag{A-9}$$

A_x is the only unknown in Eq. A-9 (because L_o was determined in the dead load analysis) and can be obtained by trial and error.

g. The vertical structural support will be subjected to the force components A_x, A_y, and A_z at the point of attachment of the wire. These components are due to the gravity and normal wind loads acting simultaneously on the span-wire structure.

h. Determine the maximum tension T in the wire due to Group II or Group III load combination by the following equation:

$$T_A = \max\left(T_A, T_B\right) \tag{A-10}$$

where T_A, the tension in the wire at end A, is given by:

$$T_A = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2 + A_z^2} \tag{A-11}$$

and T_B, the tension in the wire at end B (with $B_x = A_x$) is given by:

$$T_B = \sqrt{B_x^2 + B_y^2 + B_z^2} \tag{A-12}$$

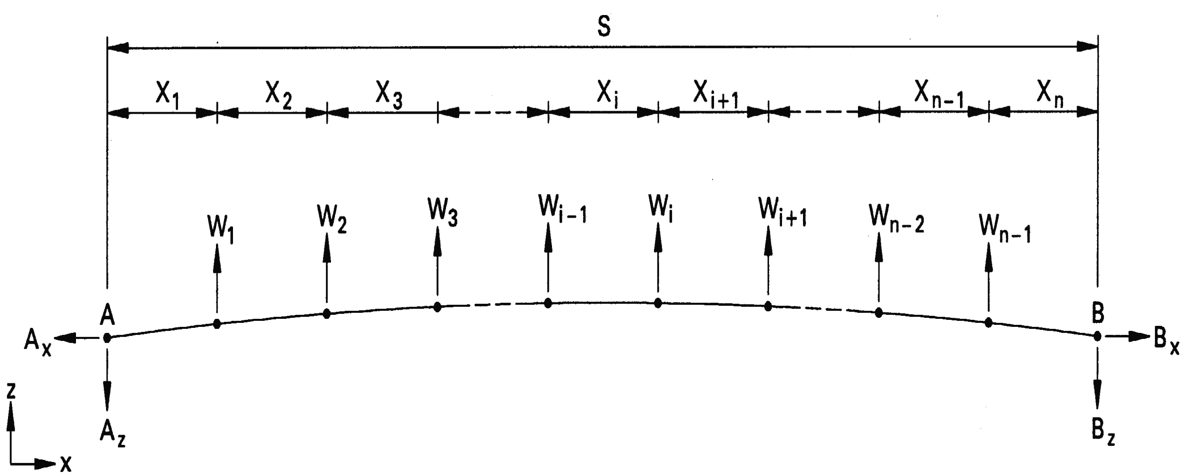


Figure A-3—Wind Loads

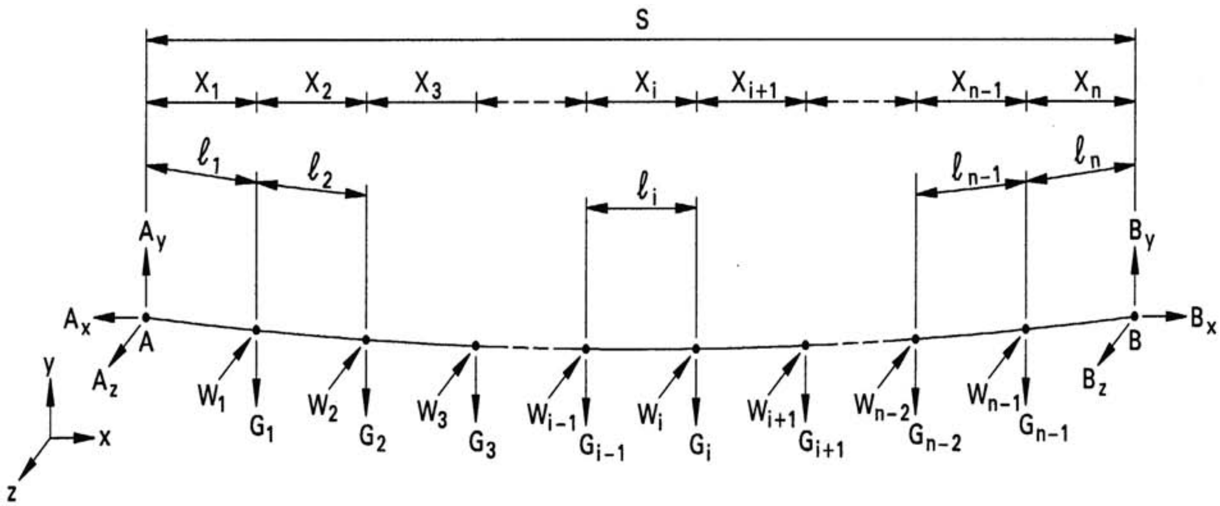


Figure A-4—Wind and Gravity Loads

A8—DETAILED METHOD

The detailed method for the analysis of span-wire structures is based on static equilibrium of three-dimensional wires. It is an expansion of the simplified method and includes the effect of the lateral deflections of the vertical supports. A procedure for calculating the tension in span wires using the detailed method is outlined in Articles A8.1 and A8.2.

A8.1—Group I Load Combination (Dead Load Only)

For Group I load combination, the values for wire tension are identical to the values determined with the simplified method.

For the detailed method under Group I load combination, the analysis is as follows:

a. Determine the total length L_o of the wire and tension in the wire for Group I load combination, based on the procedure in Article A7.1.

b. Determine the horizontal deflection d_{DL} of each vertical support in the direction of the span due to dead loads only. This deflection is caused by the force component in the wire, equivalent in magnitude to A_x (or B_x), acting on the vertical support.

A8.2—Group II and Group III Load Combinations (Dead, Ice, and Wind Loads)

A conceptual loading for a span-wire structure under Group II and Group III load combinations (i.e., dead, ice, and wind loads) is provided in Figure A-4. The analysis is as follows:

a. Determine initial A_x (assuming rigid supports) due to Group II or Group III load combinations, based on the procedure in Article A7.2.

b. Determine the horizontal deflection of the vertical support due to wind loads only for Group II, or wind and ice loads only for Group III. This can be done by subtracting the horizontal deflection d_{DL} of the vertical support due to dead load only from the horizontal deflection d_j of the vertical support due to the load combination's assumed value of A_x for wind and gravity loads.

c. To account for the effects from the vertical supports deflection on the tension in the wire, adjust the length of the wire by adding the lateral inward deflection of the vertical supports due to wind loads only, or wind and ice loads only to L_o, the total length of the wire for Group I load combination.

$$L_j = L_o + \left(d_{jA} - d_{DLA}\right) + \left(d_{jB} - d_{DLB}\right) \tag{A-13}$$

When the vertical supports at both ends have the same flexural stiffness, Eq. A-13 takes the form:

$$L_j = L_o + 2\left(d_j - d_{DL}\right) \tag{A-14}$$

d. Determine the corrected horizontal reaction A_x by solving Eq. A-9 using the adjusted length L_j obtained from Eq. A-13 in place of the length L_o shown in Eq. A-9.

e. With each corrected value of A_x, repeat steps b) through d) until the adjusted length converges to a constant value for two consecutive cycles (a difference of less than two percent between cycles should be acceptable). Use the A_x value calculated in step d) to determine the new value of d_j to be used in step b). The final value of A_x is equal to the corrected horizontal reaction A_x at convergence.

f. The vertical structural support will be subjected to the force components in the *x*-, *y*-, and *z*-directions at the point of attachment of the wire. These components are due to the gravity and normal wind loads acting simultaneously on the span-wire structure.

The analysis of span-wire structures using the simplified method is conservative as compared to using the detailed method of analysis. The detailed method requires the determination of the structural dimensions of the vertical support (i.e., wall thickness, top diameter, bottom diameter) prior to the analysis of the span wire. If those dimensions are not known, tentative dimensions may be assumed, but the analysis must be repeated once the final structural dimensions of the vertical support are determined.

A9—REFERENCES

Costello, G. A. 1978. "Analytical Investigation of Wire Rope," *Applied Mechanics Reviews*. American Society of Mechanical Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 31, No. 7 (July 1978).

Florida DOT. 1992. *Strain Pole Program Version 1.65*. Florida Department of Transportation, Tallahassee, FL.

Fouad, F. H., E. A. Calvert, and E. Nunez. 1998. *Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals*, NCHRP Report 411. Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC.

McDonald, B., and A. Peyrot. 1990. "Sag-Tension Calculations Valid for Any Line Geometry," *Journal of Structural Engineering*. American Society of Civil Engineers, Washington, DC, Vol. 116, No. 9 (September 1990).

Otto, F., ed. 1979. *Tensile Structures*, First Edition. The MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.

Scalzi, J. B., and W. K. McGrath. "Mechanical Properties of Structural Cables," *Journal of the Structural Division*. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 97, No. ST12 (December 1971).

Steinman, D. B. 1929. *A Practical Treatise on Suspension Bridges.* John Wiley and Sons, New York, NY.

Structural Research and Analysis Corp. 1994. *COSMOS/M*, First Edition, Version 1.71. Structural Research and Analysis Corporation, Santa Monica, CA.

Tatum, V. K., G. S. Barfield, and E. H. Gratton. 1992. *Evaluation of Program to Calculate Traffic Signal Layouts*, Research Project 9111. Georgia Department of Transportation, Atlanta, GA.

Wang, C. M. 1984. "Optimal Shape of Cables," *Journal of Engineering Mechanics*. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 110, No. 11 (November 1984).

Wang, C. M., and D. Jin. 1989. "Basic Problem on Optimal Spatial Cable Layout," *Journal of Engineering Mechanics*. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, Vol. 115, No. 5 (May 1989).

APPENDIX B: DESIGN AIDS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

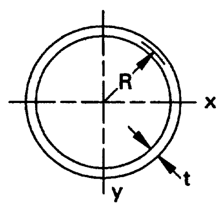
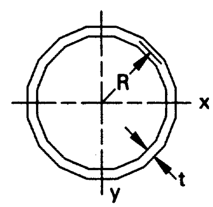
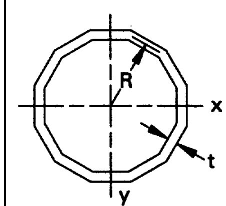
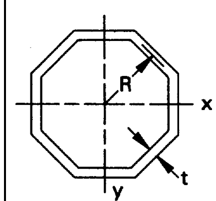
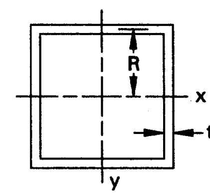
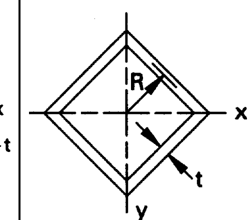
APPENDIX B

DESIGN AIDS

B1—SECTIONAL PROPERTIES FOR TUBULAR SHAPES

Table B-1 provides approximate equations to compute sectional properties of tubular shapes.

Table B-1—Estimated Sectional Properties for Common Tubular Shapes

Property	Round Tube	Hexdecagonal Tube	Dodecagonal Tube	Octagonal Tube	Square Tube	Square Tube (Axis on Diagonal)
Moment of inertia, I	$3.14R^3t$	$3.22R^3t$	$3.29R^3t$	$3.50R^3t$	$5.33R^3t$	$5.33R^3t$
Section modulus, S	$3.14R^2t$	$3.22R^2t$	$3.29R^2t$	$3.50R^2t$	$5.33R^2t$	$3.77R^2t$
Area, A	$6.28Rt$	$6.37Rt$	$6.43Rt$	$6.63Rt$	$8.00Rt$	$8.00Rt$
Shape factor, K_p	1.27	1.27	1.26	1.24	1.12	—
Radius of gyration, r	$0.707R$	$0.711R$	$0.715R$	$0.727R$	$0.816R$	$0.816R$
Cross-sectional constant, C	3.14	3.22	3.29	3.50	5.33	—
Pictorial representation						

Notation:

C = cross-sectional constant used in Table B-3

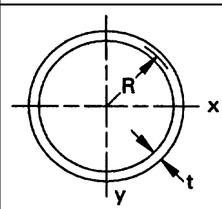
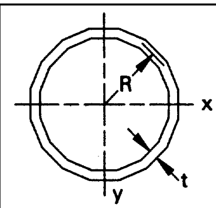
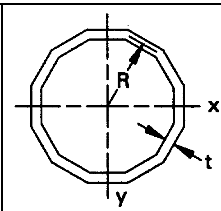
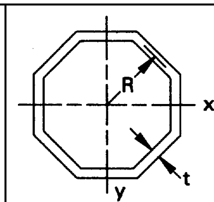
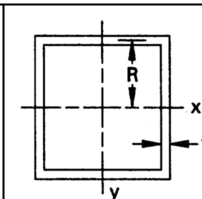
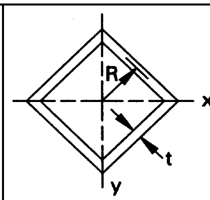
R = radius measured to the mid-thickness of the wall

t = wall thickness

B2—STRESSES FOR TUBULAR SECTIONS

The following equations calculate stresses for round and multisided tubular shapes. If more than one equation is provided, then the greatest value should be used. For round tubes in biaxial bending, the maximum bending stress occurs at the resulting moment. For multisided tubular shapes in biaxial bending, the maximum bending stress occurs at one of the corners. The maximum transverse shear stress for tubular shape occurs in the tube walls that are intersected by the neutral axis, which is normal to the resultantant shear force.

Table B-2—Formulas for Maximum Stresses in Common Tubular Shapes

Stress	Round Tube	Hexdecagonal Tube	Dodecagonal Tube	Octagonal Tube	Square Tube	Square Tube (Axis on Diagonal)
Maximum bending stress, f_b	$\sqrt{f_x^2 + f_y^2}$	$0.199f_x{+}f_y$ or $0.567f_x{+}0.848f_y$ or $0.848f_x{+}0.567f_y$ or $f_x{+}0.199f_y$	$0.732(f_x{+}f_y)$ or $f_x{+}0.268f_y$ or $0.268f_x{+}f_y$	$f_x{+}0.414f_y$ or $0.414f_x + f_y$	$f_x + f_y$	f_x or f_y
Maximum shear stress due to transverse loads, f_{vb}	$\frac{2.0V_s}{A}$	$\frac{2.02V_s}{A}$	$\frac{2.025V_s}{A}$	$\frac{2.05V_s}{A}$	$\frac{2.25V_s}{A}$	$\frac{2.12V_s}{A}$
Maximum shear stress due to torsion, f_{vt}	$\frac{M_z}{6.28R^2t}$	$\frac{M_zk_t}{6.37R^2t}$	$\frac{M_zk_t}{6.43R^2t}$	$\frac{M_zk_t}{6.63R^2t}$	$\frac{M_zk_t}{8.00R^2t}s$	$\frac{M_zk_t}{8.00R^2t}$
Values of k_t, stress concentration factor	See Figure B-1					
Pictorial Representation						

Notation:

A = area
f_{vb} = shear stress due to transverse loads
f_{vt} = shear stress due to torsion
f_x = stress due to bending about the x-axis
f_y = stress due to bending about the y-axis
k_t = stress concentration factor for multisided tubular shapes
M_z = torsional moment
R = radius measured to the mid-thickness of the wall
t = wall thickness
V_s = applied shear

Torsional shear stresses are present on a transverse cross-section due to torsional moments, M_z, and are uniform around the periphery of thin-walled tubular section, except for stress concentrations at the corners of polygonal tubes. The stress concentration factor for a polygonal tube is obtained from Timoshenko's *Strength of Materials*. The stress concentration factor may be found by using Figure B-1 or by using the following equation:

$$k_t = \frac{t}{R}\left[\frac{\dfrac{R}{n't} - \dfrac{1}{2}\left(1 + \dfrac{n'+1}{n'}\right)}{\ln\left(\dfrac{n'+1}{n'}\right)}\right] + \frac{n't}{R} \geq 1.0$$

where:

k_t = stress concentration factor

t = wall thickness

R = radius measured to the mid-thickness of the wall

n' = ratio of the inside-corner radius to wall thickness

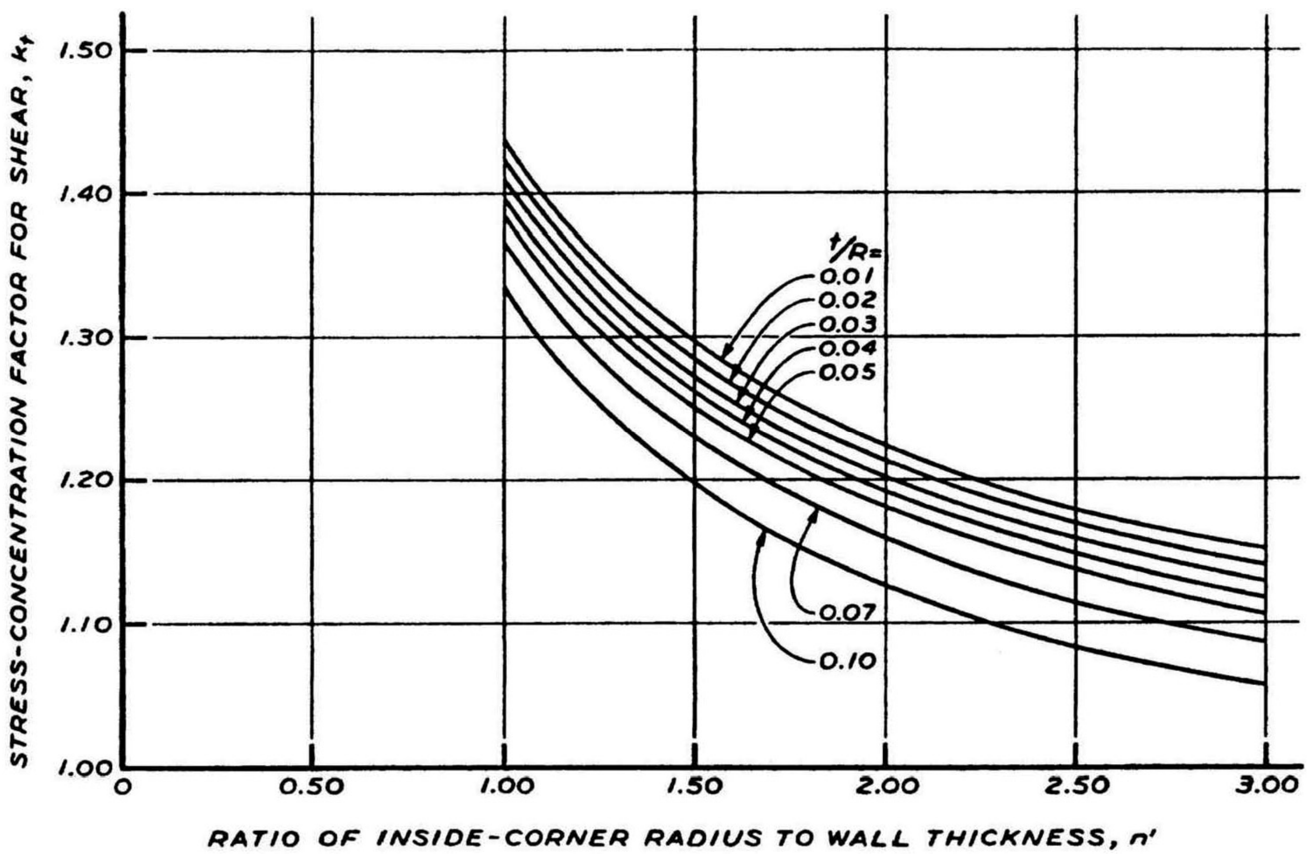
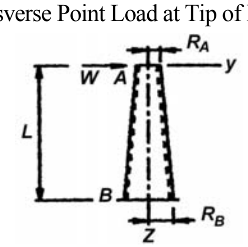
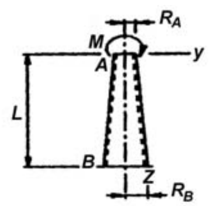
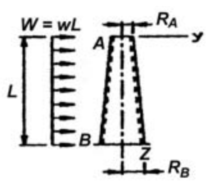
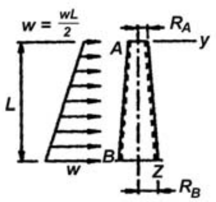


Figure B-1—Stress-Concentration Factors for Polygonal Tubes in Torsion
(Source: Timoshenko, S. 1957. *Strength of Materials—Part II.* D. Van Nostrand Company, Princeton, NJ.)

B3—DEFLECTION EQUATIONS FOR TAPERED TUBULAR CANTILEVERED BEAMS

Equations to compute deflections of prismatic beams are not applicable for tapered beams. Table B-3 provides equations to compute deflection and slope at the tip of tubular cantilever tapered beams. Equations provided in Table B-3 are valid only when the wall thickness *t* is very small in comparison with the mean radius *R* of the cross-section.

Table B-3—Estimated Maximum Deflection and Slope of Tapered Hollow Beams

Transverse Point Load at Tip of Beam 	$y_{\max} = \frac{WL^3}{2ECt(R_B - R_A)^3}\left[2\ln\left(\frac{R_B}{R_A}\right) - \left(\frac{R_B - R_A}{R_B}\right)\left(3 - \frac{R_A}{R_B}\right)\right]$ $\theta_{\max} = \frac{WL^2}{2ECtR_A R_B^2}$
End Moment Applied at Tip of Beam 	$y_{\max} = \frac{ML^2}{2ECt\left(R_A R_B^2\right)}$ $\theta_{\max} = \frac{ML(R_A + R_B)}{2ECtR_A^2 R_B^2}$
Uniform Load 	$y_{\max} = \frac{WL^3}{2ECt(R_B - R_A)^4}\left[3R_A\left(-\ln\left(\frac{R_B}{R_A}\right) - \frac{R_A}{R_B} + \frac{R_A^2}{6R_B^2} + \frac{1}{2}\right) + R_B\right]$ $\theta_{\max} = \frac{WL^2}{2ECt(R_B - R_A)^3}\left[\ln\left(\frac{R_B}{R_A}\right) + \frac{R_A}{2R_B^2}(4R_B - R_A) - \frac{3}{2}\right]$ $W = wL$
Triangular Load 	$y_{\max} = \frac{WL^3}{6ECt(R_B - R_A)^5}\left[12R_A^2\ln\left(\frac{R_B}{R_A}\right) + R_A\left(\frac{8R_A^2}{R_B} - \frac{R_A^3}{R_B^2} - 8R_B\right) + R_B^2\right]$ $\theta_{\max} = \frac{WL^2}{ECt(R_B - R_A)^4}\left[-R_A\left(\ln\left(\frac{R_B}{R_A}\right) - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{R_A}{R_B} - \frac{R_A^2}{6R_B^2}\right) + \frac{R_B}{3}\right]$ $W = \frac{wL}{2}$

Notation:

C = cross-sectional constant defined per Table B-1

E = modulus of elasticity

L = length of the beam (from ground line to tip)

M = applied moment

R_A = radius measured to mid-thickness of wall at free end (see Table B-1)

R_B = radius measured to mid-thickness of wall at fixed end (see Table B-1)

t = wall thickness

W = load

w = load per unit length

y_{max} = maximum horizontal deflection at free end of beam

θ_{max} = maximum slope at free end of beam (rad)

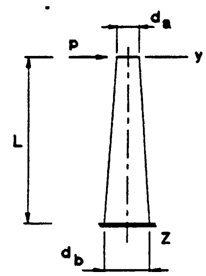
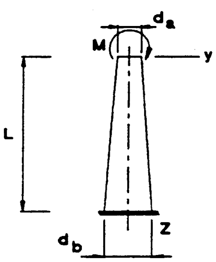
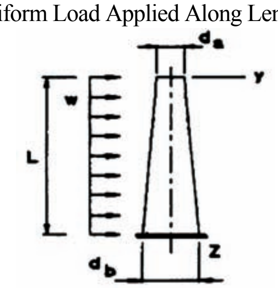
Note: Equations are based on the small deflection theory; therefore tan θ = θ.

Adapted from: Hopkins, R. B. 1970. *Design Analysis of Shafts and Beams*. McGraw–Hill, New York, NY.

B4—DEFLECTION EQUATIONS FOR TAPERED CANTILEVERED BEAMS

Table B-4 provides equations to compute tip deflections and slope for solid round cantilevered beams, such as wood poles.

Table B-4—Maximum Deflection and Slope of Solid Round Tapered Beams

	Slope	Deflection
Transverse Point Load at Free End 	$\theta_{\max} = \dfrac{PL^2}{2.068EI_a\left(\dfrac{d_b}{d_a}\right)^{2.497}}$	$y_{\max} = \dfrac{PL^3}{3EI_a\left(\dfrac{d_b}{d_a}\right)^{3}}$
End Moment Applied at Free End 	$\theta_{\max} = \dfrac{ML}{1.075EI_a\left(\dfrac{d_b}{d_a}\right)^{1.587}}$	$y_{\max} = \dfrac{ML^2}{2.068EI_a\left(\dfrac{d_b}{d_a}\right)^{2.497}}$
Uniform Load Applied Along Length 	$\theta_{\max} = \dfrac{wL^3}{6EI_a\left(\dfrac{d_b}{d_a}\right)^{3}}$	$y_{\max} = \dfrac{wL^4}{7.872EI_a\left(\dfrac{d_b}{d_a}\right)^{3.282}}$

Notation:

d_a = diameter at free end

d_b = diameter at fixed end

E = modulus of elasticity

I_a = moment of inertia of cross-section at free end of beam

L = length

M = moment applied at free end of beam

P = horizontal load applied at free end of beam

w = uniformly distributed load applied along the beam length

y_{max} = deflection at free end of beam

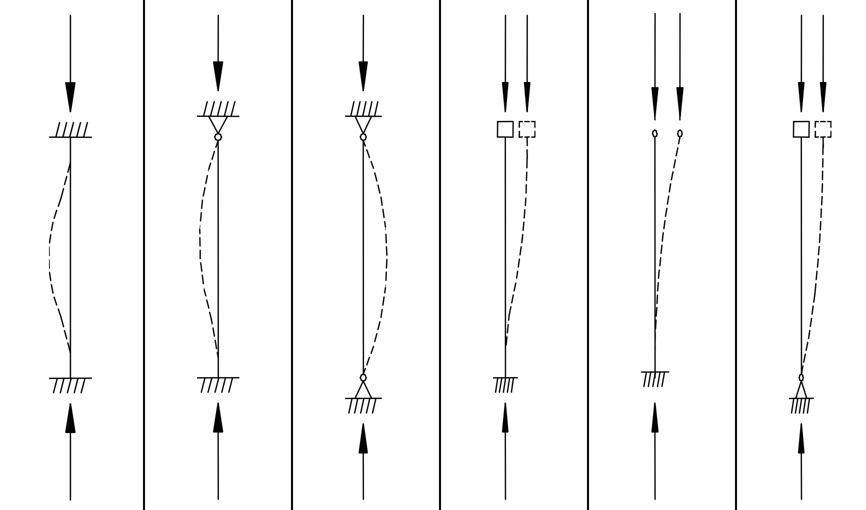
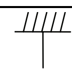
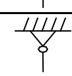
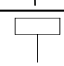
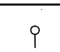
θ_{max} = slope at free end of beam (rad)

Source: Author Unknown. 1985. "Graphs to Determine Structure Deflections," *Transmission and Distribution*. July 1985.

B5—EFFECTIVE LENGTH FACTORS FOR COLUMNS

Table B-5 provides effective length factors for centrally loaded columns with various end conditions.

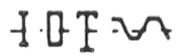
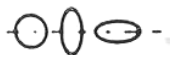
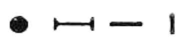
Table B-5—Effective Length Factors for Centrally Loaded Columns

Buckled Shape of Column Shown by Dashed Line						
Theoretical *K* Value	0.50	0.70	1.00	1.00	2.00	2.00
Recommended Design Values when Ideal Conditions are Approximated	0.65	0.80	1.00	1.20	2.10	2.00
End Conditions Code		Rotation fixed, Translation fixed				
		Rotation free, Translation fixed				
		Rotation fixed, Translation free				
		Rotation free, Translation free				

B6—ALLOWABLE STRESSES FOR SELECTED ALUMINUM ALLOYS

Tables B-6 through B-11 provide allowable stresses for welded and nonwelded members for A6005-T5, A6061-T6, and A6063-T6.

Table B-6—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6005—T5 Alloy (MPa)

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	Allowable Stress	
Tension, axial, net section	Any tension member	6-1	131	72.4
Tension in Beams, extreme fiber, net section	Rectangular tubes, structural shapes bent around strong axis 	6-2	131	72.4
	Round or oval tubes 	6-3	165	82.7
	Shapes bent about weak axis, bars, plates 	6-4	193	93.1
Bearing	On bolts	6-5	234	124
	On flat surfaces and on bolts in slotted holes	6-6	159	82.7

6005—T5 Extrusions
Thickness Up Through 25 mm

White bars apply to nonwelded members and to welded members at locations farther than 25 mm from a weld.

Shaded bars apply to within 25 mm of a weld.

Notes:

[a] See Articles 6.4.1, 6.4.2.1, and 6.4.4.1 for additional provisions regarding allowable stresses.

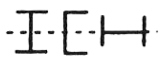
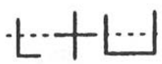
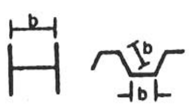
[b] For tubes with circumferential welds, R/t and R_b/t, as applicable, shall be ≤ 20, except when the design meets the details and post-weld heat treatment requirements of Article 6.5.

[c] See Article 6.5 for additional provisions regarding allowable stresses in welded members.

[d] The article numbers and equations referenced in this table refer to Section 6, "Aluminum Design."

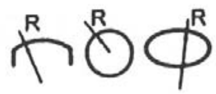
Continued on next page

Table B-6—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6005—T5 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≤ S_1	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≥ S_2
Compression in Columns, axial, gross section	All columns	6-7	131	$\frac{kL}{r} = 9.5$	$139.3 - 0.869\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)$	$\frac{kL}{r} = 66$	$\frac{351\,600}{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$
			72.4	—	72.4	$\frac{kL}{r} = 70$	$\frac{351\,600}{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns buckling about a symmetry axis	6-8	131	$\frac{b}{t} = 5.2$	$159.3 - 5.45\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 10$	$\frac{1062}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			72.4	—	72.4	$\frac{b}{t} = 15$	$\frac{1062}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns not buckling about a symmetry axis 	6-9	131	$\frac{b}{t} = 5.2$	$159.3 - 5.45\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 12$	$\frac{13\,580}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
			72.4	—	72.4	$\frac{b}{t} = 14$	$\frac{13\,580}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
	Flat plates with both edges supported	6-10	131	$\frac{b}{t} = 16$	$159.3 - 1.72\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 33$	$\frac{3378}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			72.4	—	72.4	$\frac{b}{t} = 47$	$\frac{3378}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$

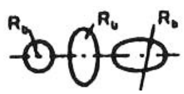
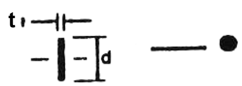
Continued on next page

Table B-6—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6005—T5 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≤ S_1	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≥ S_2
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section (continued)							
	Curved plates supported on both edges, walls of round or oval tubes[b] 	6-11	131	$\frac{R}{t}=16$	$153.1-5.52\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}$	$\frac{R}{t}=141$	$\frac{22\,060}{\left(\frac{R}{t}\right)\left(1+\frac{\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
			72.4	$\frac{R}{t}=5.1$	$78.6-2.76\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}$	$\frac{R}{t}=340$	$\frac{22\,060}{\left(\frac{R}{t}\right)\left(1+\frac{\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$

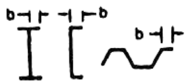
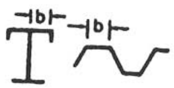
Continued on next page

Table B-6—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6005—T5 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≤ S_1	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≥ S_2
Compression in Beams, extreme fiber, gross section	Single web beams bent about strong axis	6-12	145	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 23$	$164.8 - 0.855\frac{L_b}{r_y}$	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 79$	$\frac{600\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b}{r_y}\right)^2}$
			72.4	—	72.4	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 91$	$\frac{600\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b}{r_y}\right)^2}$
	Round or oval tubes[b]	6-13	172	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 28$	$271.0 - 18.62\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 81$	same as Eq. 6-11 with $R = R_b$
			82.7	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 53$	$128.2 - 6.89\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 134$	same as Eq. 6-11 with $R = R_b$
	Solid rectangular and round section beams	6-14	193	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 13$	$279.2 - 6.41\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}}$	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 29$	$\frac{78\,600}{\left(\frac{d}{t}\right)^2\left(\frac{L_b}{d}\right)}$
			93.1	—	93.1	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 29$	$\frac{78\,600}{\left(\frac{d}{t}\right)^2\left(\frac{L_b}{d}\right)}$
	Rectangular tubes and box sections	6-15	145	$\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}} = 146$	$164.8 - 1.66\sqrt{\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}}}$	$\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}} = 1700$	$\frac{165\,500}{\left(\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}}\right)}$
			72.4	—	72.4	$\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}} = 2290$	$\frac{165\,500}{\left(\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}}\right)}$

Continued on next page

Table B-6—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6005—T5 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Components of Beams, component under uniform compression, gross section	Flat plates supported on one edge 	6-16	145	$\frac{b}{t} = 6.8$	$188.2 - 6.41\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 10$	$\frac{1262}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			72.4	—	72.4	$\frac{b}{t} = 17$	$\frac{1262}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates with both edges supported 	6-17	145	$\frac{b}{t} = 22$	$188.2 - 2.0\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 33$	$\frac{4000}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			93.1	—	72.4	$\frac{b}{t} = 55$	$\frac{4000}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Curved plates supported on both edges[b] 	6-18	172	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 1.6$	$180.6 - 6.48\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 141$	$\frac{26\,200}{\left(\frac{R_b}{t}\right)\left(1 + \frac{\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
			82.7	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 1.3$	$85.5 - 2.41\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 340$	Same as nonwelded members

Continued on next page

Table B-6—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6005—T5 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

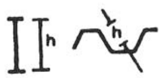
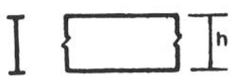
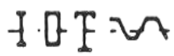
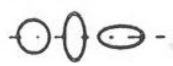
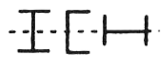
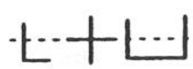
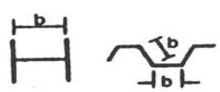
Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Components of Beams, component under bending in own plane, gross section	Flat plates with compression edge free, tension edge supported 	6-19	193	$\frac{b}{t} = 8.9$	$279.2 - 9.72\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 19$	$\frac{33\,780}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
			93.1	—	93.1	$\frac{b}{t} = 19$	$\frac{33\,780}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
	Flat plate with both edges supported 	6-20	193	$\frac{h}{t} = 46$	$279.2 - 1.86\frac{h}{t}$	$\frac{h}{t} = 75$	$\frac{10\,480}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)}$
			93.1	—	93.1	$\frac{h}{t} = 113$	$\frac{10\,480}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)}$
Shear in Webs, gross section	Unstiffened flat webs 	6-21	83	$\frac{h}{t} = 36$	$107.6 - 0.683\frac{h}{t}$	$\frac{h}{t} = 65$	$\frac{268\,900}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)^2}$
			41.4	—	41.4	$\frac{h}{t} = 81$	$\frac{268\,900}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)^2}$

Table B-7—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6005—T5 Alloy (ksi)

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	Allowable Stress		
Tension, axial, net section	Any tension member	6-1	19	10.5	6005—T5 Extrusions Thickness ≤1.0 in.
Tension in Beams, extreme fiber, net section	Rectangular tubes, structural shapes bent around strong axis 	6-2	19	10.5	White bars apply to nonwelded members and to welded members at locations farther than 1.0 in. from a weld.
	Round or oval tubes 	6-3	24	12	Shaded bars apply to within 1.0 in. of a weld.
	Shapes bent about weak axis, bars, plates 	6-4	28	13.5	Notes: [a] See Articles 6.4.1, 6.4.2.1, and 6.4.4.1 for additional provisions regarding allowable stresses. [b] For tubes with circumferential welds, R/t and R_b/t, as applicable, shall be ≤20, except when the design meets the details and post-weld heat treatment requirements of Article 6.5. [c] See Article 6.5 for additional provisions regarding allowable stresses in welded members. [d] The article numbers and equations referenced in this table refer to Section 6, "Aluminum Design."
Bearing	On bolts	6-5	34	18	
	On flat surfaces and on bolts in slotted holes	6-6	23	12	

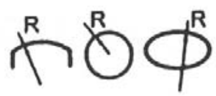
Continued on next page

Table B-7—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6005—T5 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\le S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\ge S_2$
Compression in Columns, axial, gross section	All columns	6-7	19	$\frac{kL}{r} = 9.5$	$20.2 - 0.126\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)$	$\frac{kL}{r} = 66$	$\frac{51\,000}{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$
			10.5	—	10.5	$\frac{kL}{r} = 70$	$\frac{51\,000}{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns buckling about a symmetry axis 	6-8	19	$\frac{b}{t} = 5.2$	$23.1 - 0.79\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 10$	$\frac{154}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			10.5	—	10.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 15$	$\frac{154}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns not buckling about a symmetry axis 	6-9	19	$\frac{b}{t} = 5.2$	$23.1 - 0.79\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 12$	$\frac{1970}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
			10.5	—	10.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 14$	$\frac{1970}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
	Flat plates with both edges supported 	6-10	19	$\frac{b}{t} = 16$	$23.1 - 0.25\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 33$	$\frac{490}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			10.5	—	10.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 47$	$\frac{490}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$

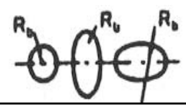
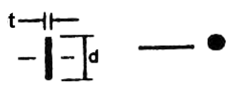
Continued on next page

Table B-7—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6005—T5 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section	Curved plates supported on both edges, walls of round or oval tubes[b] 	6-11	19	$\frac{R}{t}=16$	$22.2-0.80\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}$	$\frac{R}{t}=141$	$\frac{3200}{\left(\frac{R}{t}\right)\left(1+\frac{\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
			10.5	$\frac{R}{t}=5.1$	$11.4-0.40\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}$	$\frac{R}{t}=340$	$\frac{3200}{\left(\frac{R}{t}\right)\left(1+\frac{\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$

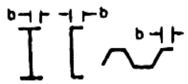
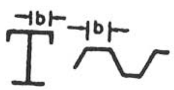
Continued on next page

Table B-7—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6005—T5 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Beams, extreme fiber, gross section	Single web beams bent about strong axis 	6-12	21	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 23$	$23.9 - 0.124\frac{L_b}{r_y}$	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 79$	$\frac{87\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b}{r_y}\right)^2}$
			10.5	—	10.5	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 91$	$\frac{87\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b}{r_y}\right)^2}$
	Round or oval tubes[b] 	6-13	25	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 28$	$39.3 - 2.70\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 81$	Same as Eq. 6-11 with $R = R_b$
			12	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 53$	$18.6 - 1.00\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 134$	Same as Eq. 6-11 with $R = R_b$
	Solid rectangular and round section beams 	6-14	28	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 13$	$40.5 - 0.93\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}}$	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 29$	$\frac{11\,400}{\left(\frac{d}{t}\right)^2\left(\frac{L_b}{d}\right)}$
			13.5	—	13.5	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 29$	$\frac{11\,400}{\left(\frac{d}{t}\right)^2\left(\frac{L_b}{d}\right)}$
	Rectangular tubes and box sections 	6-15	21	$\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}} = 146$	$23.9 - 0.24\sqrt{\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}}}$	$\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}} = 1700$	$\frac{24\,000}{\left(\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}}\right)}$
			10.5	—	10.5	$\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}} = 2290$	$\frac{24\,000}{\left(\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}}\right)}$

Continued on next page

Table B-7—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6005—T5 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≤ S_1	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≥ S_2
Compression in Components of Beams, component under uniform compression, gross section	Flat plates supported on one edge 	6-16	21	$\frac{b}{t} = 6.8$	$27.3 - 0.93\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 10$	$\frac{183}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			10.5	—	10.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 17$	$\frac{183}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates with both edges supported 	6-17	21	$\frac{b}{t} = 22$	$27.3 - 0.29\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 33$	$\frac{580}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			13.5	—	10.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 55$	$\frac{580}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Curved plates supported on both edges[b] 	6-18	25	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 1.6$	$26.2 - 0.94\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 141$	$\frac{3800}{\left(\frac{R_b}{t}\right)\left(1+\frac{\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
			12	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 1.3$	$12.4 - 0.35\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 340$	Same as nonwelded members

Continued on next page

Table B-7—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6005—T5 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

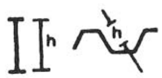
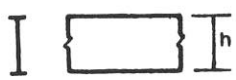
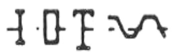
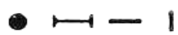
Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Components of Beams, component under bending in own plane, gross section	Flat plates with compression edge free, tension edge supported	6-19	28	$\frac{b}{t} = 8.9$	$40.5 - 1.41\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 19$	$\frac{4900}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
			13.5	—	13.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 19$	$\frac{4900}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
	Flat plate with both edges supported	6-20	28	$\frac{h}{t} = 46$	$40.5 - 0.27\frac{h}{t}$	$\frac{h}{t} = 75$	$\frac{1520}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)}$
			13.5	—	13.5	$\frac{h}{t} = 113$	$\frac{1520}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)}$
Shear in Webs, gross section	Unstiffened flat webs	6-21	12	$\frac{h}{t} = 36$	$15.6 - 0.099\frac{h}{t}$	$\frac{h}{t} = 65$	$\frac{39\,000}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)^2}$
			6	—	6	$\frac{h}{t} = 81$	$\frac{39\,000}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)^2}$

Table B-8—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6061—T6 Alloy (MPa)

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	Allowable Stress	
Tension, axial, net section	Any tension member	6-1	131	75.8[e]
Tension in Beams, extreme fiber, net section	Rectangular tubes, structural shapes bent around strong axis 	6-2	131	75.8[e]
	Round or oval tubes 	6-3	165	93[e]
	Shapes bent about weak axis, bars, plates 	6-4	193	110[e]
Bearing	On bolts	6-5	234	124[e]
	On flat surfaces and on bolts in slotted holes	6-6	159	82.7[e]

6061—T6 Extrusions Up Through 25 mm, Sheet and Plate, Standard Structural Shapes, Drawn Tube, Rolled Rod and Bar

White bars apply to nonwelded members and to welded members at locations farther than 25 mm from a weld

Shaded bars apply to within 25 mm of a weld

Notes:

[a] See Articles 6.4.1, 6.4.2.1, and 6.4.4.1 for additional provisions regarding allowable stresses.

[b] For tubes with circumferential welds, R/t and R_b/t, as applicable, shall be ≤20, except when the design meets the details and post-weld heat treatment requirements of Article 6.5

[c] See Article 6.5 for additional provision regarding allowable stresses in welded members.

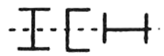
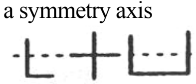
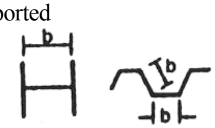
[d] The article numbers and equations referenced in this table refer to Section 6, "Aluminum Design."

[e] Values when welded with 5183, 5356, or 5556 alloy filler wire, regardless of thickness. Values also apply to thicknesses ≤9.5 mm when welded with 4043 alloy filler wire; for greater thicknesses multiply allowable tensile stresses by 0.8 and allowable compressive and shear stresses by 0.75.

[f] For all thicknesses with filler alloys 5183, 5356 or 5556; and for thicknesses ≤9.5 mm for 4043 filler alloy.

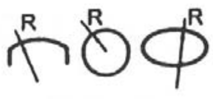
Continued on next page

Table B-8—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6061—T6 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≤ S_1	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≥ S_2
Compression in Columns, axial, gross section	All columns	6-7	131	$\frac{kL}{r} = 9.5$	$139.3 - 0.869\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)$	$\frac{kL}{r} = 66$	$\frac{351\,600}{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$
			82.7[e]	—	82.7[e]	$\frac{kL}{r} = 65$ [f]	$\frac{351\,600}{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns buckling about a symmetry axis 	6-8	131	$\frac{b}{t} = 5.2$	$159.3 - 5.45\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 10$	$\frac{1062}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			82.7[e]	—	82.7[e]	$\frac{b}{t} = 13$ [f]	$\frac{1062}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns not buckling about a symmetry axis 	6-9	131	$\frac{b}{t} = 5.2$	$159.3 - 5.45\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 12$	$\frac{13\,580}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
			82.7[e]	—	82.7[e]	$\frac{b}{t} = 13$ [f]	$\frac{13\,580}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
	Flat plates with both edges supported 	6-10	131	$\frac{b}{t} = 16$	$159.3 - 1.72\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 33$	$\frac{3378}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			82.7[e]	—	82.7[e]	$\frac{b}{t} = 41$ [f]	$\frac{3378}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$

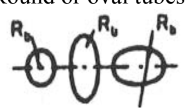
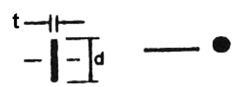
Continued on next page

Table B-8—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6061—T6 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≤ S_1	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≥ S_2
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section (continued)	Curved plates supported on both edges, walls of round or oval tubes[b] 	6-11	131	$\frac{R}{t} = 16$	$153.1 - 5.52\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}$	$\frac{R}{t} = 141$	$\frac{22\,060}{\left(\frac{R}{t}\right)\left(1 + \frac{\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
			82.7[e]	$\frac{R}{t} = 9.0$	$93.1 - 3.45\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}$	$\frac{R}{t} = 290$	$\frac{22\,060}{\left(\frac{R}{t}\right)\left(1 + \frac{\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$

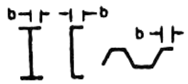
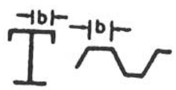
Continued on next page

Table B-8—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6061—T6 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Beams, extreme fiber, gross section	Single web beams bent about strong axis 	6-12	145	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 23$	$164.8 - 0.855\frac{L_b}{r_y}$	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 79$	$\frac{600\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b}{r_y}\right)^2}$
			82.7[e]	—	82.7[e]	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 85$ [f]	$\frac{600\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b}{r_y}\right)^2}$
	Round or oval tubes[b] 	6-13	172	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 28$	$270.6 - 18.61\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 81$	Same as Eq. 6-11 with $R = R_b$
			96.5[e]	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 51$	$164.8 - 9.58\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 137$	Same as Eq. 6-11 with $R = R_b$
	Solid rectangular and round section beams 	6-14	193	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 13$	$279.2 - 6.41\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}}$	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 29$	$\frac{78\,600}{\left(\frac{d}{t}\right)^2\left(\frac{L_b}{d}\right)}$
			110[e]	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 26$	$279.2 - 6.41\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}}$	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 29$	$\frac{78\,600}{\left(\frac{d}{t}\right)^2\left(\frac{L_b}{d}\right)}$
	Rectangular tubes and box sections 	6-15	145	$\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}} = 146$	$164.8 - 1.66\sqrt{\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}}}$	$\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}} = 1700$	$\frac{165\,500}{\left(\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}}\right)}$
			82.7[e]	—	82.7[e]	$\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}} = 2000$ [f]	$\frac{165\,500}{\left(\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}}\right)}$

Continued on next page

Table B-8—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6061—T6 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≤ S_1	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≥ S_2
Compression in Components of Beams, component under uniform compression, gross section	Flat plates supported on one edge 	6-16	145	$\frac{b}{t}=6.8$	$188.2-6.41\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t}=10$	$\frac{1255}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			82.7[e]	—	82.7[e]	$\frac{b}{t}=15$[f]	$\frac{1255}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates with both edges supported 	6-17	145	$\frac{b}{t}=22$	$188.2-2.0\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t}=33$	$\frac{4000}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			82.7[e]	—	82.7[e]	$\frac{b}{t}=48$[f]	$\frac{4000}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Curved plates supported on both edges[b] 	6-18	172	$\frac{R_b}{t}=1.6$	$180.6-6.48\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t}=141$	$\frac{26\,200}{\left(\frac{R_b}{t}\right)\left(1+\frac{\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
			96.5[e]	$\frac{R_b}{t}=2.5$	$101.4-3.03\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t}=290$	Same as nonwelded members

Continued on next page

Table B-8—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6061—T6 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

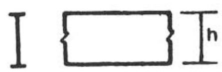
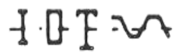
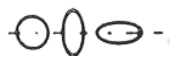
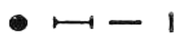
Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≤ S_1	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≥ S_2
Compression in Components of Beams, component under bending in own plane, gross section	Flat plates with compression edge free, tension edge supported 	6-19	193	$\frac{b}{t} = 8.9$	$279.2 - 9.72\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 19$	$\frac{33\,780}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
			110[e]	$\frac{b}{t} = 17$	$279.2 - 9.72\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 19$	$\frac{33\,780}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
	Flat plate with both edges supported 	6-20	193	$\frac{h}{t} = 46$	$279.2 - 1.86\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{h}{t} = 75$	$\frac{10\,480}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)}$
			110[e]	—	110[e]	$\frac{h}{t} = 95$ [f]	$\frac{10\,480}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)}$
Shear in Webs, gross section	Unstiffened flat webs 	6-21	83	$\frac{h}{t} = 36$	$107.6 - 0.683\frac{h}{t}$	$\frac{h}{t} = 65$	$\frac{268\,900}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)^2}$
			51.7[e]	—	51.7[e]	$\frac{h}{t} = 72$ [f]	$\frac{268\,900}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)^2}$

Table B-9—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6061—T6 Alloy (ksi)

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	Allowable Stress	
Tension, axial, net section	Any tension member	6-1	19	11[e]
Tension in Beams, extreme fiber, net section	Rectangular tubes, structural shapes bent around strong axis 	6-2	19	11[e]
	Round or oval tubes 	6-3	24	13.5[e]
	Shapes bent about weak axis, bars, plates 	6-4	28	16[e]
Bearing	On bolts	6-5	34	18[e]
	On flat surfaces and on bolts in slotted holes	6-6	23	12[e]

6061—T6 Extrusions Up Through 1.0 in., Sheet and Plate, Standard Structural Shapes, Drawn Tube, Rolled Rod and Bar

White bars apply to nonwelded members and to welded members at locations farther than 1.0 in. from a weld

Shaded bars apply to within 1.0 in. of a weld

Notes:

[a] See Articles 6.4.1, 6.4.2.1, and 6.4.4.1 for additional provisions regarding allowable stresses.

[b] For tubes with circumferential welds, R/t and R_b/t, as applicable, shall be ≤20, except when the design meets the details and post-weld heat treatment requirements of Article 6.5.

[c] See Article 6.5 for additional provisions regarding allowable stresses in welded members.

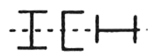
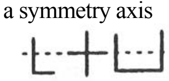
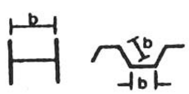
[d] The article numbers and equations referenced in this table refer to Section 6, "Aluminum Design."

[e] Values when welded with 5183, 5356, or 5556 alloy filler wire, regardless of thickness. Values also apply to thicknesses ≤0.375 in. when welded with 4043 alloy filler wire; for greater thicknesses multiply allowable tensile stresses by 0.8 and allowable compressive and shear stresses by 0.75.

[f] For all thicknesses with filler alloys 5183, 5356 or 5556 and for thicknesses ≤0.375 in. for 4043 filler alloy.

Continued on next page

Table B-9—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6061—T6 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Columns, axial, gross section	All columns	6-7	19	$\frac{kL}{r} = 9.5$	$20.2 - 0.126\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)$	$\frac{kL}{r} = 66$	$\frac{51\,000}{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$
			12[e]	—	12[e]	$\frac{kL}{r} = 65$ [f]	$\frac{51\,000}{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns buckling about a symmetry axis 	6-8	19	$\frac{b}{t} = 5.2$	$23.1 - 0.79\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 10$	$\frac{154}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			12[e]	—	12[e]	$\frac{b}{t} = 13$ [f]	$\frac{154}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns not buckling about a symmetry axis 	6-9	19	$\frac{b}{t} = 5.2$	$23.1 - 0.79\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 12$	$\frac{1970}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
			12[e]	—	12[e]	$\frac{b}{t} = 13$ [f]	$\frac{1970}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
	Flat plates with both edges supported 	6-10	19	$\frac{b}{t} = 16$	$23.1 - 0.25\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 33$	$\frac{490}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			12[e]	—	12[e]	$\frac{b}{t} = 41$ [f]	$\frac{490}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$

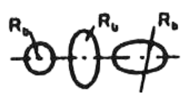
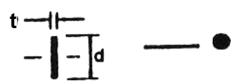
Continued on next page

Table B-9—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6061—T6 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section (continued)	Curved plates supported on both edges, walls of round or oval tubes[b] 	6-11	19	$\frac{R}{t}=16$	$22.2-0.80\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}$	$\frac{R}{t}=141$	$\frac{3200}{\left(\frac{R}{t}\right)\left(1+\frac{\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
			12[e]	$\frac{R}{t}=9.0$	$13.5-0.50\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}$	$\frac{R}{t}=290$	$\frac{3200}{\left(\frac{R}{t}\right)\left(1+\frac{\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$

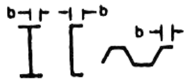
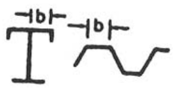
Continued on next page

Table B-9—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6061—T6 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≤ S_1	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness ≥ S_2
Compression in Beams, extreme fiber, gross section	Single web beams bent about strong axis 	6-12	21	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 23$	$23.9 - 0.124\frac{L_b}{r_y}$	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 79$	$\frac{87\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b}{r_y}\right)^2}$
			12[e]	—	12[e]	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 85$ [f]	$\frac{87\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b}{r_y}\right)^2}$
	Round or oval tubes[b] 	6-13	25	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 28$	$39.3 - 2.70\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 81$	Same as Eq. 6-11 with $R = R_b$
			14[e]	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 51$	$23.9 - 1.39\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 137$	Same as Eq. 6-11 with $R = R_b$
	Solid rectangular and round section beams 	6-14	28	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 13$	$40.5 - 0.93\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}}$	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 29$	$\frac{11\,400}{\left(\frac{d}{t}\right)^2\left(\frac{L_b}{d}\right)}$
			16[e]	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 26$	$40.5 - 0.93\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}}$	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 29$	$\frac{11\,400}{\left(\frac{d}{t}\right)^2\left(\frac{L_b}{d}\right)}$
	Rectangular tubes and box sections 	6-15	21	$\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}} = 146$	$23.9 - 0.24\sqrt{\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}}}$	$\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}} = 1700$	$\frac{24\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}}\right)}$
			12[e]	—	12[e]	$\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}} = 2000$ [f]	$\frac{24\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}}\right)}$

Continued on next page

Table B-9—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6061—T6 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Components of Beams, component under uniform compression, gross section	Flat plates supported on one edge 	6-16	21	$\frac{b}{t} = 6.8$	$27.3 - 0.93\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 10$	$\frac{182}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			12[e]	—	12[e]	$\frac{b}{t} = 15$ [f]	$\frac{182}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates with both edges supported 	6-17	21	$\frac{b}{t} = 22$	$27.3 - 0.29\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 33$	$\frac{580}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			12[e]	—	12[e]	$\frac{b}{t} = 48$ [f]	$\frac{580}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Curved plates supported on both edges[b] 	6-18	25	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 1.6$	$26.2 - 0.94\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 141$	$\frac{3800}{\left(\frac{R_b}{t}\right)\left(1 + \frac{\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
			14[e]	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 2.5$	$1.47 - 0.44\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 290$	Same as nonwelded members

Continued on next page

Table B-9—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6061—T6 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

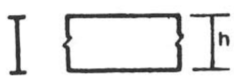
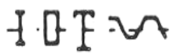
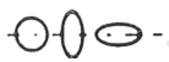
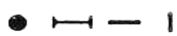
Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\le S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\ge S_2$
Compression in Components of Beams, component under bending in own plane, gross section	Flat plates with compression edge free, tension edge supported 	6-19	28	$\frac{b}{t} = 8.9$	$40.5 - 1.41\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 19$	$\frac{4900}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
			16[e]	$\frac{b}{t} = 17$	$40.5 - 1.41\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 19$	$\frac{4900}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
	Flat plate with both edges supported 	6-20	28	$\frac{h}{t} = 46$	$40.5 - 0.27\frac{h}{t}$	$\frac{h}{t} = 75$	$\frac{1520}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)}$
			16[e]	—	16[e]	$\frac{h}{t} = 95$ [f]	$\frac{1520}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)}$
Shear in Webs, gross section	Unstiffened flat webs 	6-21	12	$\frac{h}{t} = 36$	$15.6 - 0.099\frac{h}{t}$	$\frac{h}{t} = 65$	$\frac{39\,000}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)^2}$
			7.5[e]	—	7.5[e]	$\frac{h}{t} = 72$ [f]	$\frac{39\,000}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)^2}$

Table B-10—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6063—T6 Alloy (MPa)

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	Allowable Stress		
Tension, axial, net section	Any tension member	6-1	103	44.8	6063—T6 Extrusions, Pipe
Tension in Beams, extreme fiber, net section	Rectangular tubes, structural shapes bent around strong axis 	6-2	103	44.8	White bars apply to nonwelded members and to welded members at locations farther than 25 mm from a weld
	Round or oval tubes 	6-3	124	55.2	Shaded bars apply to within 25 mm of a weld
	Shapes bent about weak axis, bars, plates 	6-4	138	58.6	
Bearing	On bolts	6-5	165	93.1	
	On flat surfaces and on bolts in slotted holes	6-6	110	62.1	

Notes:

[a] See Articles 6.4.1, 6.4.2.1, and 6.4.4.1 for additional provisions regarding allowable stresses.

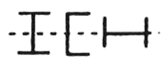
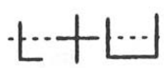
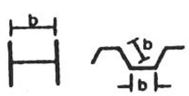
[b] For tubes with circumferential welds, R/t and R_b/t, as applicable, shall be ≤20, except when the design meets the details and post-weld heat treatment requirements of Article 6.5

[c] See Article 6.5 for additional provisions regarding allowable stresses in welded members.

[d] The article numbers and equations referenced in this table refer to Section 6, "Aluminum Design."

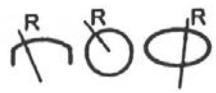
Continued on next page

Table B-10—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6063—T6 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\le S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\ge S_2$
Compression in Columns, axial, gross section	All columns	6-7	93.1	$\frac{kL}{r} = 9.5$	$97.9 - 0.510\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)$	$\frac{kL}{r} = 78$	$\frac{351\,600}{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$
			44.8	—	44.8	$\frac{kL}{r} = 89$	$\frac{351\,600}{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns buckling about a symmetry axis 	6-8	93.1	$\frac{b}{t} = 5.7$	$111.0 - 3.17\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 12$	$\frac{889}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			44.8	—	44.8	$\frac{b}{t} = 20$	$\frac{889}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns not buckling about a symmetry axis 	6-9	93.1	$\frac{b}{t} = 5.7$	$111.0 - 3.17\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 15$	$\frac{13\,580}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
			44.8	—	44.8	$\frac{b}{t} = 17$	$\frac{13\,580}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
	Flat plates with both edges supported 	6-10	93.1	$\frac{b}{t} = 18$	$111.0 - 1.0\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 39$	$\frac{2827}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			44.8	—	44.8	$\frac{b}{t} = 63$	$\frac{2827}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$

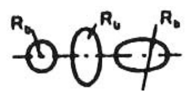
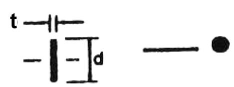
Continued on next page

Table B-10—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6063—T6 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section (continued)	Curved plates supported on both edges, walls of round or oval tubes[b] 	6-11	93.1	$\frac{R}{t}=18$	$107.6-3.45\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}$	$\frac{R}{t}=188$	$\frac{22\,060}{\left(\frac{R}{t}\right)\left(1+\frac{\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
			44.8	$\frac{R}{t}=10$	$49.6-1.52\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}$	$\frac{R}{t}=510$	$\frac{22\,060}{\left(\frac{R}{t}\right)\left(1+\frac{\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$

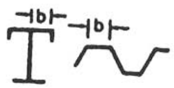
Continued on next page

Table B-10—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6063—T6 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\le S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\ge S_2$
Compression in Beams, extreme fiber, gross section	Single web beams bent about strong axis 	6-12	103	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 23$	$151.1 - 0.503\frac{L_b}{r_y}$	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 94$	$\frac{600\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b}{r_y}\right)^2}$
			44.8	—	44.8	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 116$	$\frac{600\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b}{r_y}\right)^2}$
	Round or oval tubes[b] 	6-13	124	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 33$	$191.0 - 11.72\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 102$	Same as Eq. 6-11 with $R = R_b$
			55.2	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 62$	$88.3 - 4.21\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 206$	Same as Eq. 6-11 with $R = R_b$
	Solid rectangular and round section beams 	6-14	138	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 15$	$192.4 - 3.65\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}}$	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 35$	$\frac{78\,600}{\left(\frac{d}{t}\right)^2\left(\frac{L_b}{d}\right)}$
			58.6	—	58.6	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 37$	$\frac{78\,600}{\left(\frac{d}{t}\right)^2\left(\frac{L_b}{d}\right)}$
	Rectangular tubes and box sections 	6-15	103	$\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}} = 145$	$115.1 - 0.972\sqrt{\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}}}$	$\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}} = 2380$	$\frac{165\,500}{\left(\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}}\right)}$
			44.8	—	44.8	$\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}} = 3690$	$\frac{165\,500}{\left(\frac{L_b S_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_y J}}\right)}$

Continued on next page

Table B-10—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6063—T6 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Components of Beams, component under uniform compression, gross section	Flat plates supported on one edge 	6-16	103	$\frac{b}{t} = 7.4$	$131.0 - 3.72\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 12$	$\frac{1048}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			44.8	—	44.8	$\frac{b}{t} = 23$	$\frac{1048}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates with both edges supported 	6-17	103	$\frac{b}{t} = 24$	$131.0 - 1.172\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 39$	$\frac{3309}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			44.8	—	44.8	$\frac{b}{t} = 74$	$\frac{3309}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Curved plates supported on both edges[b] 	6-18	124	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 0.7$	$127.6 - 4.07\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 188$	$\frac{26\,200}{\left(\frac{R_b}{t}\right)\left(1 + \frac{\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
			55.2	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 0.3$	$5.45 - 1.31\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 510$	Same as nonwelded members

Continued on next page

Table B-10—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6063—T6 Alloy (MPa)—*Continued*

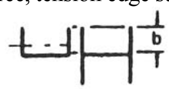
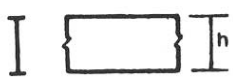
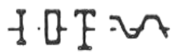
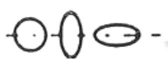
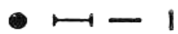
Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Components of Beams, component under bending in own plane, gross section	Flat plates with compression edge free, tension edge supported 	6-19	138	$\frac{b}{t} = 9.8$	$192.4 - 5.59\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 23$	$\frac{33\,780}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
			58.6	—	58.6	$\frac{b}{t} = 24$	$\frac{33\,780}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
	Flat plate with both edges supported 	6-20	138	$\frac{h}{t} = 51$	$192.4 - 1.07\frac{h}{t}$	$\frac{h}{t} = 90$	$\frac{8687}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)}$
			58.6	—	58.6	$\frac{h}{t} = 148$	$\frac{8687}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)}$
Shear in Webs, gross section	Unstiffened flat webs 	6-21	58.6	$\frac{h}{t} = 39$	$73.8 - 0.386\frac{h}{t}$	$\frac{h}{t} = 78$	$\frac{268\,900}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)^2}$
			26.9	—	26.9	$\frac{h}{t} = 100$	$\frac{268\,900}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)^2}$

Table B-11—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6063—T6 Alloy (ksi)

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	Allowable Stress		
Tension, axial, net section	Any tension member	6-1	15	6.5	6063—T6 Extrusions, Pipe
Tension in Beams, extreme fiber, net section	Rectangular tubes, structural shapes bent around strong axis 	6-2	15	6.5	White bars apply to nonwelded members and to welded members at locations farther than 1.0 in. from a weld
	Round or oval tubes 	6-3	18	8.0	Shaded bars apply to within 1.0 in. of a weld
	Shapes bent about weak axis, bars, plates 	6-4	20	8.5	
Bearing	On bolts	6-5	24	13.5	
	On flat surfaces and on bolts in slotted holes	6-6	16	9	

Notes:

[a] See Articles 6.4.1, 6.4.2.1, and 6.4.4.1 for additional provisions regarding allowable stresses.

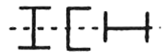
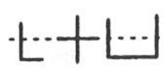
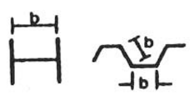
[b] For tubes with circumferential welds, R/t and R_b/t, as applicable, shall be ≤20, except when the design meets the details and post-weld heat treatment requirements of Article 6.5

[c] See Article 6.5 for additional provisions regarding allowable stresses in welded members.

[d] The article numbers and equations referenced in this table refer to Section 6, "Aluminum Design."

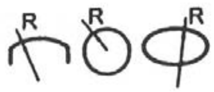
Continued on next page

Table B-11—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6063—T6 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Columns, axial, gross section	All columns	6-7	13.5	$\frac{kL}{r} = 9.5$	$14.2 - 0.074\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)$	$\frac{kL}{r} = 78$	$\frac{51\,000}{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$
			6.5	—	6.5	$\frac{kL}{r} = 89$	$\frac{51\,000}{\left(\frac{kL}{r}\right)^2}$
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns buckling about a symmetry axis 	6-8	13.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 5.7$	$16.1 - 0.46\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 12$	$\frac{129}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			6.5	—	6.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 20$	$\frac{129}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates supported along one edge—columns not buckling about a symmetry axis 	6-9	13.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 5.7$	$16.1 - 0.46\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 15$	$\frac{1970}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
			6.5	—	6.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 17$	$\frac{1970}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
	Flat plates with both edges supported 	6-10	13.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 18$	$16.1 - 0.144\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)$	$\frac{b}{t} = 39$	$\frac{410}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			6.5	—	6.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 63$	$\frac{410}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$

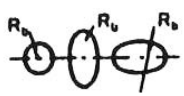
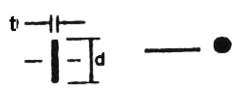
Continued on next page

Table B-11—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6063—T6 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Components of Columns, gross section (continued)	Curved plates supported on both edges, walls of round or oval tubes[b] 	6-11	13.5	$\frac{R}{t} = 18$	$15.6 - 0.50\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}$	$\frac{R}{t} = 188$	$\frac{3200}{\left(\frac{R}{t}\right)\left(1 + \frac{\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
			6.5	$\frac{R}{t} = 10$	$7.2 - 0.22\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}$	$\frac{R}{t} = 510$	$\frac{3200}{\left(\frac{R}{t}\right)\left(1 + \frac{\sqrt{\frac{R}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$

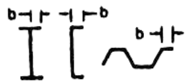
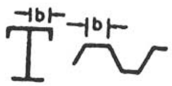
Continued on next page

Table B-11—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6063—T6 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Beams, extreme fiber, gross section	Single web beams bent about strong axis 	6-12	15	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 23$	$16.7 - 0.073\frac{L_b}{r_y}$	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 94$	$\frac{87\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b}{r_y}\right)^2}$
			6.5	—	6.5	$\frac{L_b}{r_y} = 116$	$\frac{87\,000}{\left(\frac{L_b}{r_y}\right)^2}$
	Round or oval tubes[b] 	6-13	18	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 33$	$27.7 - 1.70\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 102$	Same as Eq. 6-11 with $R = R_b$
			8	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 62$	$12.8 - 0.61\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 206$	Same as Eq. 6-11 with $R = R_b$
	Solid rectangular and round section beams 	6-14	20	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 15$	$27.9 - 0.53\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}}$	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 35$	$\frac{11\,400}{\left(\frac{d}{t}\right)^2\left(\frac{L_b}{d}\right)}$
			8.5	—	8.5	$\frac{d}{t}\sqrt{\frac{L_b}{d}} = 37$	$\frac{11\,400}{\left(\frac{d}{t}\right)^2\left(\frac{L_b}{d}\right)}$
	Rectangular tubes and box sections 	6-15	15	$\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}} = 145$	$16.7 - 0.141\sqrt{\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}}}$	$\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}} = 2380$	$\frac{24\,000}{\left(\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}}\right)}$
			6.5	—	6.5	$\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}} = 3690$	$\frac{24\,000}{\left(\frac{L_bS_c}{0.5\sqrt{I_yJ}}\right)}$

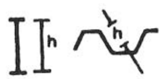
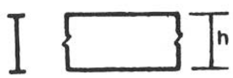
Continued on next page

Table B-11—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6063—T6 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\leq S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\geq S_2$
Compression in Components of Beams, component under uniform compression, gross section	Flat plates supported on one edge 	6-16	15	$\frac{b}{t} = 7.4$	$19.0 - 0.54\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 12$	$\frac{152}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			6.5	—	6.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 23$	$\frac{152}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Flat plates with both edges supported 	6-17	15	$\frac{b}{t} = 24$	$19.0 - 0.170\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 39$	$\frac{480}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
			6.5	—	6.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 74$	$\frac{480}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)}$
	Curved plates supported on both edges[b] 	6-18	18	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 0.7$	$18.5 - 0.59\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 188$	$\frac{3800}{\left(\frac{R_b}{t}\right)\left(1 + \frac{\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}}{35}\right)^2}$
			8	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 0.3$	$7.9 - 0.19\sqrt{\frac{R_b}{t}}$	$\frac{R_b}{t} = 510$	Same as nonwelded members

Continued on next page

Table B-11—Allowable Stresses for Aluminum 6063—T6 Alloy (ksi)—*Continued*

Type of Stress	Type of Member or Component	Eq. Set	(a) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\le S_1$	(b) Slenderness Limit S_1	(c) Allowable Stress Slenderness Between S_1 and S_2	(d) Slenderness Limit S_2	(e) Allowable Stress Slenderness $\ge S_2$
Compression in Components of Beams, component under bending in own plane, gross section	Flat plates with compression edge free, tension edge supported 	6-19	20	$\frac{b}{t} = 9.8$	$27.9 - 0.81\frac{b}{t}$	$\frac{b}{t} = 23$	$\frac{4900}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
			8.5	—	8.5	$\frac{b}{t} = 24$	$\frac{4900}{\left(\frac{b}{t}\right)^2}$
	Flat plate with both edges supported 	6-20	20	$\frac{h}{t} = 51$	$27.9 - 0.155\frac{h}{t}$	$\frac{h}{t} = 90$	$\frac{1260}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)}$
			8.5	—	8.5	$\frac{h}{t} = 148$	$\frac{1260}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)}$
Shear in Webs, gross section	Unstiffened flat webs 	6-21	8.5	$\frac{h}{t} = 39$	$10.7 - 0.056\frac{h}{t}$	$\frac{h}{t} = 78$	$\frac{39\,000}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)^2}$
			3.9	—	3.9	$\frac{h}{t} = 100$	$\frac{39\,000}{\left(\frac{h}{t}\right)^2}$

B7—REFERENCES

Author unknown. 1985. "Graphs to Determine Structure Deflections," *Transmission and Distribution*. July 1985.

Timoshenko, S. 1957. *Strength of Materials—Part II.* D. Van Nostrand Company, Princeton, NJ.

APPENDIX C: ALTERNATE METHOD FOR WIND PRESSURES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

APPENDIX C:

ALTERNATE METHOD FOR WIND PRESSURES

C1—ALTERNATE METHOD

Section 3, "Loads," provides a method for the determination of design wind pressures using the general design procedures and 3-sec gust speed map presented in ANSI/ASCE 7-95, *Standard Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and other Structures*. This Appendix provides an alternate method for the determination of design wind pressures. This alternate method is the same method contained in the 1994 edition and earlier editions of these Specifications. The alternate method shall be used to determine design wind pressures only when specified by the Owner.

The wind maps in Figures C-1, C-2, and C-3 indicate fastest-mile wind speeds. In comparison to the wind map in ANSI/ASCE 7-95, these three wind maps are based on a shorter history of wind speed records and have not incorporated the recent analysis available to predict hurricane wind speeds. Article 3.8.2 discusses the development of all of the wind speed maps. Article 3.8.5 provides additional discussion on both methods used to determine wind pressures.

Wind pressures determined from this alternate method can significantly vary above or below the wind pressures determined in accordance with Section 3, depending on a site's location in the United States.

C2—WIND LOAD

Wind loads for the alternate method shall be the pressure of the wind acting horizontally on the supports, signs, luminaires, traffic signals, and other attachments computed in accordance with this Appendix. The design wind pressures shall be computed using the wind pressure formula, Eq. C-1, for the appropriate wind speed as shown in Figures C-1, C-2, or C-3. For areas that lie between isotachs, wind pressure shall be determined by the higher wind speed adjacent to the area.

Wind speeds based on a 50-yr mean recurrence interval shall be used for the design of luminaire support structures exceeding 15 m (49.2 ft) in height and for all overhead sign structures. Roadside sign structures that are considered to have a relatively short life expectancy may be designed using wind speeds based on a 10-yr mean recurrence interval. Luminaire support structures not exceeding 15 m (49.2 ft) in height and traffic signal support structures may be designed using a wind speed based on a 25-yr mean recurrence interval, where locations and safety considerations permit and when approved by the Owner.

For site conditions elevated considerably above the surrounding terrain, where the influence of ground on the wind is reduced, consideration must be given to using higher pressures at levels above 9.1 m (30 ft).

The isotach maps do not show isolated high-wind areas; therefore, sound judgment must be used in selecting wind speeds for the location in which the structure is to be installed.

The calculated design wind pressures shall be used to determine wind loads on structures in accordance with Article 3.9, "Design Wind Loads on Structures."

C3—WIND PRESSURE FORMULA

Wind pressure may be computed using the following formula:

$$P_Z = 0.0473(1.3V_{fm})^2 C_d C_h \text{ (Pa)} \qquad \text{(C-1)}$$

$$P_Z = 0.00256(1.3V_{fm})^2 C_d C_h \text{ (psf)}$$

where:

P_Z = Design wind pressure (Pa, psf)

V_{fm} = Fastest-mile wind speed from map, for the design mean recurrence interval, see Figures C-1, C-2, and C-3 (km/h, mph)

Note: To convert from mph to km/h, multiply by 1.61.

$1.3V_{fm}$ = Fastest-mile gust speed, 30 percent increase for gust

C_d = Drag coefficient (from Table C-2)

C_h = Coefficient for height above ground measured to the centroid of the corresponding limits of the loaded area (from Table C-1)

Table C-1—Coefficient of Height, C_h

Height, m (ft)	C_h
0 (0) < $H \leq$ 4.3 (14)	0.80
4.3 (14) < $H \leq$ 8.8 (29)	1.00
8.8 (29) < $H \leq$ 14.9 (49)	1.10
14.9 (49) < $H \leq$ 30.2 (99)	1.25
30.2 (99) < $H \leq$ 45.4 (149)	1.40
45.4 (149) < $H \leq$ 60.7 (199)	1.50
60.7 (199) < $H \leq$ 91.1 (299)	1.60

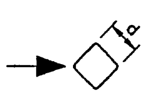
Note:

H = Distance from ground surface to centroid of loaded area (m, ft)

Table C-2—Wind Drag Coefficients, C_d [a]

Sign Panel L_{sign}/W_{sign} = 1.0 2.0 5.0 10.0 15.0	 1.12 1.19 1.20 1.23 1.30	
Traffic Signals[b]	1.2	
Luminaires (with generally rounded surfaces)	0.5	
Luminaires (with rectangular flat side shapes)	1.2	
Elliptical Member ($D/d_o \leq 2$)	Broadside Facing Wind $1.7\left(\frac{D}{d_o}-1\right)+C_{dD}\left(2-\frac{D}{d_o}\right)$	Narrow Side Facing Wind $C_{dd}\left[1-0.7\left(\frac{D}{d_o}-1\right)^{\frac{1}{4}}\right]$
Two Members or Trusses (one in front of other) (for widely separated trusses or trusses having small solidity ratios)[c]	1.20 (cylindrical) 2.00 (flat)	
Variable Message Signs (VMS)[g]	1.70	
Attachments	Drag coefficients for many attachments (Cameras, Luminaires, Traffic Signals, etc.) are often available from the manufacturer, and are typically provided in terms of effective projected area (EPA), which is the drag coefficient times the projected area. If the EPA is provided, the drag coefficient shall be taken as 1.0.	

Table C-2—Wind Drag Coefficients, C_d [a]—*Continued*

Single Member or Truss Member	$V_{fm}d \leq 16$ km-m/h (32 mph-ft)	16 km-m/h (32 mph-ft) < $V_{fm}d$ < 32 km-m/h (64 mph-ft)	$V_{fm}d \geq 32$ km-m/h (64 mph-ft)
Cylindrical	1.10	$\frac{40.62}{\left(V_{fm}d\right)^{1.3}}$ (SI) $\frac{100}{\left(V_{fm}d\right)^{1.3}}$ (U.S. Customary)	0.45
Flat[d]	1.70	1.70	1.70
Hexdecagonal: $0 \leq r_c < 0.26$	1.10	$1.37 + 1.08r_c - \frac{V_{fm}d}{59.5} - \frac{V_{fm}dr_c}{14.85}$ (SI) $1.37 + 1.08r_c - \frac{V_{fm}d}{119} - \frac{V_{fm}dr_c}{29.7}$ (U.S. Customary)	$0.83 - 1.08r_c$
Hexdecagonal[e]: $r_c \geq 0.26$	1.10	$0.55 + \frac{\left(32 - V_{fm}d\right)}{29.09}$ (SI) $0.55 + \frac{\left(64.0 - V_{fm}d\right)}{58.18}$ (U.S. Customary)	0.55
Dodecagonal[e]	1.20	$\frac{6.35}{\left(V_{fm}d\right)^{0.6}}$ (SI) $\frac{9.62}{\left(V_{fm}d\right)^{0.6}}$ (U.S. Customary)	0.79
Octagonal[e]	1.20	1.20	1.20
 Square	$2.0 - 6r_s$ [for $r_s < 0.125$] 1.25 [for $r_s \geq 0.125$]		
Diamond[f] 	1.70 [for d = 0.102 & 0.127 (0.33 & 0.42)] 1.90 [for $d \geq$ 0.152 (0.50)]		

Notes:

[a] Wind drag coefficients for members, sign panels, and other shapes not included in this table shall be established by wind tunnel tests (over an appropriate range of Reynolds numbers), in which comparative tests are made on similar shapes included in this table.

[b] Wind loads on free-swinging traffic signals may be modified, as agreed by the Owner of the structure, based on experimental data (Marchman, 1971).

[c] Current data show that the drag coefficients for a truss with a very small solidity ratio are merely the sum of the drags on the individual members, which are essentially independent of one another. When two elements are placed in a line with the wind, the total drag depends on the spacing of the elements. If the spacing is zero or very small, the drag is the same as on a single element; however, if the spacing is infinite, the total force would be twice as much as on a single member. When considering pairs of trusses, the solidity ratio is of importance because the distance downstream in which shielding is effective depends on the size of the individual members. The effect of shielding dies out in smaller spacings as the solidity decreases. Further documentation may be found in *Transactions* (ASCE, 1961).

[d] Flat members are those shapes that are essentially flat in elevation, including plates and angles.

[e] Valid for members having a ratio of corner radius to distance between parallel faces equal to or greater than 0.125. For multisided cross-sections with a large corner radius, a transition value for C_d can be taken as:

If $r_c \leq r_m$, then $C_d = C_{dm}$

If $r_m < r_c < r_r$, then $C_d = C_{dr} + (C_{dm} - C_{dr})[(r_r - r_c)/(r_r - r_m)]$

If $r_c \geq r_r$, then $C_d = C_{dr}$

where:

r_c = ratio of corner radius to radius of inscribed circle

C_{dm} = drag coefficient for multi-sided section

C_{dr} = drag coefficient for round section

r_m = maximum ratio of corner radius to inscribed circle where the multisided section's drag coefficient is unchanged (table below)

r_r = ratio of corner radius to radius of inscribed circle where multisided section is considered round (table below)

Shape	r_m	r_r
16-Sided Hexdecagonal	0.26	0.63
12-Sided Dodecagonal	0.50	0.75
8-Sided Octagonal	0.75	1.00

[f] The drag coefficient applies to the diamond's maximum projected area measured perpendicular to the indicated direction of wind.

[g] A value of 1.7 is suggested for Variable Message Signs (VMS) until research efforts can provide precise drag

Nomenclature:

V_{fm} = Wind velocity (fastest-mile, nongust)

$V_{fm}d$ = Wind velocity multiplied by depth (diameter) of member

d = Depth (diameter) of member (m, ft)

D/d_o = Ratio of major to minor diameter of ellipse (maximum of 2)

C_{dD} = Drag coefficient of cylindrical shape, diameter D

C_{dd} = Drag coefficient of cylindrical shape, diameter d_o

r_c = Ratio of corner radius to radius of inscribed circle

r_s = Ratio of corner radius to depth d of a square member

L_{sign} = Longer dimension of the attached sign (m, ft)

W_{sign} = Shorter dimension of the attached sign (m, ft)

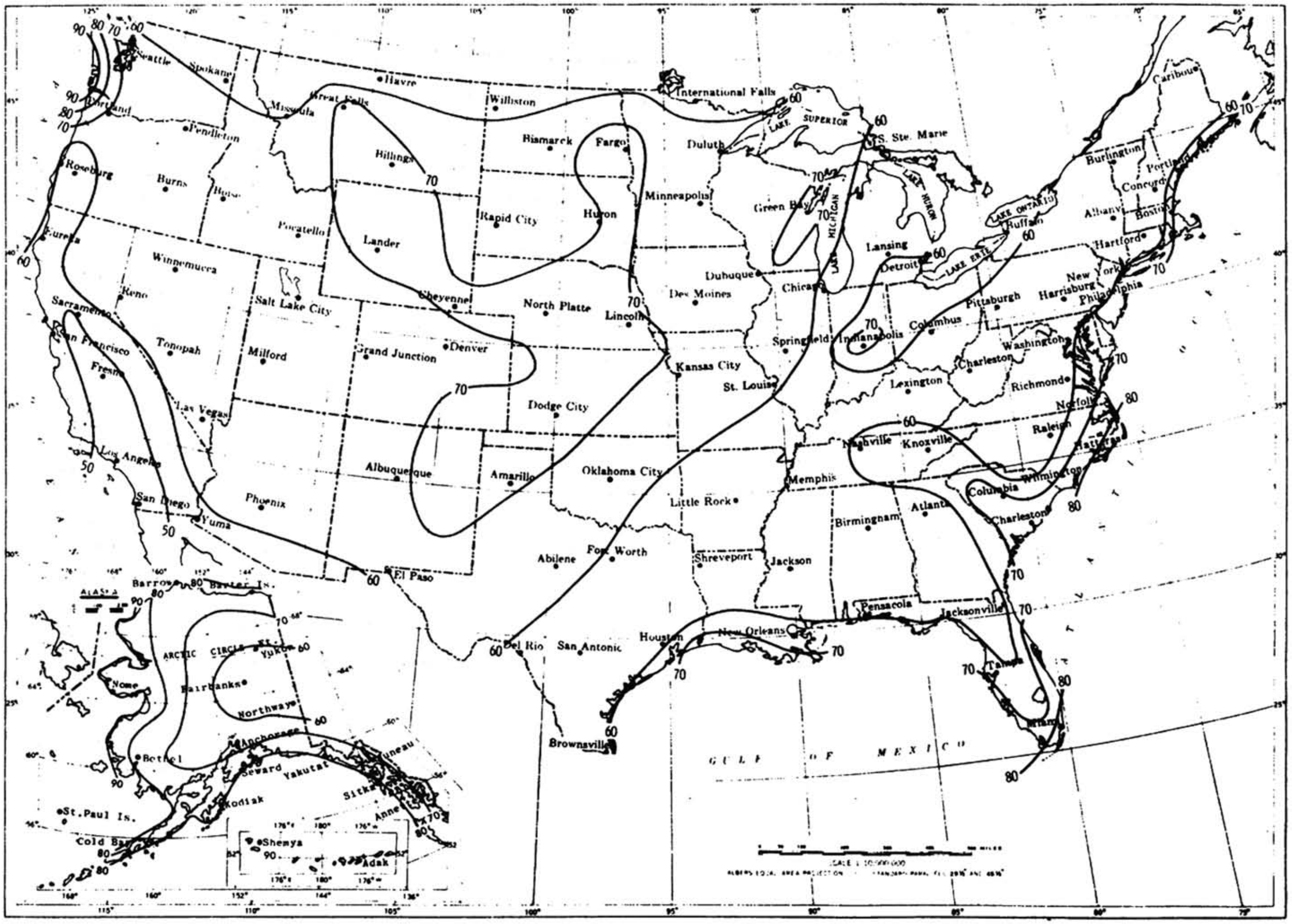


Figure C-1—Isotach 0.10 Quantiles in mph: Annual Extreme-Mile 9.1 m (30 ft) Above Ground, 10-y Mean Recurrence Interval

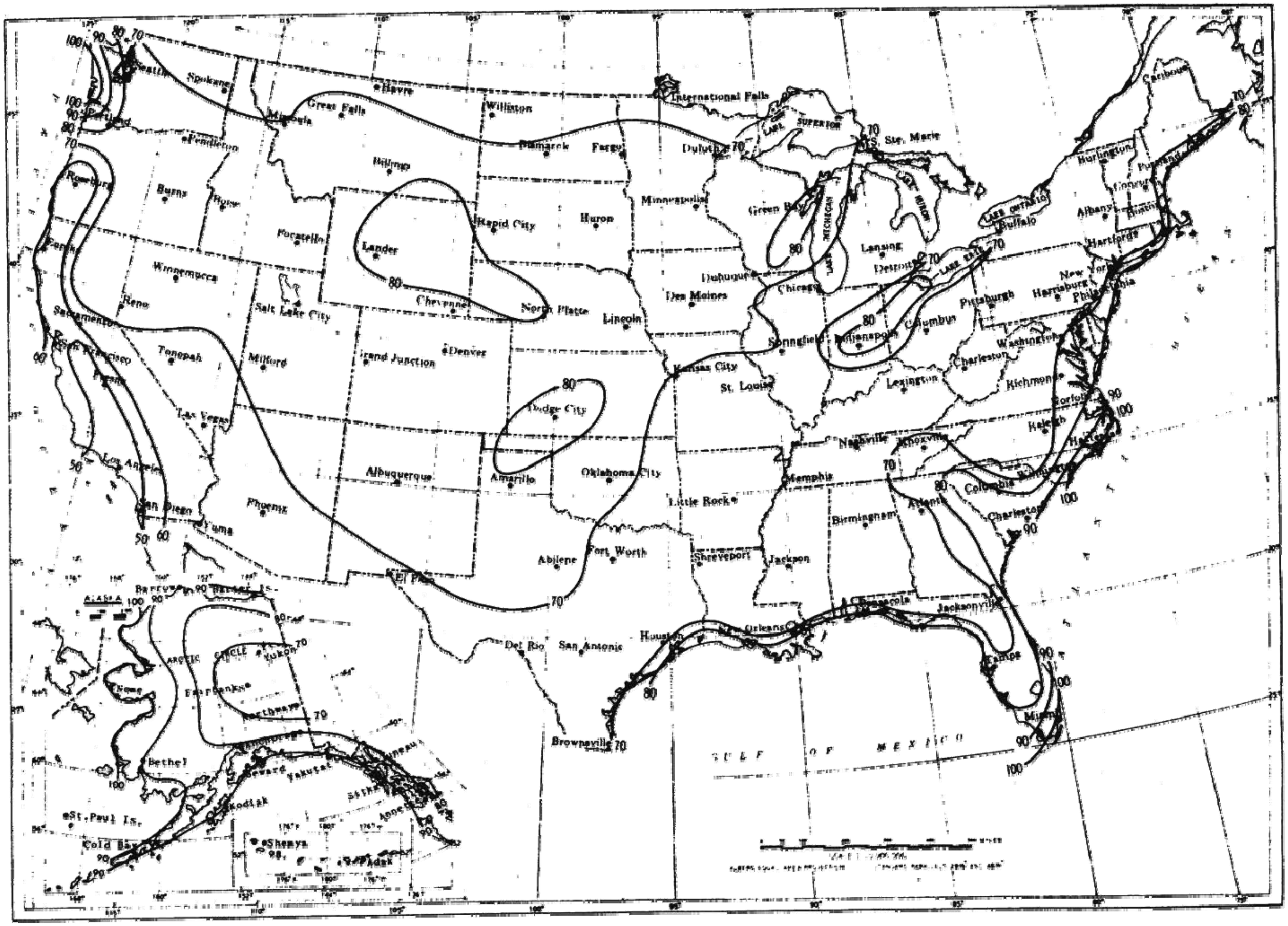


Figure C-2—Isotach 0.04 Quantiles in mph: Annual Extreme-Mile 9.1 m (30 ft) Above Ground, 25-y Mean Recurrence Interval

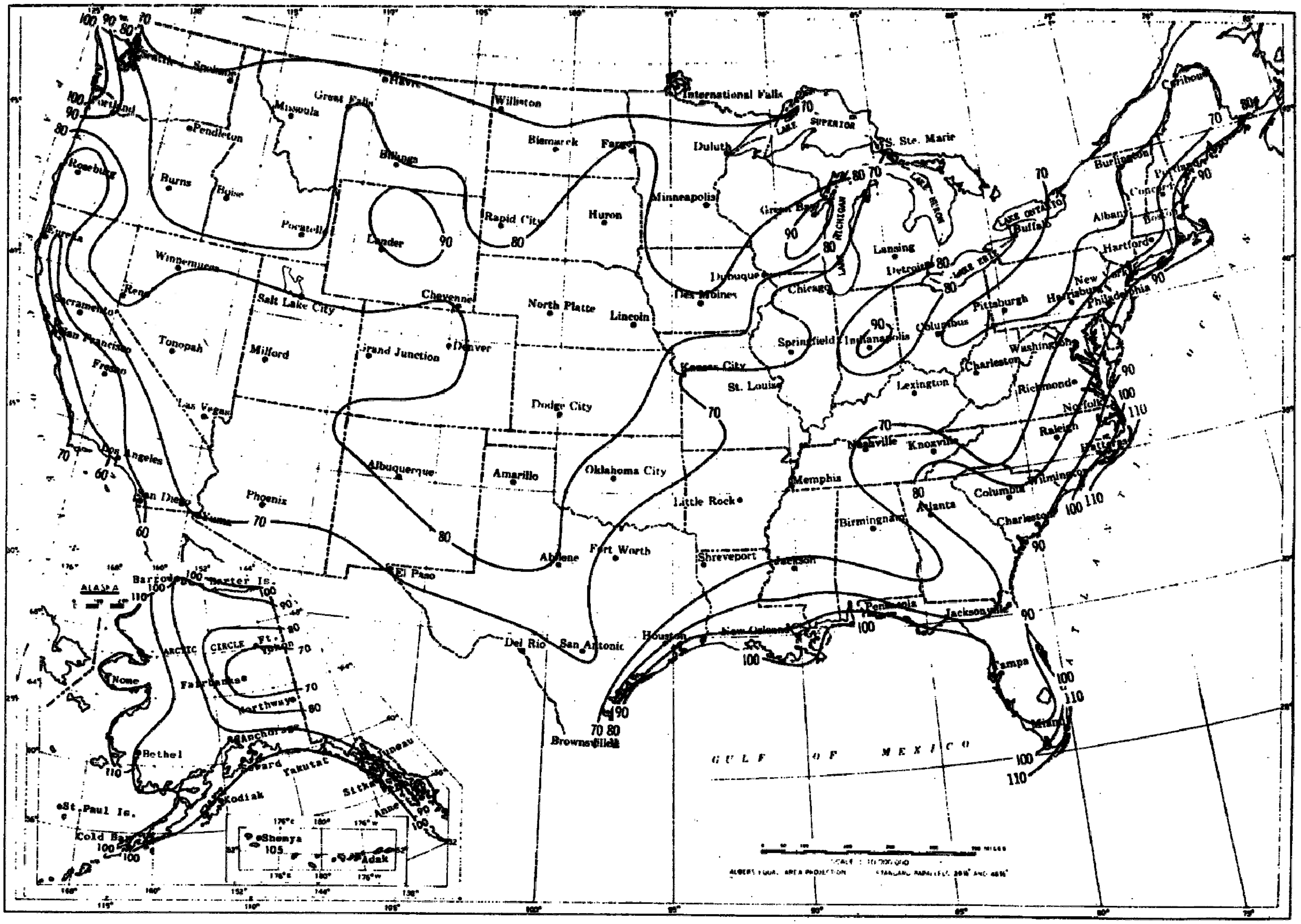


Figure C-3—Isotach 0.02 Quantiles in mph: Annual Extreme-Mile 9.1 m (30 ft) Above Ground, 50-y Mean Recurrence Interval; Wind Speed Based on a 50-y Mean Recurrence Interval Is 130 km/h (80 mph) for Hawaii and 150 km/h (95 mph) for Puerto Rico

C4—REFERENCES

ASCE. 1961. "Wind Forces on Structures," *Transactions of the American Society of Civil Engineers*. American Society of Civil Engineers, Washington, DC, Vol. 126, Part II, pp. 1124–98.

Marchman III, J. 1971. "Wind Loading on Free-Swinging Traffic Signals," *Transportation Engineering Journal*. American Society of Civil Engineers, Washington, DC, May 1971.